

As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols    on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

  is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

 **Safety Labels** P. 89

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You **WILL** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You **CAN** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

  **WARNING**

You **CAN** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.

➤ Safe Driving P. 35

For Safe Driving P. 36 Seat Belts P. 41 Airbags P. 53

➤ Instrument Panel P. 91

Indicators P. 92 Gauges and Multi-Information Display P. 136

➤ Controls P. 153

Clock P. 154 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 156
Opening and Closing the Windows P. 175 Panoramic Roof* P. 178
Adjusting the Seats P. 206

➤ Features P. 241

Audio System P. 242 Audio System Basic Operation P. 249, 280
Customized Features P. 335, 345

➤ Driving P. 401

Before Driving P. 402 Towing a Trailer P. 406
Parking Your Vehicle P. 489 Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 495

➤ Maintenance P. 505

Before Performing Maintenance P. 506 Service Reminder System* P. 509
Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Regeneration* P. 553
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 569 Battery P. 575
Accessories and Modifications P. 590

➤ Handling the Unexpected P. 593

Tools P. 594 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 596
Overheating P. 625 Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 628
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 646 Refueling P. 648

➤ Information P. 649

Specifications P. 650 Identification Numbers P. 659

Contents

Child Safety P. 66

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 88

Safety Labels P. 89

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 35

Opening and Closing the Tailgate P. 169

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 181

Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 217

Security System P. 171

Adjusting the Mirrors P. 203

Climate Control System P. 230

Instrument Panel P. 91

Controls P. 153

Audio Error Messages P. 327

General Information on the Audio System P. 330

Hands-Free Telephone System P. 361, 382

Features P. 241

Off-road Guidelines P. 411

Refueling P. 497

When Driving P. 413

Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions P. 502

Braking P. 475

Turbo Engine Vehicle* P. 503

Driving P. 401

Oil Monitor System* P. 514

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 555

Remote Transmitter Care P. 580

Maintenance Schedule* P. 519

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 565

Climate Control System Maintenance P. 582

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 530

Cleaning P. 585

Maintenance P. 505

Handling the Unexpected P. 593

Engine Does Not Start P. 617

Fuses P. 634

Jump Starting P. 621

Emergency Towing P. 643

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 624

Information P. 649

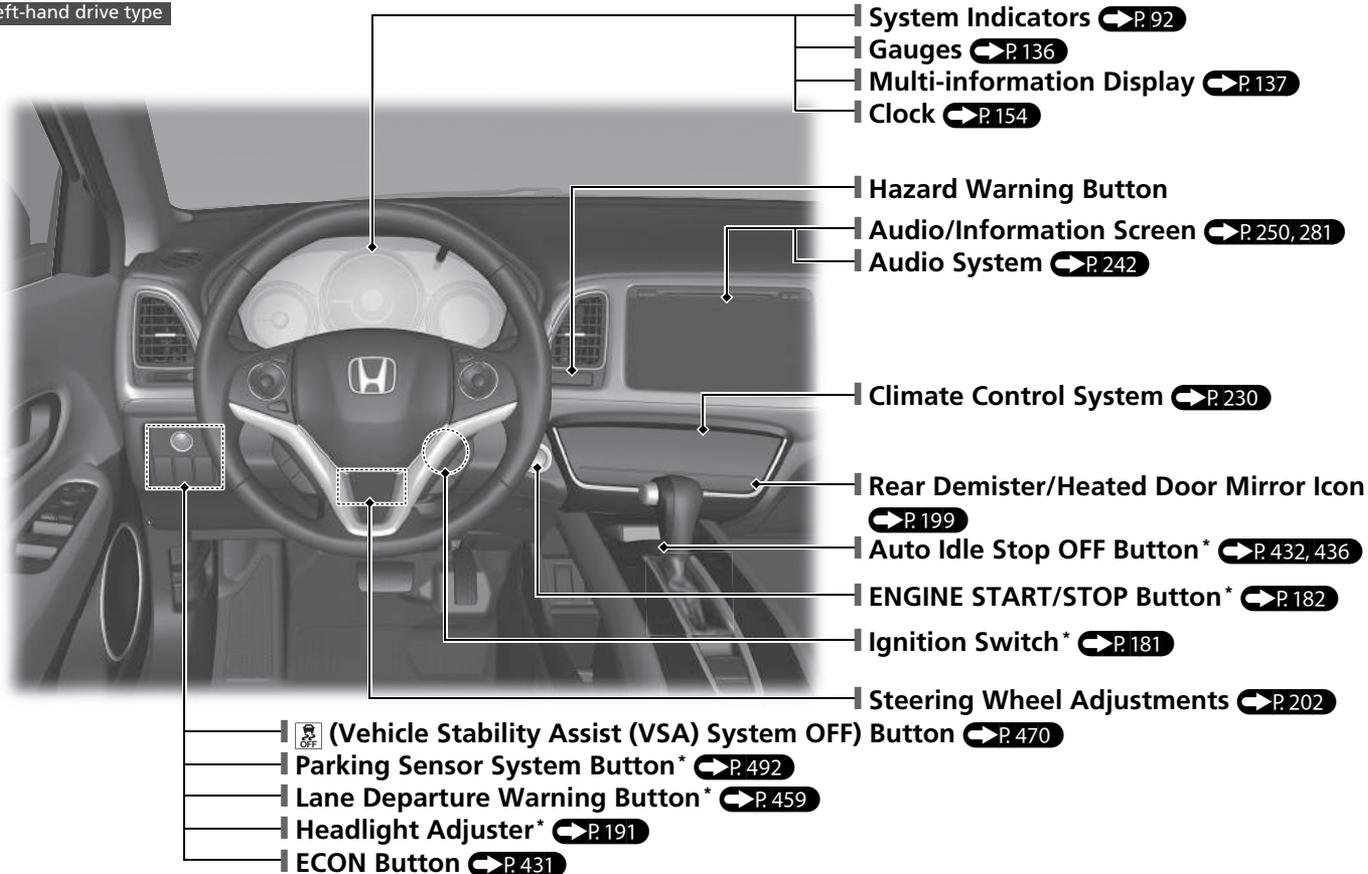
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 660

EC Declaration of Conformity Content Outline* P. 688

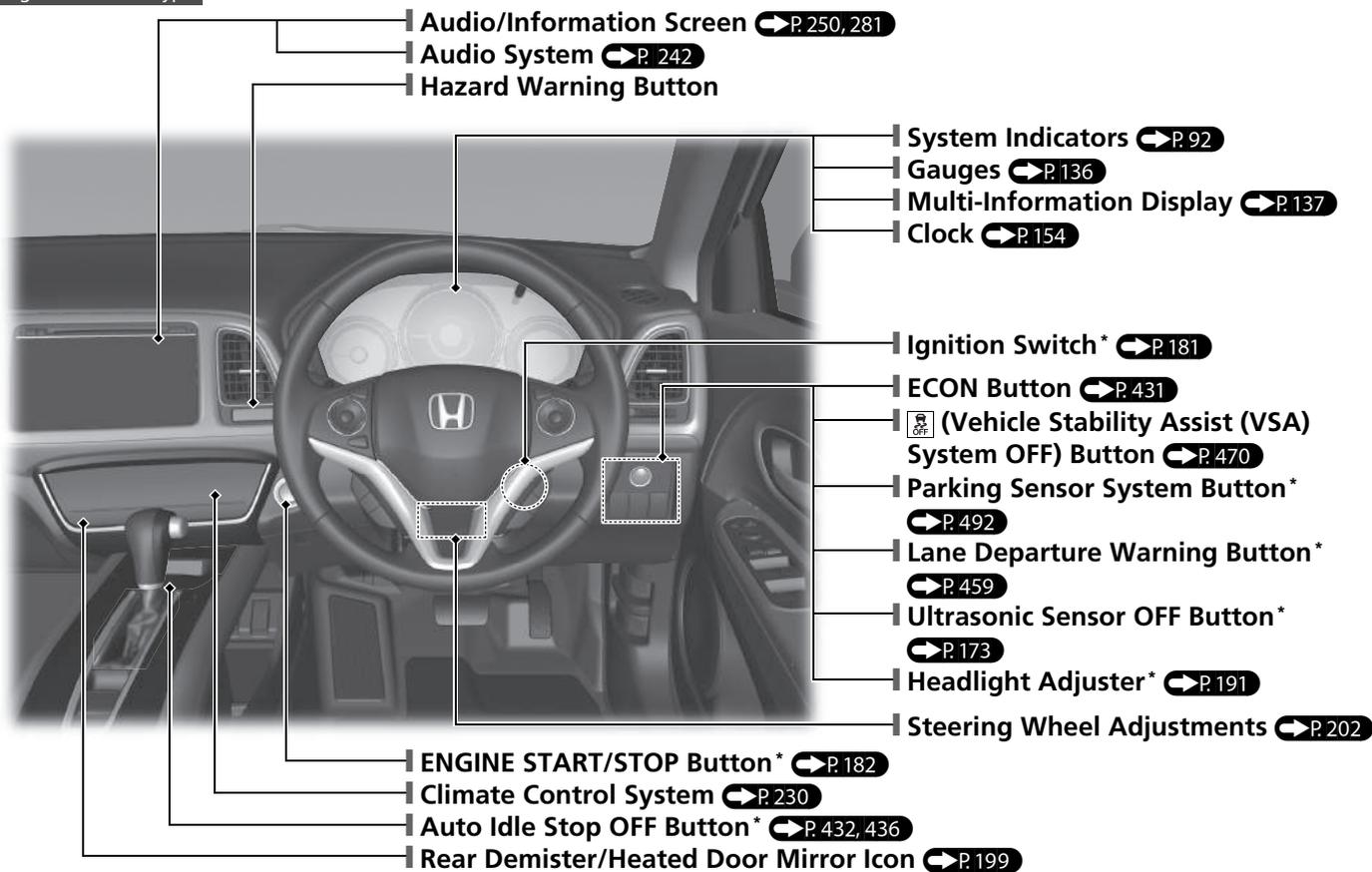
Index P. 692

Visual Index

Left-hand drive type



Right-hand drive type

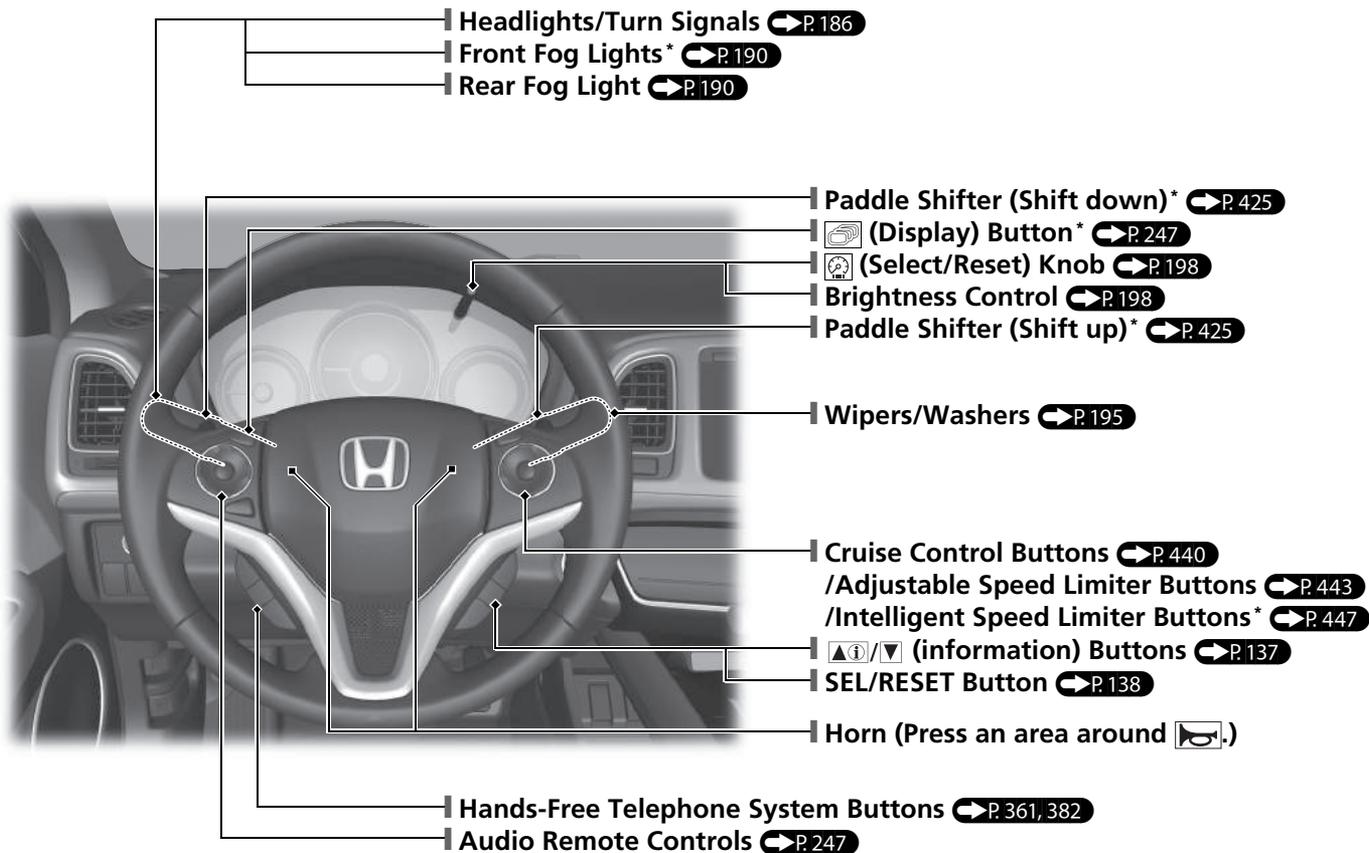


Quick Reference Guide

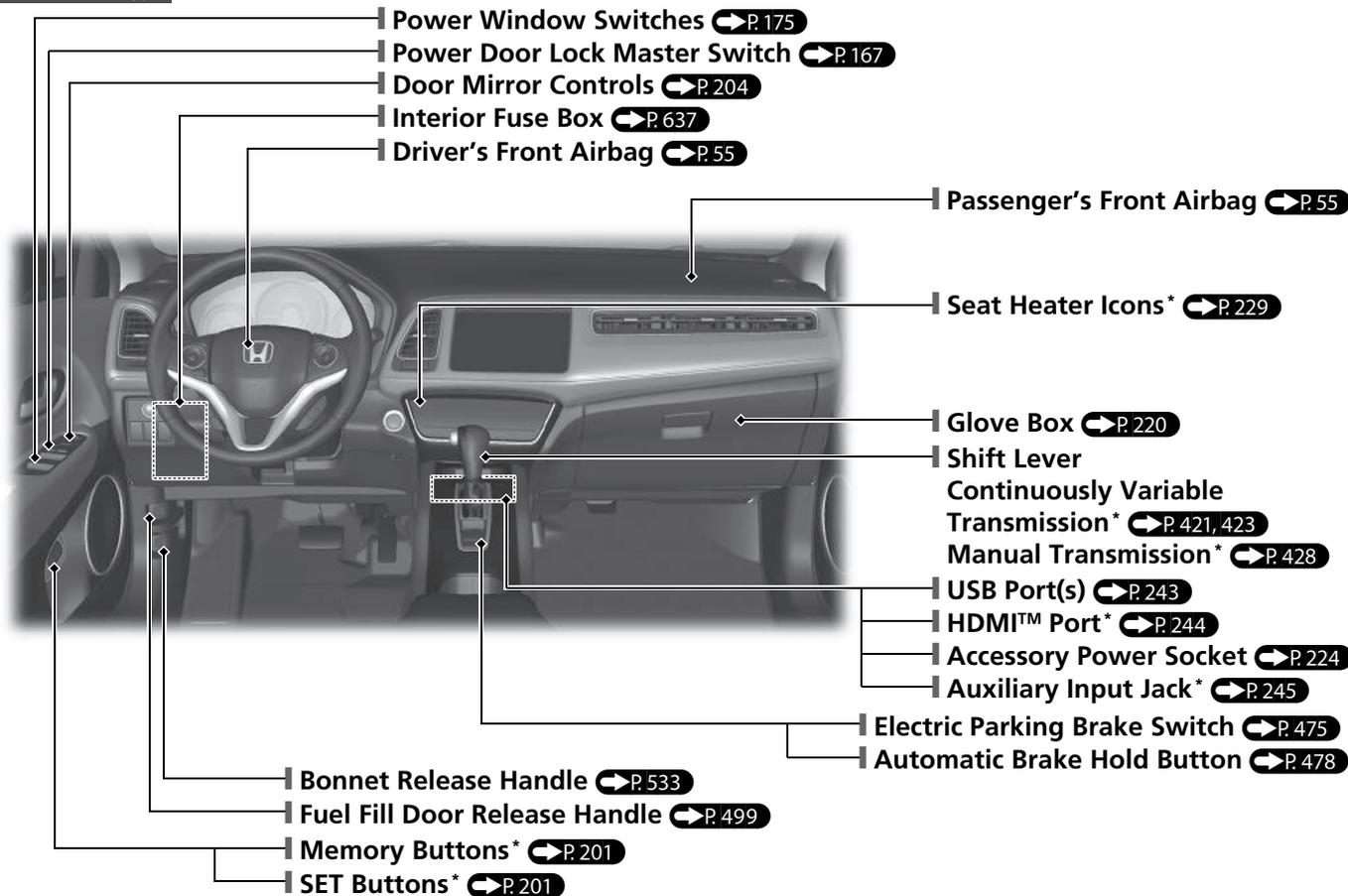
* Not available on all models

Visual Index

Quick Reference Guide



Left-hand drive type

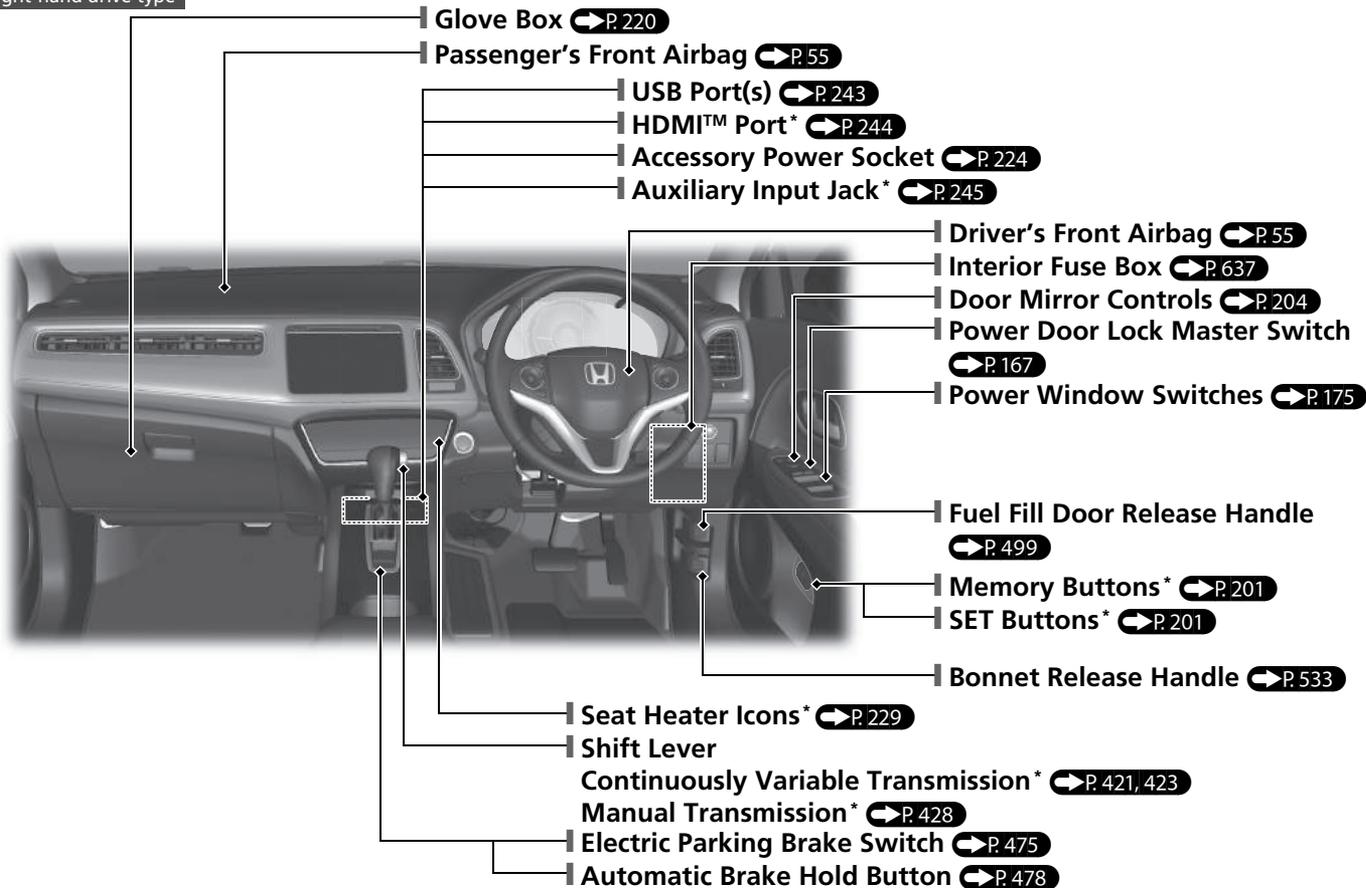


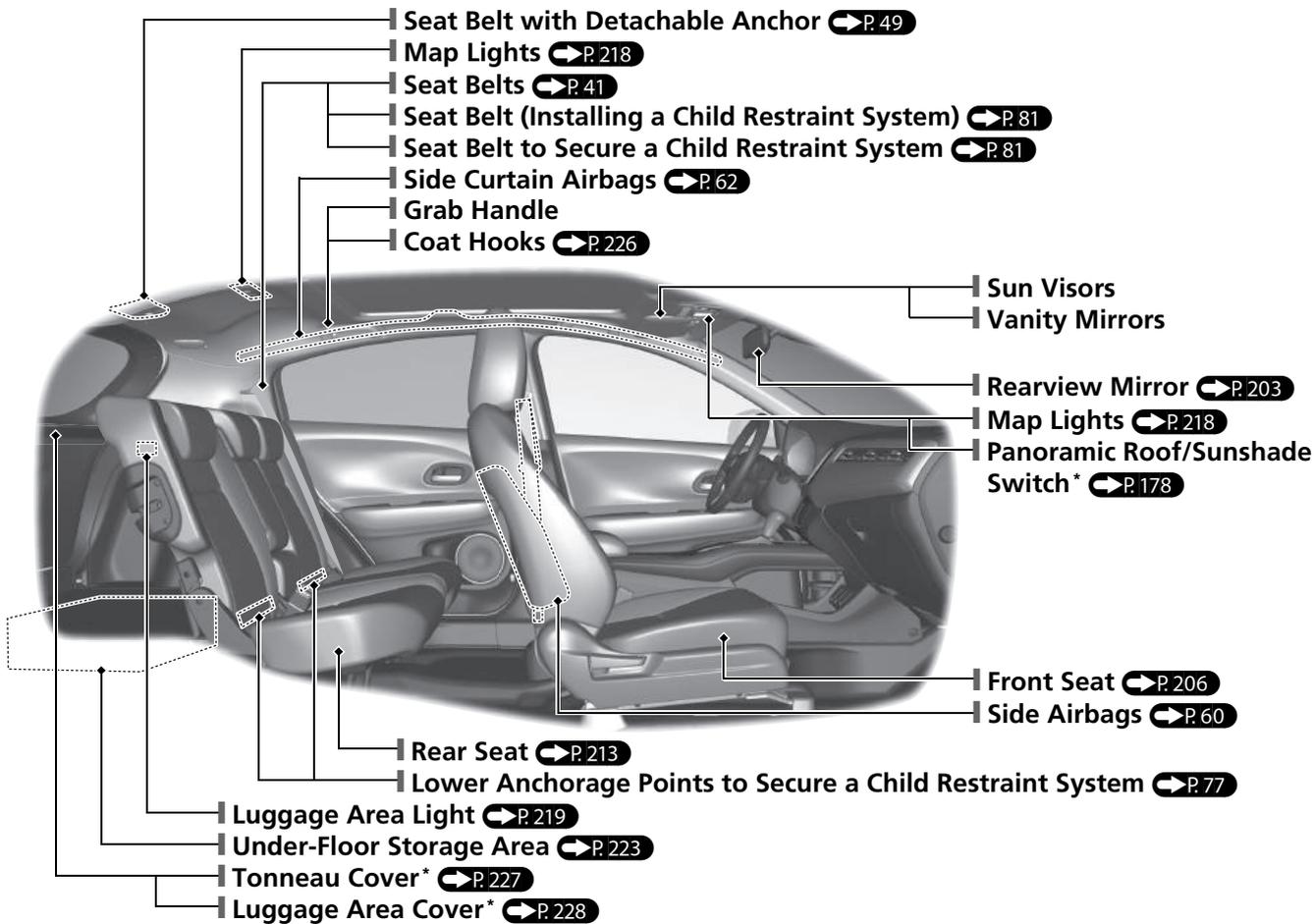
* Not available on all models

Visual Index

Quick Reference Guide

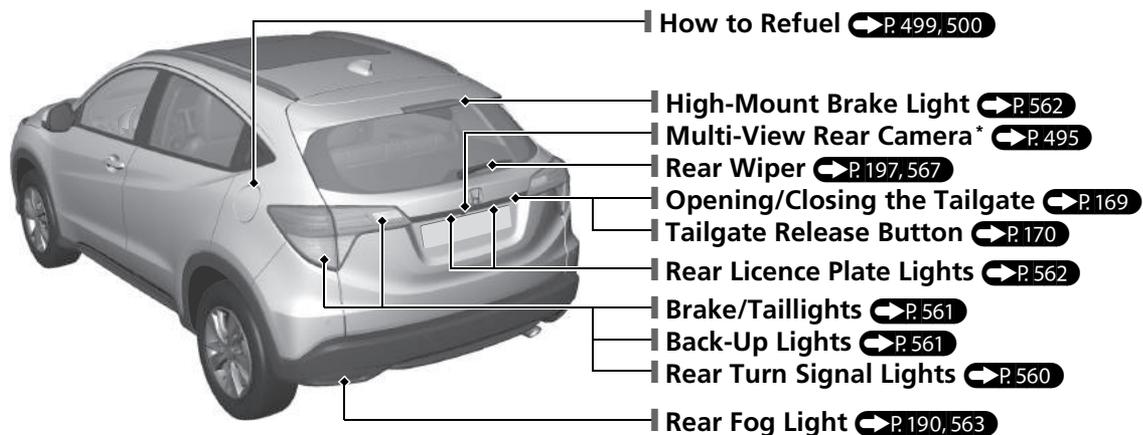
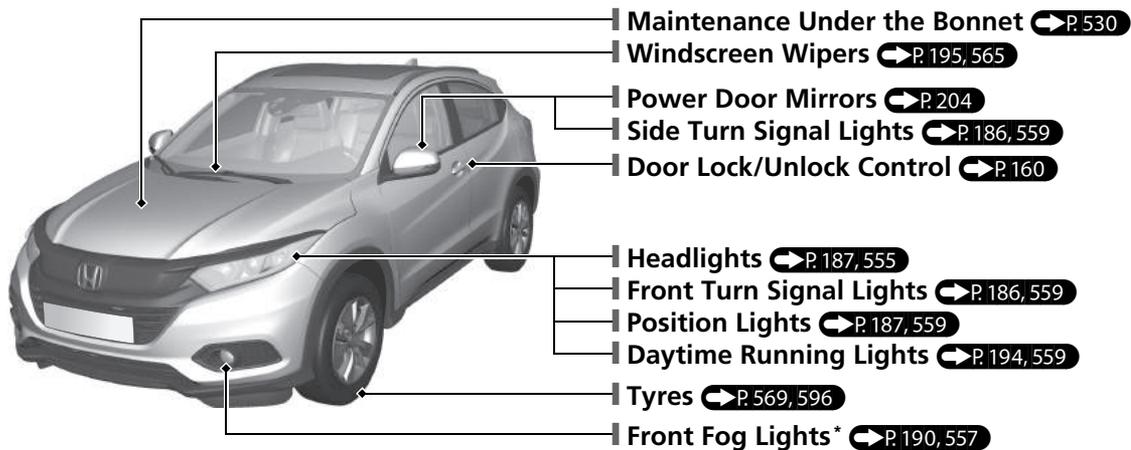
Right-hand drive type





Visual Index

Quick Reference Guide



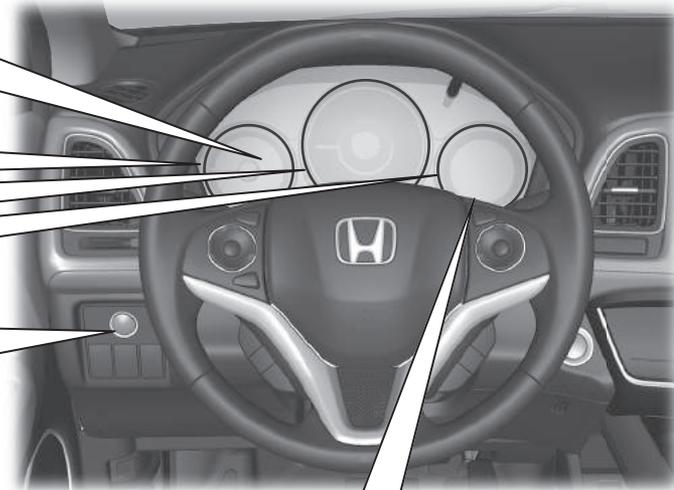
Eco Assist System

ECON Mode Indicator  P.110
Comes on when **ECON** button is pressed.



Ambient Meter
The colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.

ECON Button  P.431
Helps to maximise fuel economy.

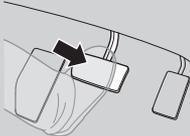
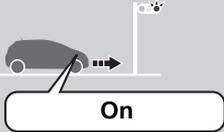
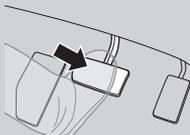
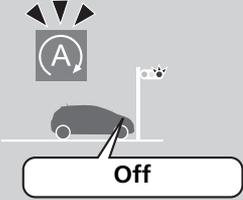
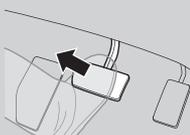
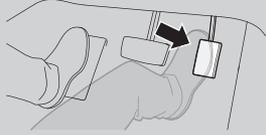
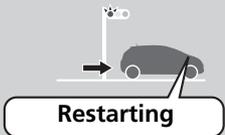


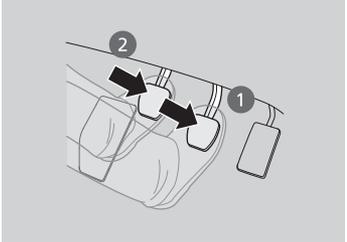
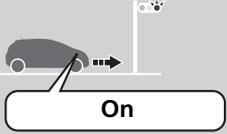
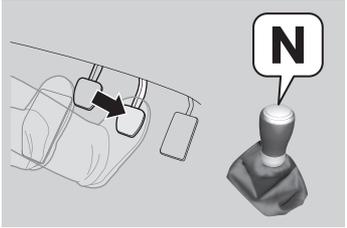
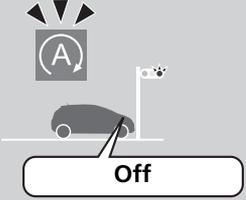
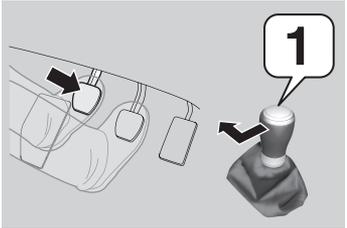
The message is displayed for a few seconds when the **ECON** button is pressed.



Auto Idle Stop Function*

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the Auto Idle Stop indicator (green) comes on. [➡ P.432,436](#)

At	Continuously variable transmission	Engine status
<p>Deceleration</p> 	 <p>Stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal.</p>	 <p>On</p>
<p>Stop</p> 	 <p>Keep the brake pedal depressed.</p>  <p>With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal when the (A) indicator comes on.</p>	 <p>Off</p>
<p>Start-up</p>	 <p>Release the brake pedal.</p>  <p>With the automatic brake hold system activated, depress the accelerator pedal.</p>	 <p>Restarting</p>

At	Manual transmission	Engine status
<p>Deceleration</p> 	<p>1. Depress the brake pedal. 2. Fully depress the clutch pedal.</p> 	 <p>On</p>
<p>Stop</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continue to depress the brake pedal. • Move the shift lever to N. • Release the clutch pedal. 	 <p>Off</p>
<p>Start-up</p>	<p>1. Depress the clutch pedal again. 2. Move the shift lever to 1. 3. Depress the accelerator pedal to resume driving.</p> 	 <p>Restarting</p>

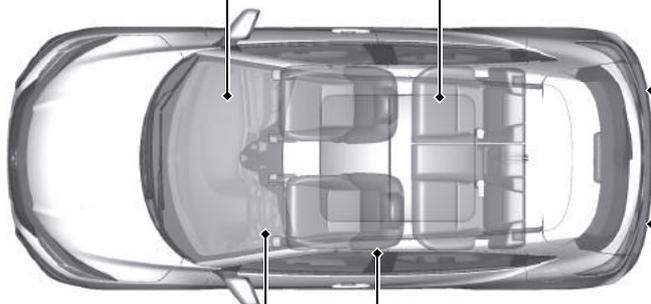
Safe Driving ➔ P.35

Airbags ➔ P.53

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety ➔ P.66

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.



Exhaust Gas Hazard ➔ P.88

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts ➔ P.41

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Before Driving Checklist ➔ P.40

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Instrument Panel ↔ P.91

Gauges ↔ P.136 / Multi-Information Display ↔ P.137 / System Indicators ↔ P.92

System Indicators

- Malfunction Indicator Lamp
- Charging System Indicator
- Low Oil Pressure Indicator
- High Temperature Indicator (Red)/Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator
- Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
- System Message Indicator
- Immobilizer System Indicator
- Keyless Access System Indicator*
- ECON mode Indicator
- Lane Departure Warning Indicator*
- Forward Collision Warning Indicator*
- CTBA** City-Brake Active System (CTBA) Indicator

Tachometer

Shift Lever Position Indicator*/Transmission System Indicator*

Ambient Meter

Speedometer

Multi-Information Display

Fuel Gauge

Ambient Meter

Security System Alarm Indicator*

M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator*/Shift Up/Down Indicator*

Shift Up/Down Indicator*

System Indicators

- Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
- Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
- Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
- Door and Tailgate Open Indicator
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
- Brake System Indicator (Red)
- Brake System Indicator (Amber)
- Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)* / Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*
- Glow Plugs Indicator*
- Low Fuel Indicator
- Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator

System Indicators

- Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
- Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
- Electric Parking Brake System Indicator
- Electric Parking Brake Indicator

Lights Indicators

- Lights On Indicator
- High Beam Indicator
- Front Fog Light Indicator*
- Rear Fog Light Indicator
- Auto High-Beam Indicator*

* Not available on all models

Controls ➔ P.153

Clock ➔ P.154

Models with navigation system

The navigation system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

You should customize the time zone and daylight saving.

➤ **Customized Features** ➔ P.345

All models

The clock in the multi-information display is automatically updated along with the audio system's clock display.

Models with colour audio system



- ➊ Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- ➋ Rotate to change hour, then press .
- ➌ Rotate to change minute, then press .
- ➍ Select **Set**, then press .

These indications are used to show how to operate the **LIST/SELECT** (List/Selector) knob.

- Rotate to select.
- Press to enter.

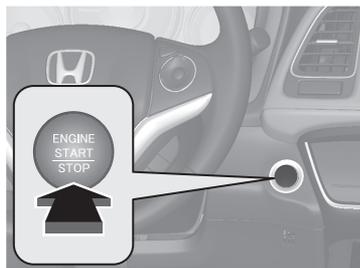
Models with display audio system



- ➊ Select the icon.
- ➋ Select **Settings**.
- ➌ Select **Info**.
- ➍ Select the **Clock** tab.
- ➎ Select **Clock Adjustment**.
- ➏ Select or to change hour.
- ➐ Select or to change minute, then select **OK**.

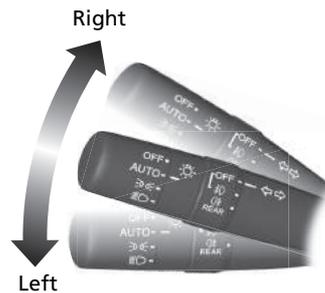
ENGINE START/STOP Button* ▶P.182

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



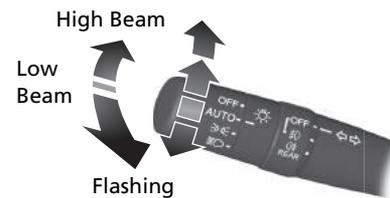
Turn Signals ▶P.186

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights ▶P.187

Light Control Switches



Wipers and Washers

➡ P.195

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

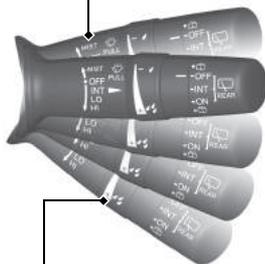
**MIST
OFF**

AUTO*1: Wiper speed varies automatically

INT*2: Low speed with intermittent

LO: Low speed wipe

HI: High speed wipe



Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.

Adjustment Ring

☐: Low Sensitivity*1

☐ + : Lower speed, fewer sweeps*2

☐ + : High Sensitivity*1

☐ + + : Higher speed, more sweeps*2

*1: Models with automatic intermittent operation

*2: Models with manual intermittent operation

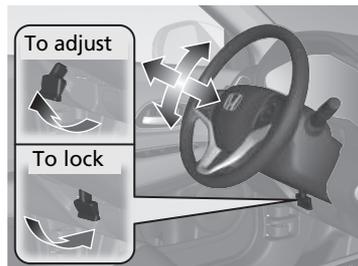
Models with automatic intermittent wipers

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel ➡ P.202

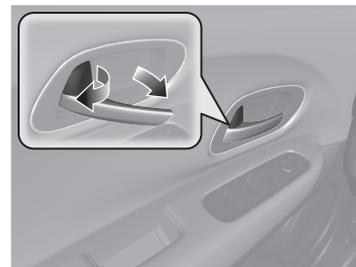
- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



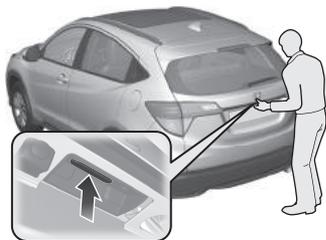
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

➡ P.166

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it in one motion.



Tailgate P.169



Models without keyless access system

- With all the doors unlocked, press the tailgate release button and lift open the tailgate.

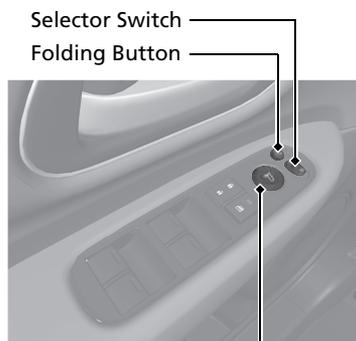
Models with keyless access system

- Press the tailgate release button to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote.

Power Door Mirrors

P.204

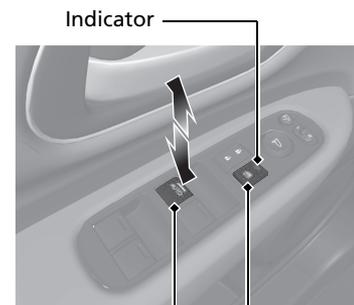
- With the ignition switch in ON *1, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.



Adjustment Switch

Power Windows P.175

- With the ignition switch in ON *1, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



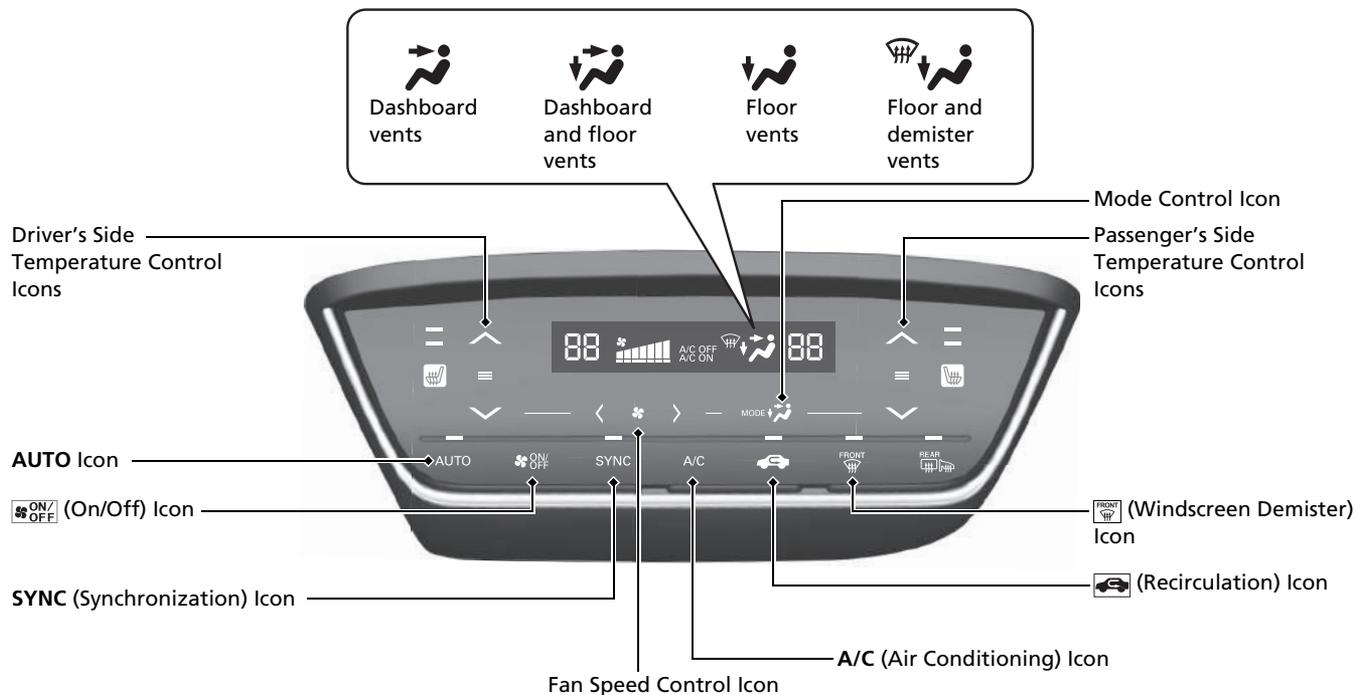
Window Switch Power Window Lock Button

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

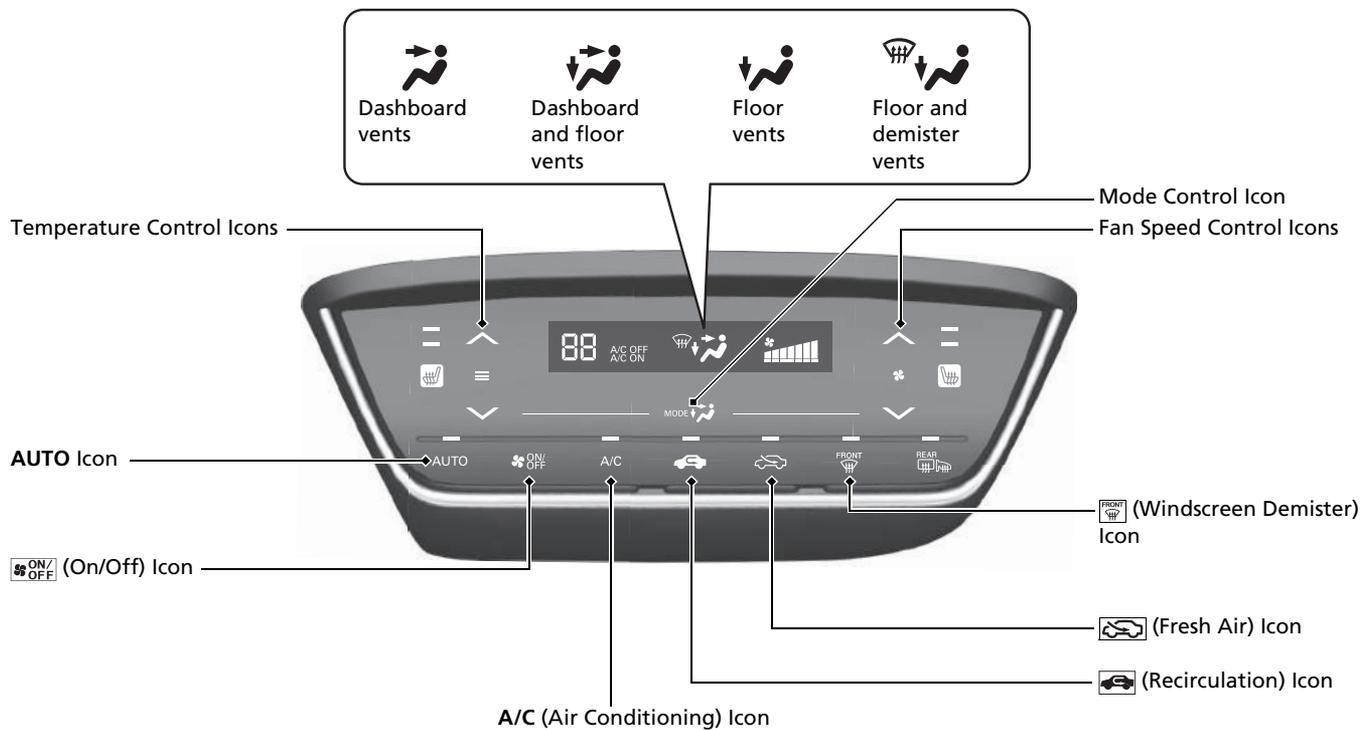
Climate Control System P.230

- Select the **AUTO** icon to activate the climate control system.
- Select the  icon to turn the system on or off.
- Select the  icon to defrost the windscreen.

Models with SYNC icon



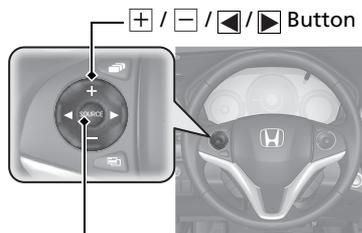
Models without SYNC icon



Features ➡ P.241

Audio Remote Controls

➡ P.247



SOURCE Button

- **+ / - Button**
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **SOURCE Button**

Models with colour audio system
Press to change the audio mode: FM1/ FM2/DAB1*/DAB2*/LW/MW/CD/USB/iPod/ Bluetooth® Audio/AUX.

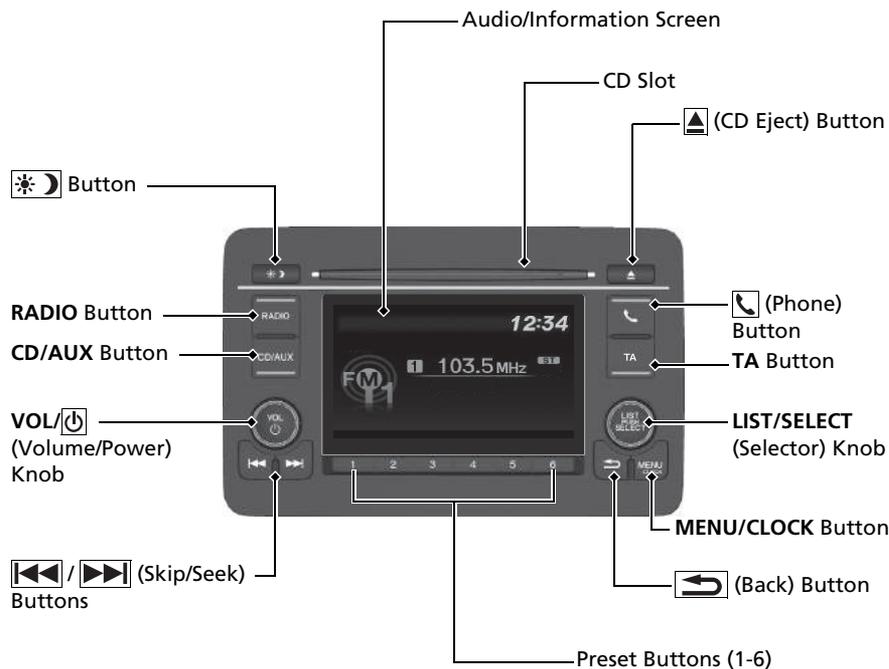
Models with display audio system
Press to change the audio mode: FM/LW/ MW/DAB/CD/USB/iPod/Apps/Bluetooth® Audio/AUX HDMI™
- **◀ / ▶ Button**

Radio: Press to change the preset station.
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.

CD/USB device:
Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
Press and hold to change a folder.

Audio System ➡ P.242

Models with colour audio system ➡ P.249



Models with display audio system ➡ P.280

For navigation system operation ➡ See the Navigation System Manual



Driving ➔P.401

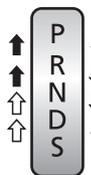
Manual Transmission* ➔P.428

Continuously Variable Transmission* ➔P.421,423

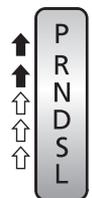
- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Shifting

Models with paddle shifter

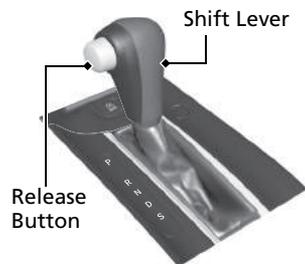


Models without paddle shifter



- ↓ Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of **P**.
- ↕ Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.
- ↕ Press the release button to move the shift lever.

- P** **Park**
Turn off or start the engine. Transmission is locked.
- R** **Reverse**
Used when reversing.
- N** **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.
- D** **Drive**
Normal driving.
On models with paddle shifter, 7-speed manual shift mode can be used temporarily.
- S** **Models with paddle shifter**
Drive (S)
7-speed manual shift mode can be used.



- S** **Models without paddle shifter**
Drive (S)
 - Better acceleration
 - Used to increase engine braking
 - Used when going up or down hills
- L** **Low**
 - Used to further increase engine braking
 - Used when going up or down hills

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode* ➔P.425

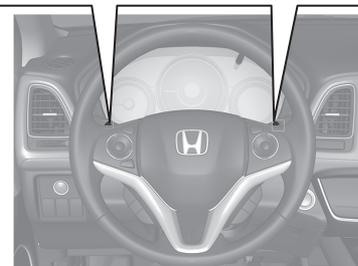
- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

When the shift lever is in **S**

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

When the shift lever is in **D**

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.



VSA On and Off P.469

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering, and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Cruise Control P.440

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **MAIN** button. Select cruise control by pressing the **LIM** button, then press **-/SET** once you have achieved the desired speed (above 30 km/h or 18 mph).

Adjustable Speed Limiter

P.443

- This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.
- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the **MAIN** button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **-/SET** when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.
- The vehicle speed limit can be set from 30 km/h (18 mph) to 250 km/h (156 mph).

Deflation Warning System P.472

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The deflation warning system is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- An initialisation procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

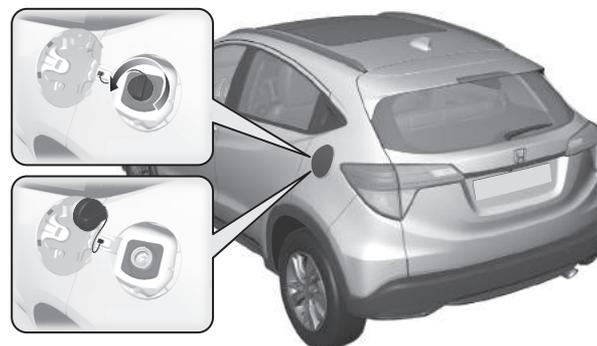
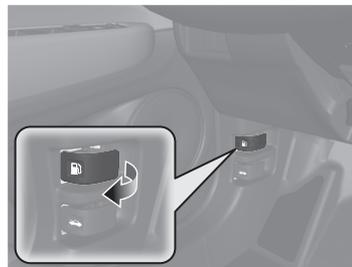
Petrol models

Refueling P.497

Fuel recommendation: EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel
Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol),
research octane number 95 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 50 L (11.0 Imp gal)

- 1** Pull the fuel fill door release handle.
- 2** Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
- 3** Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 4** After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



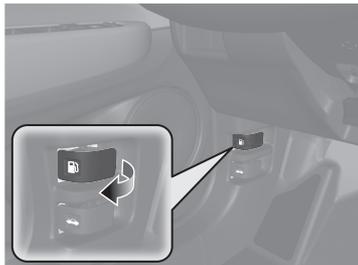
Diesel models

Refueling P.498

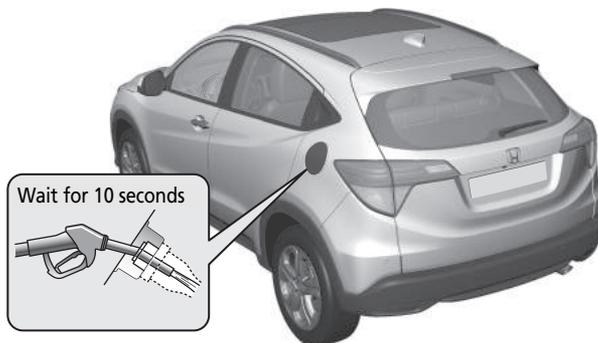
Fuel recommendation: EN 590 standard diesel fuel

Fuel tank capacity: 50 L (11.0 Imp gal)

- 1** Pull the fuel fill door release handle.



- 2** After refueling, wait for about 10 seconds before removing the filler nozzle.

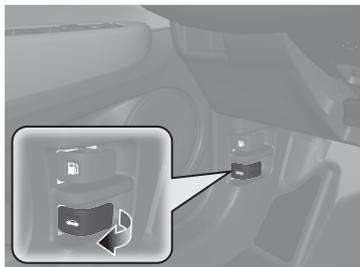


Maintenance ➔P.505

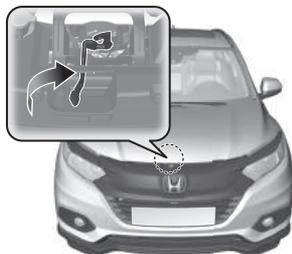
Under the Bonnet ➔P.530

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake/clutch* fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades ➔P.565

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen.



Tyres ➔P.569

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights ➔P.555

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected ▶P.593

Flat Tyre ▶P.596,608

Models with tyre repair kit

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.

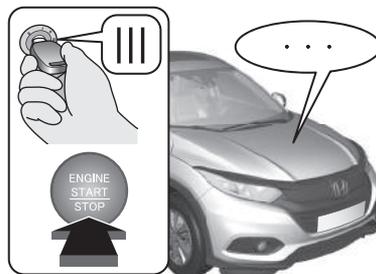
Models with a compact spare tyre

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the compact spare tyre in the luggage area.



Engine Won't Start ▶P.617

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



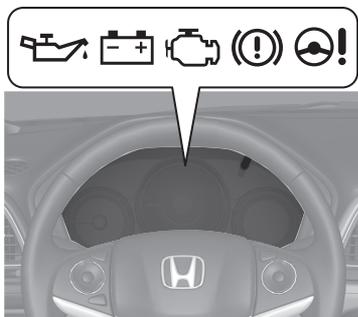
Overheating ▶P.625

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



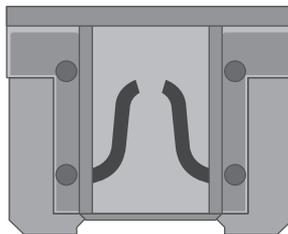
Indicators Come On ▶P.628

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse ▶P.634

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing ▶P.643

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q

Models without keyless access system

The ignition switch does not turn from **0** to **I**.

Why?

Models with keyless access system

The power mode does not change from **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)** to **ACCESSORY**.

Why?

A

• The steering wheel may be locked.

Models without keyless access system

• Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.

Models with keyless access system

• Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



Q

Models without keyless access system

The ignition switch does not turn from **I** to **0** and I cannot remove the key.

Why?

Models with keyless access system

The power mode does not change from **ACCESSORY** to **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**.

Why?

A

The shift lever should be moved to **P**.



Q Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➤ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ➤ P.481

Q The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.
- Auto Idle Stop* is in operation.

Models with keyless access system

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

A The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Q Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?

A

- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in **P*** or **N**. If so, select any other position.

Q I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?

A The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to reinitialise the system.
➔ Deflation Warning System ➔ P. 472

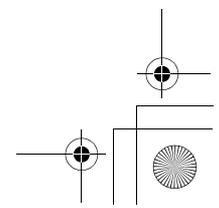
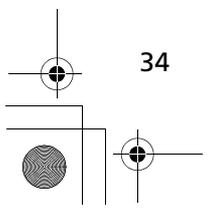
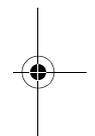
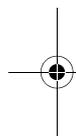
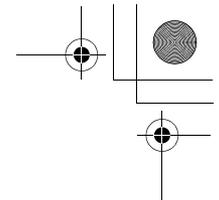
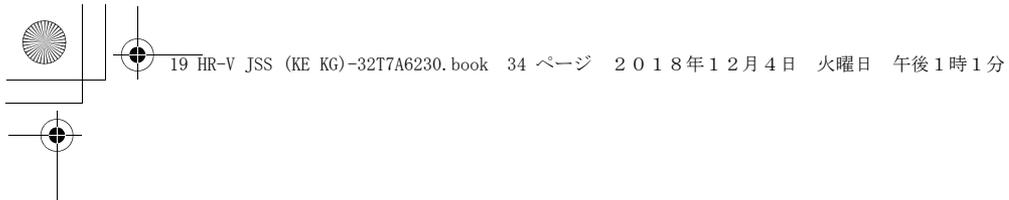
Q

Petrol models

Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher on this vehicle?

A

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded petrol with a research octane of 95 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher may be used temporarily. The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.



Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	36
Important Handling Information.....	38
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	39
Safety Checklist	40

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts.....	41
Fastening a Seat Belt.....	46
Seat Belt Inspection.....	51
Anchorage Points.....	52

Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	53
-------------------------------	----

Types of Airbags	55
Front Airbags (SRS)	55
Side Airbags.....	60
Side Curtain Airbags.....	62
Airbag System Indicators.....	63
Airbag Care	65

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers	66
Safety of Infants and Small Children...	69
Safety of Larger Children	85

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	88
--------------------------	----

Safety Labels

Label Locations.....	89
----------------------	----

For Safe Driving

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

▶ Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

▶▶ For Safe Driving ▶ Important Handling Information

Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-road driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher centre gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

Safe Driving

Important Handling Information

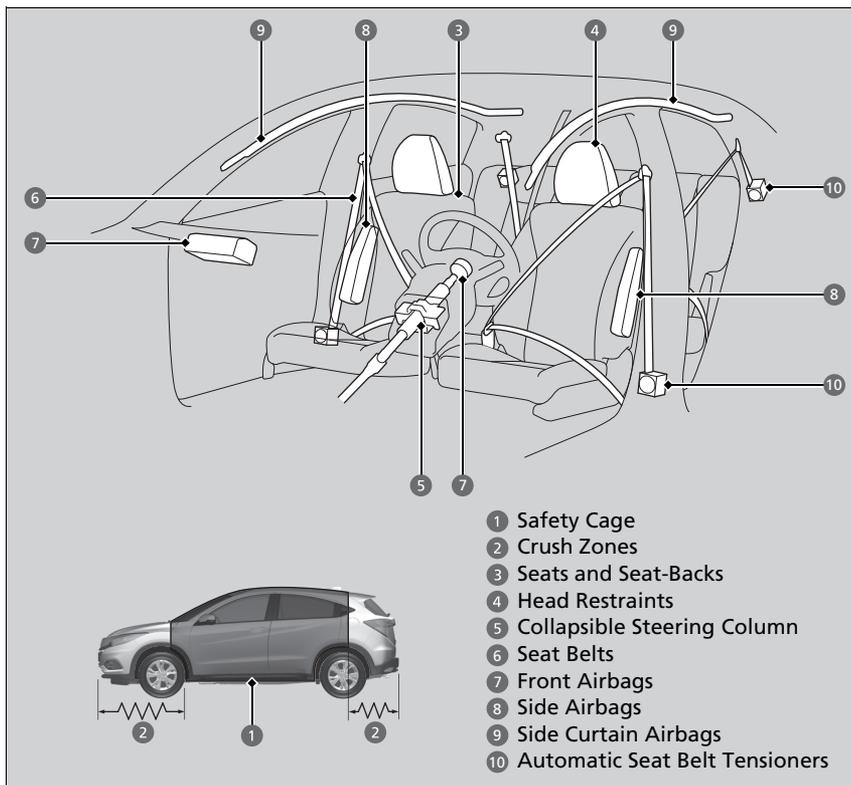
For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

- ▶ **Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle**
P. 419
- ▶ **Off-road Guidelines** P. 411

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

In many countries, the law prohibits off-road driving, e. g. driving in forests, trailblazing, etc. Please check your local laws and regulations before commencing any off-road driving activity.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

▶▶ Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and rear outer seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

▶▶ For Safe Driving ▶ Safety Checklist

Safety Checklist

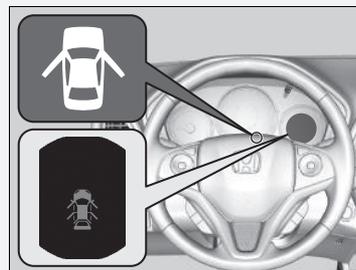
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
 - ☒ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 206
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
 - ☒ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 209
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
 - ☒ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 46
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.
 - ☒ **Child Safety** P. 66

☒ Safety Checklist

If the door and the tailgate open indicator is on, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the indicator goes off.

☒ **Door and Tailgate Open Indicator** P. 103



Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

ⓘ About Your Seat Belts

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Continued

▶▶ Seat Belts ▶ About Your Seat Belts

Safe Driving

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

📖 **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 81

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

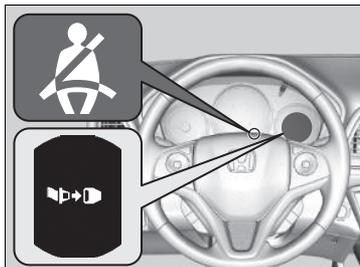
📖 About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

■ Seat Belt Reminder



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If the ignition switch is turned to ON *1 and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

☒ Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON *1.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor.

Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

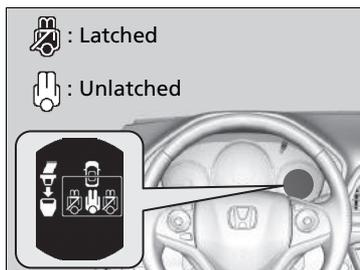
If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

▶▶ Seat Belts ▶ About Your Seat Belts

Safe Driving



■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. A multi-information display notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are used.

The display appears when:

- A rear door is opened and closed.
- Any of the rear passenger latches or unlatches their seat belt.

The beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unlatched while driving.

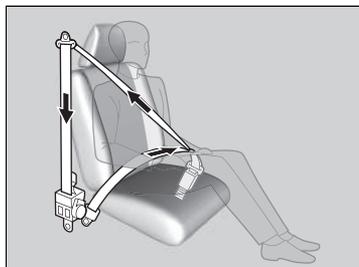
To see the display:

Press the  button repeatedly.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front and rear outer seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.



The tensioners automatically tighten the front and rear outer seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.

⊠ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

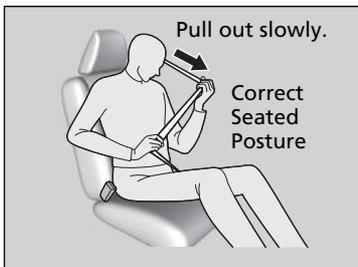
▶▶ Seat Belts ▶ Fastening a Seat Belt

Fastening a Seat Belt

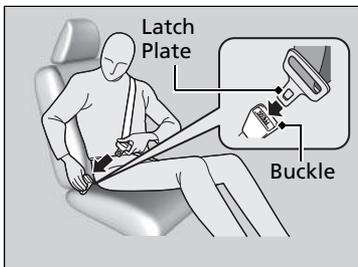
After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

▶ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 206

Safe Driving



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

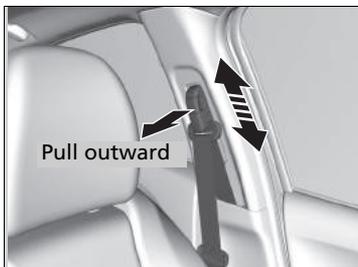
Safe Driving

Continued

▶▶ Seat Belts ▶ Fastening a Seat Belt

■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the shoulder anchor outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

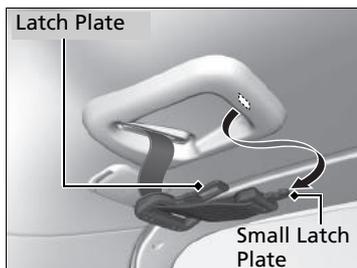
▶▶ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

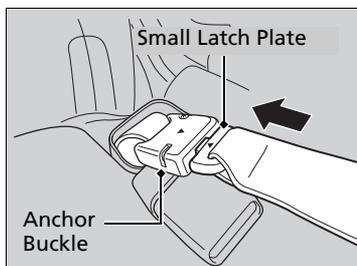
After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

Safe Driving

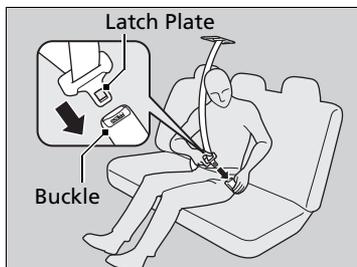
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor



1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchor buckle.



3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

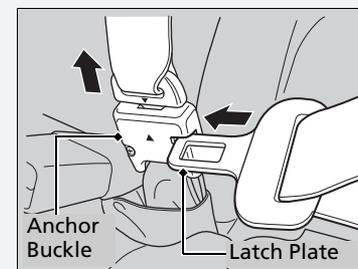
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.



Safe Driving

Continued

▶▶ Seat Belts ▶ Fastening a Seat Belt

Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

⚠ WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

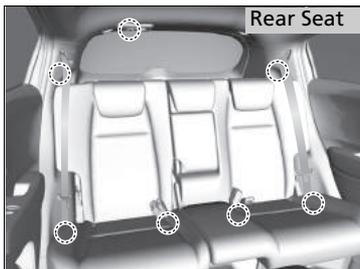
WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

▶▶ Seat Belts ▶ Anchorage Points

Anchorage Points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Safe Driving

Airbags

Airbag System Components

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the ignition switch is in ON **II**^{*1}, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic front and rear outer seat belt tensioners.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- An indicator near the shift lever that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off.
- Safing Sensor

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON *1.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help to reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, only the driver's front airbag can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash and/or other factors.

Continued

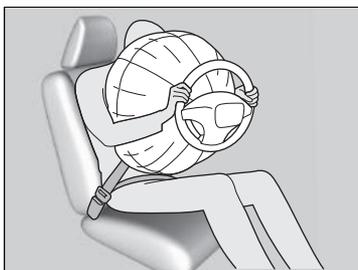
▶▶ Airbags ▶ Front Airbags (SRS)

■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Continued

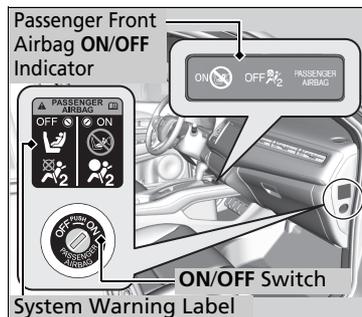
▶▶ Airbags ▶ Front Airbags (SRS)

Safe Driving

■ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the ignition key.

■ Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch



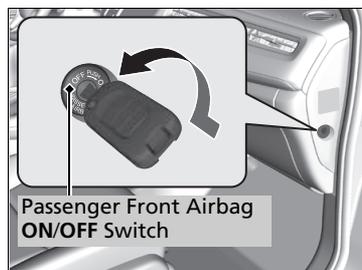
When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:

OFF: The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.

The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.

ON: The passenger front airbag is activated. The passenger front airbag on indicator comes on and remains on for about 60 seconds.

■ To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



1. Set the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]*1. Remove the key.
2. Open the front passenger's door.
3. Insert the ignition key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
 - ▶ The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
4. Turn the key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

⚠ WARNING

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

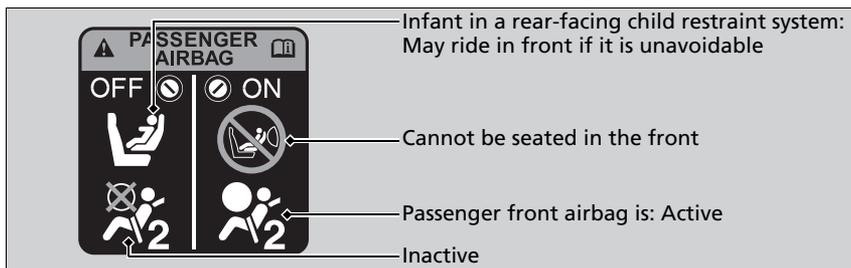
■ Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

■ Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's ignition key to turn the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply excessive load on the ignition key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

Protecting Infants P. 69

It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.

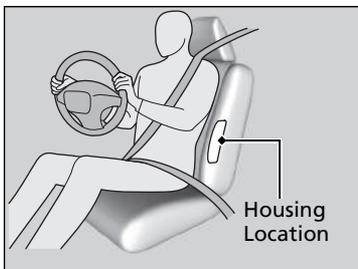
▶▶ Airbags ▶ Side Airbags

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Safe Driving

Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

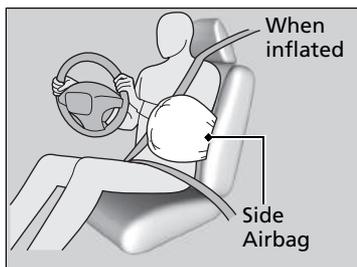
Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

⊠ Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Safe Driving

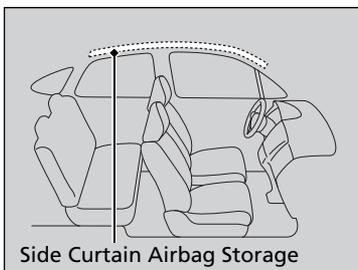
▶▶ Airbags ▶ Side Curtain Airbags

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

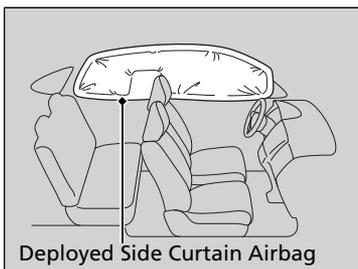
Safe Driving

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

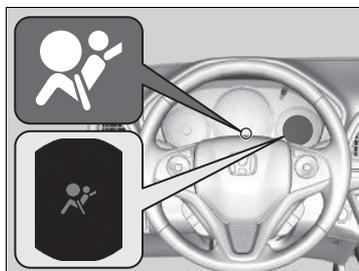
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the multi-information display.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON *1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

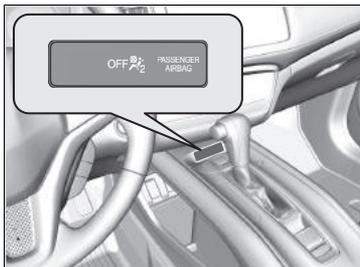
WARNING

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator

Safe Driving



■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front and rear outer seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

⚠ Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Safe Driving

Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm (60 inches) be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirements.

European models

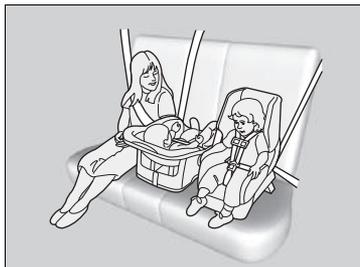
Child restraint systems must meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

Selecting a Child Restraint System P. 72

Except European models

We recommend that child restraint systems meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.

Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt.

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the sun visor. Please read and follow the instructions on the label.
 ▶ Safety Labels P. 89

Continued

▶▶ Child Safety ▶ Protecting Child Passengers

Safe Driving

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

▶ Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

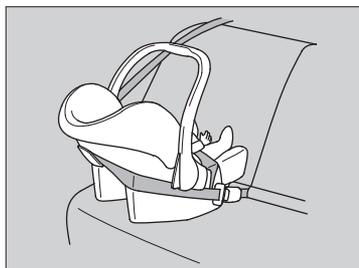
▶ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows**
P. 175

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Safety of Infants and Small Children

Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

Protecting Infants

WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:

WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Safe Driving

Continued

▶▶ Child Safety ▶ Safety of Infants and Small Children

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

Safe Driving

▶ Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old, if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

▶ **Passenger Front Airbag Off System** P. 58

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

☒ Protecting Smaller Children

⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Safe Driving

Continued

■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

▶▶ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

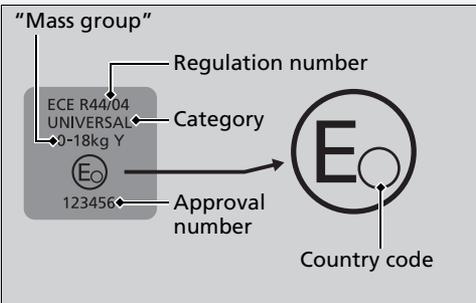
Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

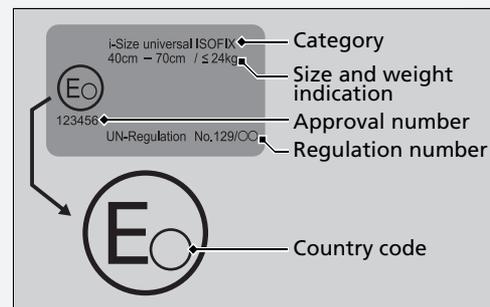
If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

☒ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label

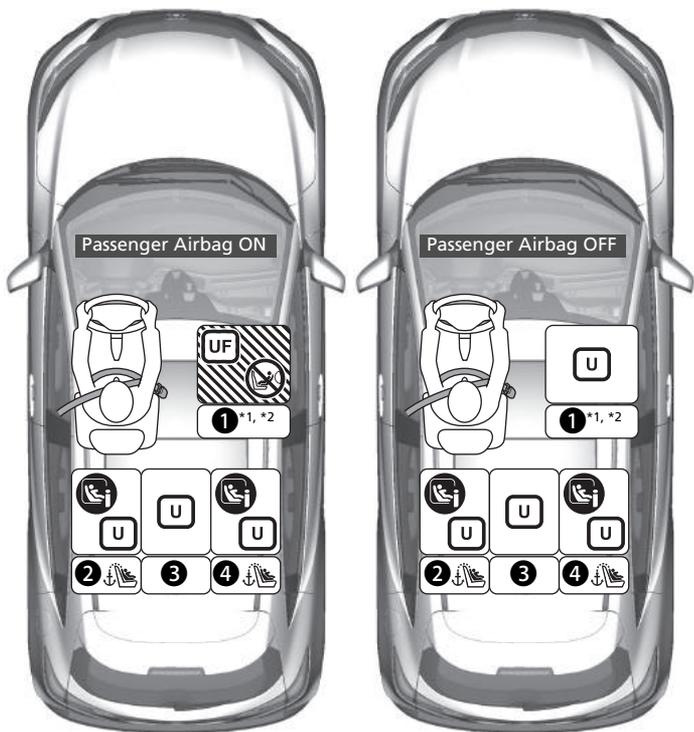


Continued

▶▶ Child Safety ▶ Safety of Infants and Small Children

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Safe Driving



	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1: When installing a child seat, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position and adjust the seat back angle to the most upright position.

*2: If you can not fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchor.

Seat position number	Seating position				
	①		②	③	④
	Front passenger*1, *2		Rear		
	Passenger Airbag ON/OFF switch		Left	Centre	Right
ON	OFF				
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	no	no	yes	no	yes
Seating position suitable for recommended child seat*3 (yes/no)	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	no	no	no	no	no
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	no	no	R3	no	R3
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	no	no	F3	no	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	B3	B3	B3	B3	B3

- *1: When installing a child seat, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position and adjust the seat back angle to the most upright position.
- *2: If you can not fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchor.
- *3: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

The child seat with the support legs can also be attached for non i-size seating position.

Continued

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

Europe Genuine CRS List

R44

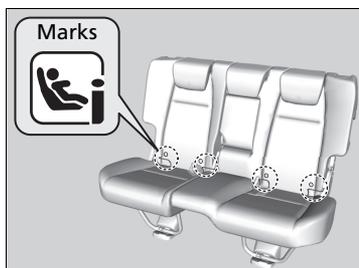
Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	—	—
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	—	—
Group I 9 to 18kg	—	—
Group II, III 15 to 36 kg	Honda KIDFIX XP SICT	Universal Semi-universal

R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
40 to 83cm up to 13kg (Birth - 15 months)	Honda baby safe	Infant carrier module
	Honda baby safe ISOFIX	Base for i-Size
76 to 105cm 8 to 22kg (15 months - 4 years)	Honda ISOFIX	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



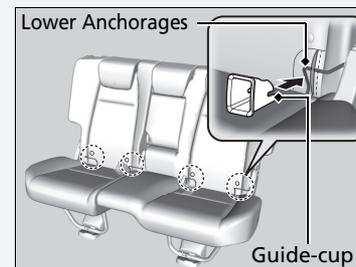
1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.
2. Make sure to lock the seat-back in the upright position.
3. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.

☒ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint system to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

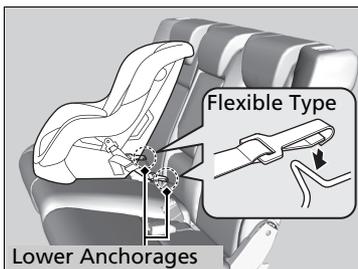
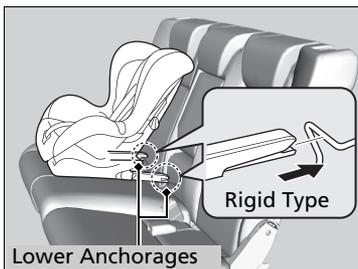
Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



Continued

▶▶ Child Safety ▶ Safety of Infants and Small Children

Safe Driving



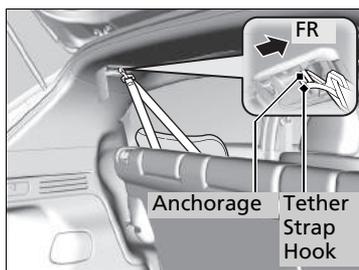
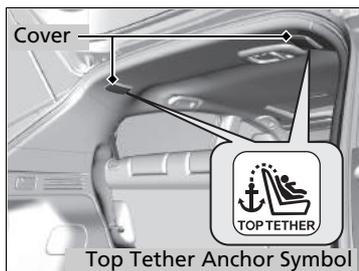
4. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

- ▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

▶▶ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



Child restraint system with tether strap

5. Open the tether anchorage cover.
6. Route the tether strap over the seat-back. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
7. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
8. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
9. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
10. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

▶▶ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

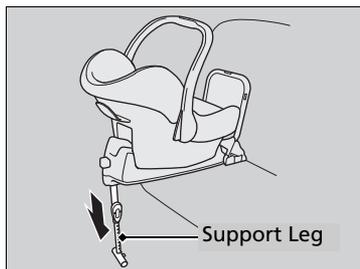
WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

Safe Driving

Continued

▶▶ Child Safety ▶ Safety of Infants and Small Children

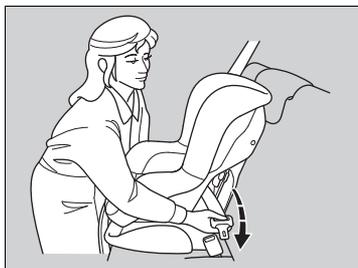
Safe Driving



Child restraint system with support leg

5. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
 - ▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
 - ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Make sure to lock the seat-back in the upright position.
2. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
3. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
4. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.

☒ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

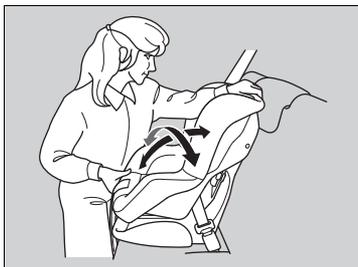
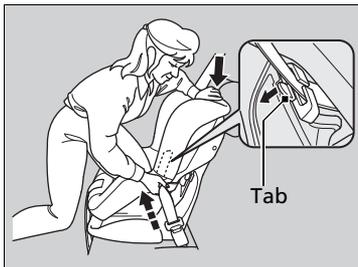
A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

Safe Driving

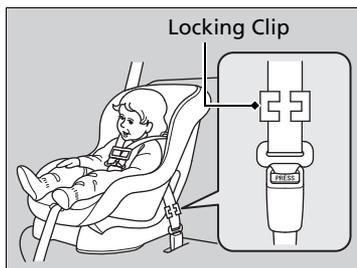
Continued

▶▶ Child Safety ▶ Safety of Infants and Small Children

Safe Driving



5. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
6. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
 - ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
7. Position the belt properly. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
 - ▶ When pulling down the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.
8. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
9. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



Except European models

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

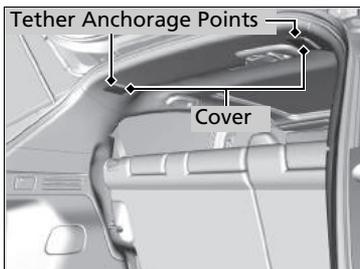
After going through the step 1 and 4, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

- 5.** Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
- 6.** Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
- 7.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 8 and 9.

Continued

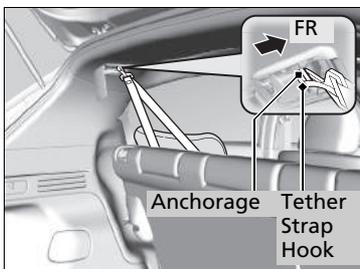
Safe Driving

■ Adding Security with a Tether



Two tether anchorage points are provided on the ceiling for rear outer seating positions. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.
2. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
3. Open the anchorage cover.
4. Route the tether strap over the seat-back. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
5. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.



▶▶ Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint systems when using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

☒ Safety of Larger Children

⚠ WARNING

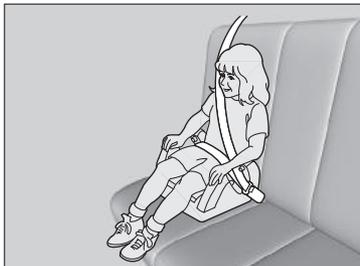
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

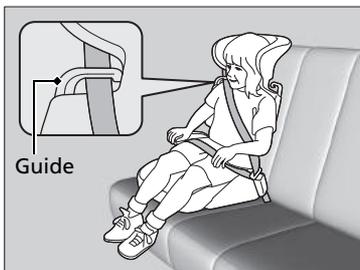
Safe Driving

Continued

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly. There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

Safe Driving

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

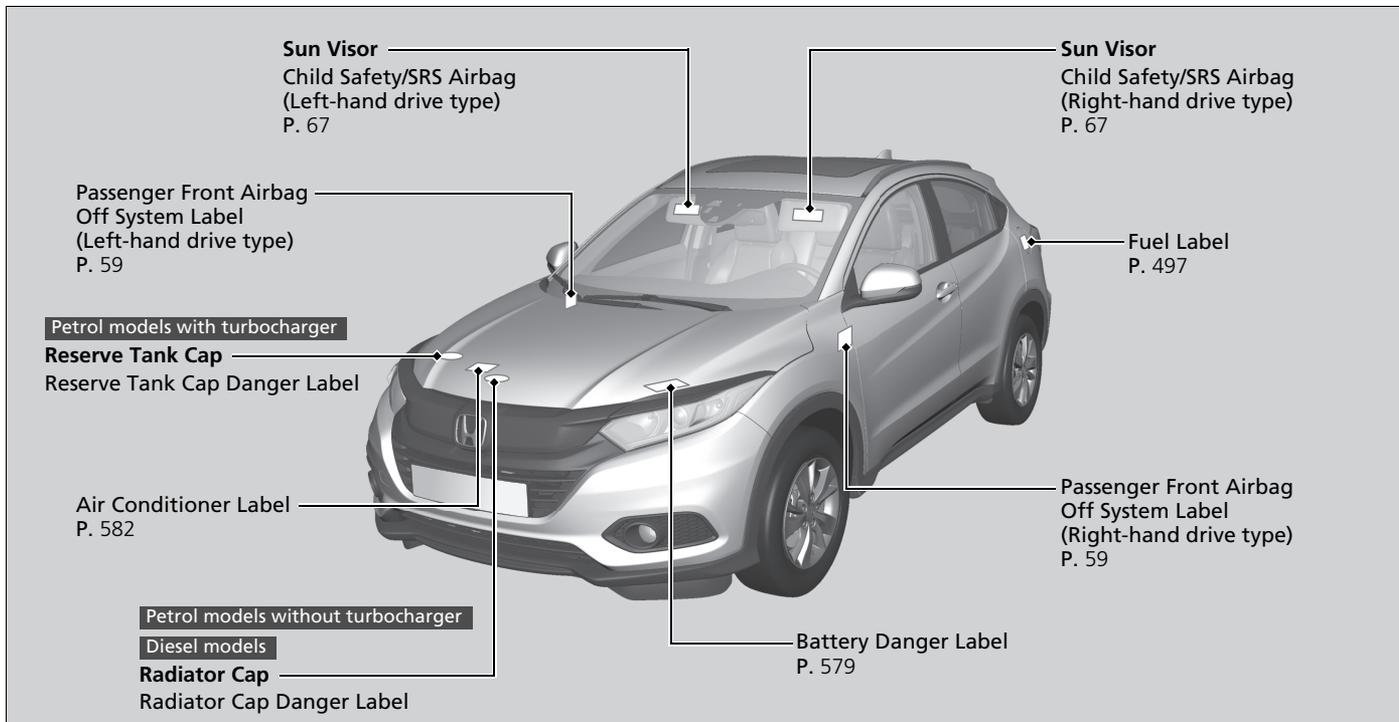
An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Safety Labels

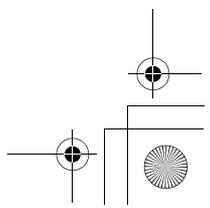
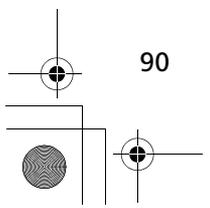
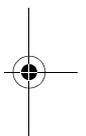
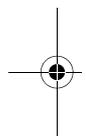
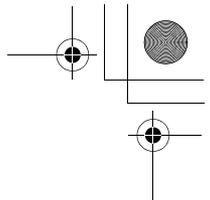
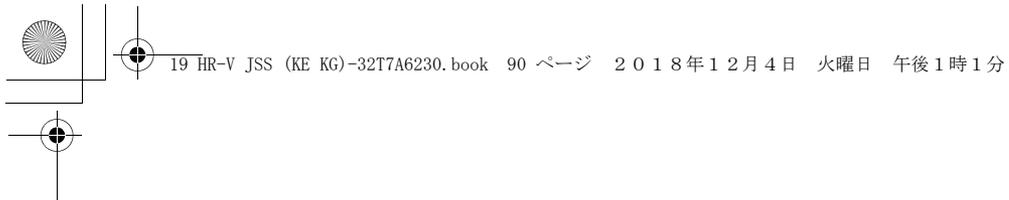
Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



Safe Driving



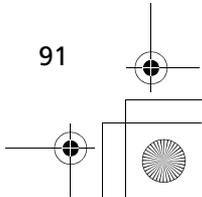
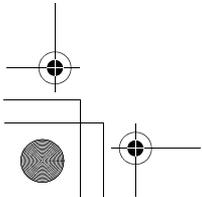


Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



- Indicators** 92
 - Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages..... 116
- Gauges and Multi-Information Display**
 - Gauges..... 136
 - Multi-Information Display 137



Indicators

Instrument Panel

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *¹, then goes off. Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Check the brake fluid level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 629 Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On P. 629 	 

* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. Comes on if there is a problem with the automatic brake hold system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	 <p>(Amber)</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the City-Brake Active system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on along with the CTBA indicator - The City-Brake Active system does not activate. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  City-Brake Active system P. 483 	

Instrument Panel

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Indicators ▶

Instrument Panel

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On P. 628 Diesel models <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Starting the Engine P. 413, 416 	
	Electric Parking Brake Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. Comes on for about 15 seconds when you pull the electric parking brake switch while the ignition switch is in LOCK 0*1. Stays on for about 15 seconds when you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 while the electric parking brake is set. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks and the electric parking brake system indicator comes on at the same time - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. 	 (Amber)
	Electric Parking Brake System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Electric Parking Brake System Indicator Comes On P. 631 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Indicators ▶

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on. 	 Automatic Brake Hold P. 478	 (White)
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated. 	 Automatic Brake Hold P. 478	—

Instrument Panel

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Indicators ▶

Instrument Panel

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, and goes off either when the engine starts, or after several seconds if the engine did not start. Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. <p>Petrol models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Shows the self-testing condition of the diagnostics of the emission control system. <p>Petrol models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks while driving - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer. <p>➤ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 629</p>	
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on when the battery is not charging. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Turn off the climate control system and rear demister in order to reduce electricity consumption. <p>➤ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 628</p>	
	Shift Lever Position Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates the current shift lever position. 	<p>➤ Shifting P. 421, 423</p>	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Transmission System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks while driving - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	
	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when 7-speed manual shift mode is applied. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  7-Speed Manual Shift Mode P. 425 	—
	Shift Up Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on when shifting up is recommended. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Shift Up/Down* Indicators P. 427, 429 	—
	Shift Down Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on when shifting down is recommended. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Shift Up/Down* Indicators P. 427, 429 	—

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Continuously variable transmission models

*3: Manual transmission models

* Not available on all models

Instrument Panel

▶▶ Indicators ▶

Instrument Panel

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}. Blinks while driving if you have not fastened the seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on about a few seconds later. Blinks while driving if the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you fasten the seat belt. Stays on after you have fastened the seat belt - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when the front passenger fastens their seat belt. Stays on after the front passenger has fastened the seat belt - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  Seat Belt Reminder P. 43 	 
	<div style="background-color: #cccccc; padding: 2px;">Diesel models</div> Glow Plugs Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on for a while when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1} under the extremely low engine coolant temperature condition, then goes off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The engine is cold. Do not start the engine until the indicator goes off.  Starting the Engine P. 413, 416 If you still find it hard to start the engine, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer. 	—

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 7.0 Litres/ 1.54 Imp gal left). Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. Blinks - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	 
		<p>Diesel models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the Range on the multi-information display reaches to 0. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Maximum speed is restricted. Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. The vehicle speed limit will be released when refueling 10 Litres (2.2 Imp gal) or more. <p>➤ Refueling P. 497</p>	
		<p>Diesel models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the remaining fuel is nearly-empty. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The vehicle stops soon. You cannot restart the engine. Immediately refuel your vehicle. <p>➤ Refueling P. 497</p>	

Instrument Panel

▶▶ Indicators ▶▶

Instrument Panel

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 481 	
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Supplemental restraint system - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Both indicators come on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off after a system check up. When the passenger front airbag is active: The on indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds. When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The off indicator comes back on and stays on. This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated. 	 Passenger Front Airbag Off System P. 58	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Indicators ▶

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Blinks when VSA is active. Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA or hill start assist system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System P. 469  Hill start assist system P. 415, 418 	 
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on when you deactivate VSA. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  VSA On and OFF P. 470 	—

Instrument Panel

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	High Temperature Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. Blinks when the engine coolant temperature goes up, and stays on if the temperature continues to rise. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Goes off, then comes on blue when the engine coolant temperature is low. Blinks while driving - Drive slowly to prevent overheating. Stays on while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place and allow the engine to cool.  Overheating P. 625 	
	Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the engine coolant temperature is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the indicator stays on after the engine has reached normal operating temperature, there may be a problem with the temperature sensors. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. 	
	Door and Tailgate Open Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. Comes on if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed. The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Goes off when all doors and the tailgate are closed. 	

Instrument Panel

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Indicators ▶

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 630 	
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the multi-information display appears at the same time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> While the indicator is on, press the /  (information) button to see the message again. Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the multi-information display. Take appropriate action for the message. The multi-information display does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the /  button is pressed. 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. May come on briefly if the ignition switch is turned to ON ^{*1} and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialisation process is not yet complete. Comes on and stays on when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. The system has not been initialised. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures - The system needs to be initialised. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 472 	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system, or when a compact spare tyre* is temporarily installed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks and remains on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare*, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can. 	

Instrument Panel

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued 105

▶▶ Indicators ▶



Instrument Panel

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Auto Idle Stop P. 432, 436 	
		<p>Manual transmission models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when the ambient conditions may cause the windows to fog up. Blinks when the ambient conditions may become different from the climate control settings you have selected. Blinks when the icon is selected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depress the clutch pedal. The engine automatically restarts. Auto Idle Stop P. 436 	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. 	—	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Auto Idle Stop system has been turned off by the Auto Idle Stop system OFF button. 	 Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF P. 432, 436	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if there is a problem with the Auto Idle Stop system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

Instrument Panel

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued 107

▶▶ Indicators ▶

Instrument Panel

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does not blink or blinks rapidly Replacing Light Bulbs P. 559, 560 	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emergency Stop Signal P. 488 	
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. 	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the light switch is in a position other than OFF or when the switch is set to AUTO and the exterior lights come on. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you remove the key from the ignition switch*, or set the power mode* to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened. 	
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the front fog lights are on. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fog Lights P. 190 	—
	Rear Fog Light Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the rear fog light is on. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fog Lights P. 190 	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. • Comes on if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Models without keyless access system You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK , pull the key out, and then insert the key and turn it to ON  again. Models with keyless access system You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then select the ON mode again. • Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. 	—

Instrument Panel

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Indicators ▶

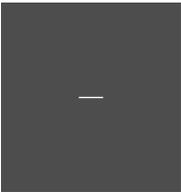
Instrument Panel

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	ECON Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on when ECON mode is on. 	 ECON Mode P. 431	
	Keyless Access System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	
 ^{*2} Indicator  ^{*3} Indicator	Security System Alarm Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when the security system alarm has been set. 	 Security System Alarm * P. 171	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Left-hand drive type

*3: Right-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Auto High-Beam Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met. 	 Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)* P. 192	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Instrument Panel

* Not available on all models

Continued 111

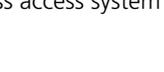
▶▶ Indicators ▶



Instrument Panel

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Forward Collision Warning Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. • Comes on when you have customized forward collision warning system to turn off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stays on constantly without the system off - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the system shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☑ Automatic shutoff P. 456 	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☑ Automatic shutoff P. 456 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Lane Departure Warning Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the lane departure warning system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the system shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Lane Departure Warning Camera P. 459 	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Lane Departure Warning Camera P. 459 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Instrument Panel

▶▶ Indicators ▶



Instrument Panel

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
CTBA	City-Brake Active System (CTBA) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. 	—	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Goes off when you have customized the City-Brake Active system to turn on. Comes on when you have customized the City-Brake Active system to turn off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  City-Brake Active system P. 483  Customized Features P. 144 	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the area around the laser sensor, which is located in the upper part of the windscreen, is covered with obstacles, such as dirt, ice and frost. May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remove dirt or any obstacles using the washer and wipers. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe away dirt or any obstacles covering the area around the laser sensor on the windscreen. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  City-Brake Active system P. 483 The system resumes when obstacles are removed. 	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when snow is accumulated on the bonnet. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stop your vehicle in a safe place and remove snow from the bonnet. 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
CTBA	City-Brake Active System (CTBA) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> May come on when the temperatures of the area around the laser sensor are high. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the climate control system to cool down the area around the laser sensor. The system resumes when the temperatures of the area around the laser sensor go down. 	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on along with the brake system indicator (amber) if there is a problem with the system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The system does not activate. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

Instrument Panel

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

The following messages appear only on the multi-information display. Press the /▼ (information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message	Condition	Explanation
 	<p>Continuously variable transmission models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while you are customizing the settings and the shift lever is moved out of [P]. <p>Manual transmission models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while you are customizing the settings and the parking brake is released. 	<p>➤ Customized Features P. 144</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the ignition switch is in ON [II]*1. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched, or either rear door is opened and closed. 	<p>➤ Seat Belt Reminder P. 43</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle speed reaches the set speed. You can set two different speeds for the alarm. 	<p>➤ Speed Alarm Setting P. 142</p>

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you set the power mode to ON without fastening the driver's seat belt. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fasten the seat belt properly before you start to drive.  Shift Lever Operation P. 422, 424, 428
 *1 (Amber)  *2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediately depress the brake pedal.

*1:Continuously variable transmission models
 *2:Manual transmission models

Instrument Panel

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Instrument Panel

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off. 	<p>➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 478</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fasten the driver's seat belt. <p>➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 478</p>
 *1  *2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. <p>➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 478</p>
 (White)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while the automatic brake hold is in operation. 	<p>➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 478</p> <p>➤ Parking Brake P. 475</p>

*1:Continuously variable transmission models
 *2:Manual transmission models

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while driving - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	<p>Models with LED headlights</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the headlights. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the starter system has a problem. 	<p>Models without keyless access system</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> As a temporary measure, hold the turn the ignition switch to START  for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and clutch pedal (manual transmission only), and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <p>Models with keyless access system</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> As a temporary measure, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and clutch pedal (manual transmission only), manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Instrument Panel

* Not available on all models

Continued 119

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the engine oil level is low while the engine is running. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place.  If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears P. 633
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the engine is running, there is a system problem in the engine oil level sensor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Instrument Panel

Models with Auto Idle Stop

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate for some reason. • Appears when the engine restarts automatically. 	<p>➤ Auto Idle Stop P. 432, 436</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the battery charge level is low. • Appears when the battery is low performance. • Appears when the system is under the following conditions while Auto Idle Stop activates: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The battery charge level is low. 	<p>➤ Auto Idle Stop P. 432, 436</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The engine restarts automatically in a few seconds.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the engine coolant temperature is low or high. 	<p>➤ Auto Idle Stop P. 432, 436</p>

Instrument Panel

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Models with Auto Idle Stop

Message	Condition	Explanation
 Instrument Panel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Auto Idle Stop P. 432, 436
	<p>Continuously variable transmission models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the system is under the following conditions while Auto Idle Stop activates: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant. - The humidity in the interior is high. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The engine restarts automatically in a few seconds.
 *1 (White)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the pressure to the brake pedal is not enough. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depress the brake pedal firmly.

*1:Continuously variable transmission models

Message	Condition	Explanation
 *2  *3	<p>Models with Auto Idle Stop</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while driving - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.  Parking Brake P. 475
 *3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears in white when you turn the ignition switch to START *1 before fully depressing the clutch pedal. <p>Models with Auto Idle Stop</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears in white when the ambient conditions may cause the windows to fog up or may become different from the climate control settings you have selected while Auto Idle Stop is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depress the clutch pedal.
	<p>Models with Auto Idle Stop</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears in amber when the following conditions are kept while Auto Idle Stop is in operation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> You are not wearing a seat belt. The shift lever is in any position except N. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depress the clutch pedal. Wear the seat belt immediately, and continue to keep the shift lever in N next time Auto Idle Stop activates.

Instrument Panel

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Continuously variable transmission models

*3: Manual transmission models

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<p>Models with Auto Idle Stop</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you move the shift lever from N to any other position without depressing the clutch pedal while Auto Idle Stop is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The engine will not start even when the battery charge becomes low. Shift to N to avoid the battery charge becomes low. <p>➤ Auto Idle Stop P. 436</p>
	<p>Models with Auto Idle Stop</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the bonnet is opened. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Close the bonnet.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the ECON mode is turned off by pressing the ECON button. 	<p>➤ ECON Mode P. 431</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. The beeper sounds. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead. The alert will disappear. The system automatically applies the brake if a possible collision becomes likely unavoidable. <p>➤ City-Brake Active system P. 483</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Changes the display when your vehicle is stopped by the system. The beeper stops. 	

*1:Manual transmission models

Models with service reminder system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when any of the service items is required in less than 30 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The remaining days will be counted down per day. ▶ Service Reminder System* P. 509
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when any of the service items is required in less than 10 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible. ▶ Service Reminder System* P. 509
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining days reach 0. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder. ▶ Service Reminder System* P. 509

Instrument Panel

* Not available on all models

Continued 125

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Models with oil monitor system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter should be changed soon.  Oil Monitor System* P. 514
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due. Appears when the scheduled engine oil change is passed due. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter should be changed as soon as possible.  Oil Monitor System* P. 514 The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter should be changed immediately.  Oil Monitor System* P. 514

Instrument Panel

Models without keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY I from ON II. (The driver's door is closed.) 	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY I. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0, then remove the key.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK 0. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remove the key from the ignition switch.
 *1  *2	<p>Manual transmission models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears in white when you turn the ignition switch to START III before fully depressing the clutch pedal. <p>Models with Auto Idle Stop</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears in amber when the engine does not restart automatically due to the following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The bonnet is open. - There is a problem in the system that disables Auto Idle Stop. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn the ignition switch after fully depressing the clutch pedal. Follow the normal procedure to start the engine. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Starting the Engine P. 413

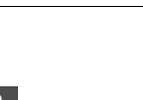
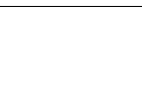
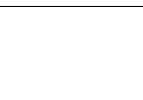
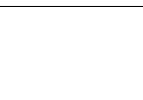
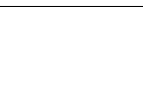
*1:Manual transmission models

*2:Continuously variable transmission models

Instrument Panel

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
 Instrument Panel  *1  *2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears in white after you unlock and open the driver's door. • Appears in white when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Starting the Engine P. 416
	<p>Models with Auto Idle Stop</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears in amber when the engine does not restart automatically due to the following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The bonnet is open. - There is a problem in the system that disables Auto Idle Stop. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Follow the normal procedure to start the engine. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Starting the Engine P. 416
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears in white when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. 	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears in amber after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 182
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless remote inside the vehicle. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Keyless Remote Reminder P. 184

*1:Continuously variable transmission models
 *2:Manual transmission models

Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace the battery as soon as possible. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Replacing the Button Battery P. 580
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the keyless remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 619
 *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if you press the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice with your foot off the brake pedal, after moving the shift lever to P.
	<p>Models with Auto Idle Stop</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the engine stops without the shift lever in P, and does not restart automatically. Appears if you open the bonnet while Auto Idle Stop activates. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you want to set the power mode to ON, move the shift lever to P. If you want to start the engine, follow the normal procedure. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Starting the Engine P. 416
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the steering wheel is locked. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button.

*1:Continuously variable transmission models

Instrument Panel

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if you press the ENGINE START/STOP button while the vehicle is moving. 	<p>➤ Emergency Engine Stop P. 620</p>

Models with parking sensor system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If there is a problem with any of the sensors, the appropriate sensor indicator(s) comes on. 	

Instrument Panel

Models with auto high-beam

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when there is a problem with the auto high-beam. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manually operate the headlight switch. If you are driving with the high beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)* P. 192

Models with forward collision warning

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. The beeper sounds. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Forward Collision Warning* P. 454

Models with lane departure warning

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when your vehicle is too close to the traffic lane lines. The beeper sounds. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Take appropriate action to keep your vehicle within the lane lines. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Lane Departure Warning* P. 458

* Not available on all models

Instrument Panel

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Models with auto high-beam

Models with traffic sign recognition system

Instrument Panel

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the system shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while driving - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 462 ➤ Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)* P. 192
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the system shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while driving - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message appears again after you cleaned the area around the camera. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 462 ➤ Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)* P. 192

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Petrol models

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears when there is a problem related to the battery charging system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ▶ Checking the Battery P. 575• Turn off the climate control system and rear demister to reduce electricity consumption.

Instrument Panel

▶▶ Indicators ▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages

Diesel models

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you need to regenerate the diesel particulate filter (DPF). This is not a DPF failure. 	<p> Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Regeneration* P. 553</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you ignore . Particulate matter has started clogging the DPF system. This is a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when water has accumulated in the fuel system. Appears if you have parked your vehicle for an extended period. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have a dealer drain off the water from the system as soon as possible. Accumulated water may cause damage to the fuel system.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the engine is cold when you turn the ignition switch*¹. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The engine automatically starts when the symbol disappears. If the clutch pedal is not depressed, the engine cannot start. <p> Starting the Engine P. 413, 416</p>

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Diesel models

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears during driving if there is a problem with the engine control system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the PGM-FI Symbol Appears P. 633
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you cannot restart the engine after the fuel tank has been run dry. Air may have entered the fuel system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if you do not use the proper fuel for the climate or regional conditions. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use of inadequate fuel may reduce engine power. ➤ Fuel recommendation P. 498

Instrument Panel

Gauges and Multi-Information Display

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON ^{*1}.

■ Changing ambient meter colour

You can change the white to some colours.

 **Customized Features** P. 144

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h or mph.

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

Instrument Panel

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Multi-Information Display

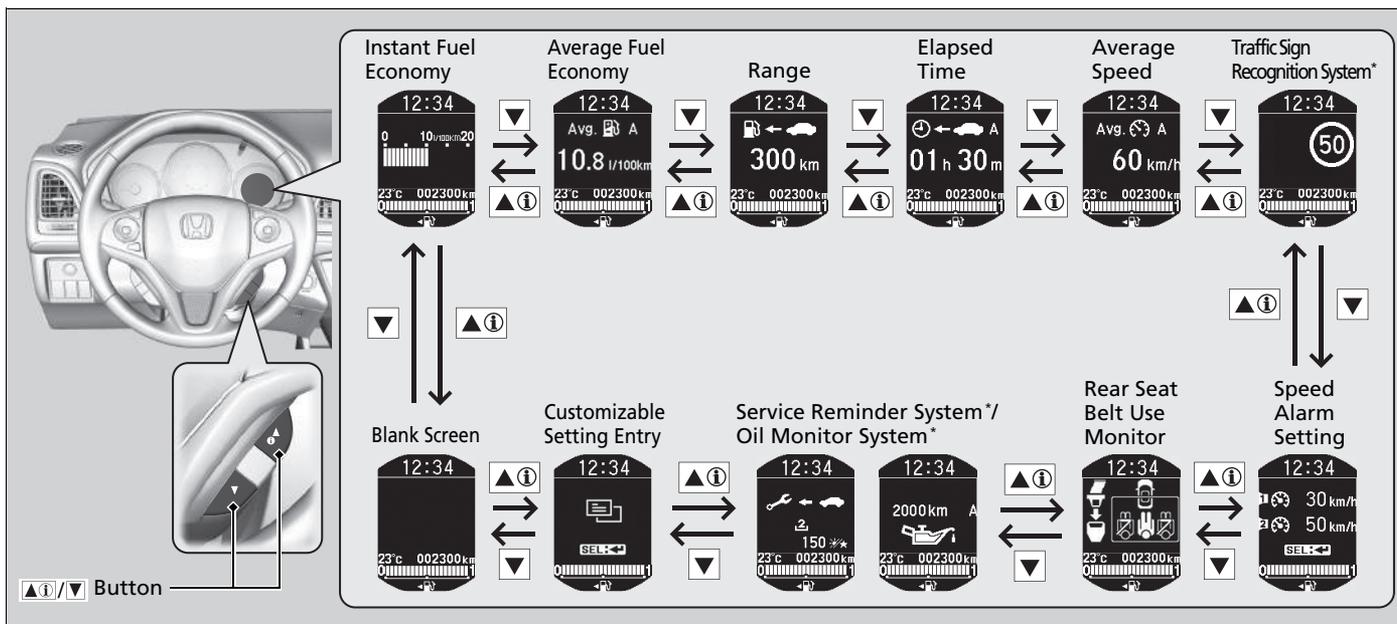
The multi-information display shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

Switching the Display

Main displays

Press the  (information) button to change the display.



* Not available on all models

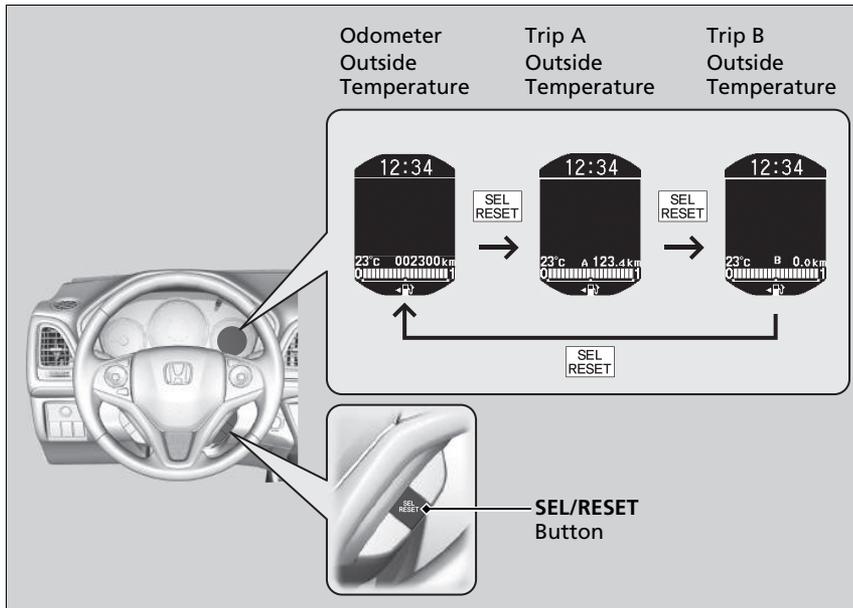
Instrument Panel

Continued 137

▶▶ Gauges and Multi-Information Display ▶ Multi-Information Display

■ Lower displays

Press the **SEL/RESET** button to change the display.



Instrument Panel

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles driven since the last reset. Trip A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or mpg. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or B was reset.

☒ Trip Meter

Switch between Trip A and B by pressing the **SEL/RESET** button.

☒ Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 144

☒ Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 144

▶▶ Gauges and Multi-Information Display ▶ Multi-Information Display

Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h or mph since Trip A or B was reset.

Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or mpg.

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, the outside temperature indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Rear Seat Belt Use Monitor

Shows the rear seat belt use.

 **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 43

Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

 **Customized Features** P. 144

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the multi-information display's customized features to correct the temperature.

 **Customized Features** P. 144

Fuel Gauge**NOTICE**

You should refuel when the reading approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

■ Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Shows the traffic sign recognition system.

▶ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 462

■ Service Reminder System*

Shows the service reminder system.

▶ **Service Reminder System*** P. 509

■ Oil Monitor System*

Shows the oil monitor system.

▶ **Oil Monitor System*** P. 514

Instrument Panel

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Gauges and Multi-Information Display ▶ Multi-Information Display

■ Speed Alarm Setting

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

■ To set the speed alarm

Instrument Panel



1. Press the /▼ button until the speed alarm setting screen appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

2. Press the /▼ button and select (speed alarm 1) or (speed alarm 2), then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

▶ (off) switches to (on), then the display returns to the normal screen.

▶ If the speed alarm is (on), it switches to (off).

▶▶ Speed Alarm Setting

The default settings for (speed alarm 1) and (speed alarm 2) are (off).

You can also return to the normal screen by selecting (exit).

■ To change the speed setting



1. Press the /▼ button until the speed alarm setting menu appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
2. Press the /▼ button and select the speed alarm 1 speed setting or speed alarm 2 speed setting, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
3. Press the /▼ button and select the speed, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ The speed setting is set, then the display returns to the normal screen.
 - ▶ You can set the speed setting over 5 km/h (mph) with 1 km/h (mph) steps.

⊠ Speed Alarm Setting

You cannot change the speed setting while driving.

Instrument Panel

Continued

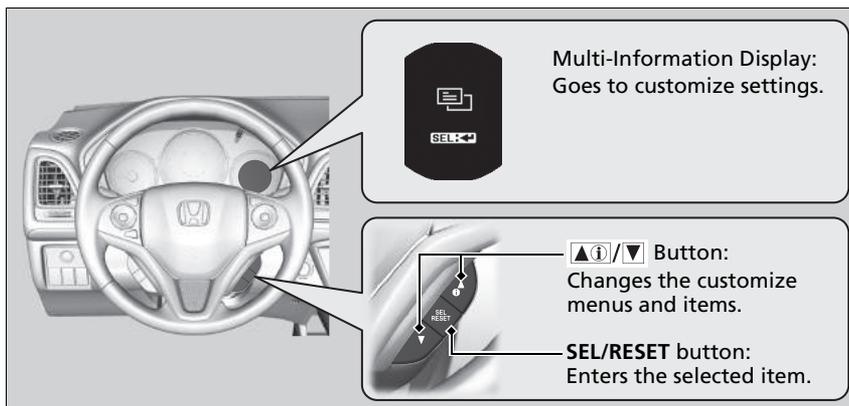
▶▶ Gauges and Multi-Information Display ▶ Multi-Information Display

■ Customized Features

Use the multi-information display to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

Select the  (customize settings) screen by pressing the  button while the ignition switch is in ON *1, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift lever is in **P** (continuously variable transmission), and the parking brake is set (manual transmission). Press the **SEL/RESET** button to enter the customizing mode.



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶ Customized Features

To customize other features, press the  button.

- ▶ **List of customizable options** P. 147
- ▶ **Example of customization settings** P. 150

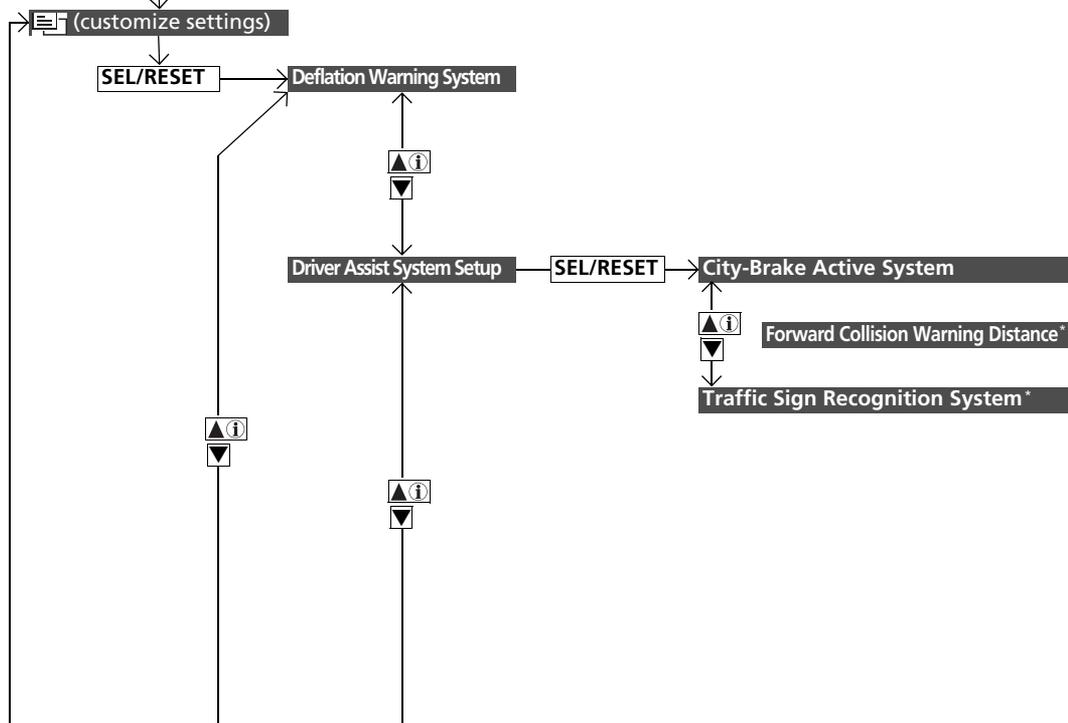
When you customize settings:

Continuously variable transmission models
Shift to **P**.

Manual transmission models
Set the parking brake.

■ Customization flow

Press the /▼ button.

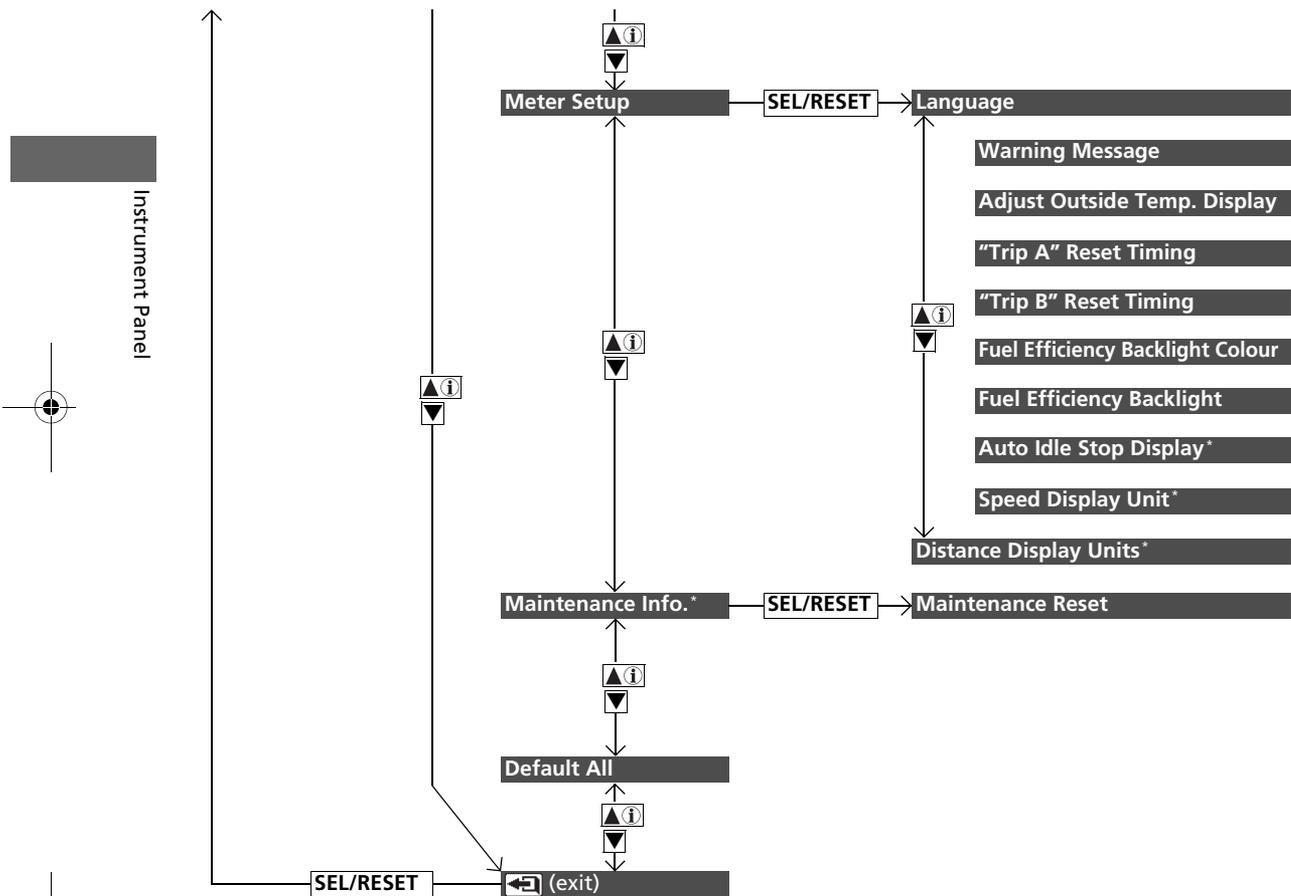


Instrument Panel

* Not available on all models

Continued 145

▶▶ Gauges and Multi-Information Display ▶ Multi-Information Display



146 * Not available on all models

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation Warning System	—	Initialises the deflation warning system.	Cancel/Initialise
	City-Brake Active System	Turns the City-Brake Active system feature on and off.	ON^{*1}/OFF
Driver Assist System Setup	Forward Collision Warning Distance[*]	Changes at which distance forward collision warning alerts, or turns the system on and off.	Far/Normal^{*1}/Near/OFF
	Traffic Sign Recognition System[*]	Selects whether the traffic sign small icons come on the multi-information display.	Small Icon ON^{*1}/Small Icon OFF

*1:Default Setting

Instrument Panel

* Not available on all models

Continued 147

▶▶ Gauges and Multi-Information Display ▶ Multi-Information Display

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Instrument Panel Meter Setup	Language	Changes the displayed language.	English ^{*1} /German/Italian/ French/Spanish/Polish/ Portuguese/Dutch/Danish/ Swedish/Norwegian/Finnish/ Russian/Turkish
	Warning Message	Switches warning message to be displayed or not.	ON/OFF ^{*1}
	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C ^{*1} ~ +3°C
	"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/ Manual Reset ^{*1}
	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/ Manual Reset ^{*1}
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight Colour	Changes the ambient meter colour.	Random/Blue/Violet/Pink/ Red/Amber/Yellow/White ^{*1}
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	ON ^{*1} /OFF
	Auto Idle Stop Display[*]	Selects whether the Auto Idle Stop display comes on or not.	ON ^{*1} /OFF
	Speed Display Unit^{*2}	Changes the displayed measurement of the set vehicle speed on the multi-information display.	km/h, mph ^{*1}
Distance Display Units^{*2}	Changes the displayed measurement on the multi-information display.	km/miles ^{*1}	

*1:Default Setting

*2:Right-hand drive type except Cyprus models

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Maintenance Info.*	Maintenance Reset	Cancels/Resets the service reminder display*/oil monitor display* when you have performed the maintenance service. The items of selectable settings depend on models.	Models with service reminder system Cancel/All Due Items/Item A Only/Item B Only/Item 0 Only/Item 1 Only/Item 2 Only/Item 3 Only/Item 4 Only/Item 5 Only/Item 6 Only/Item 7 Only/Item 8 Only/Item 9 Only
			Models with oil monitor system Cancel/Reset
Default All	—	Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default.	Cancel/OK

Instrument Panel

* Not available on all models

■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the “Trip A” Reset Timing setting to **When Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for “Trip A” Reset Timing is **Manual Reset**.

1. Press the /▼ button until (customize settings) appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

2. Press the /▼ button until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.

3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.



Instrument Panel





4. Press the /▼ button until **“Trip A” Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

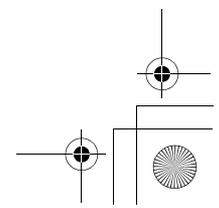
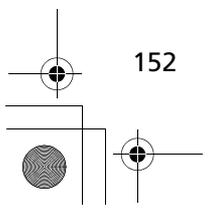
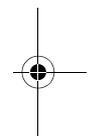
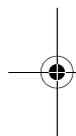
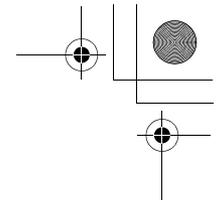
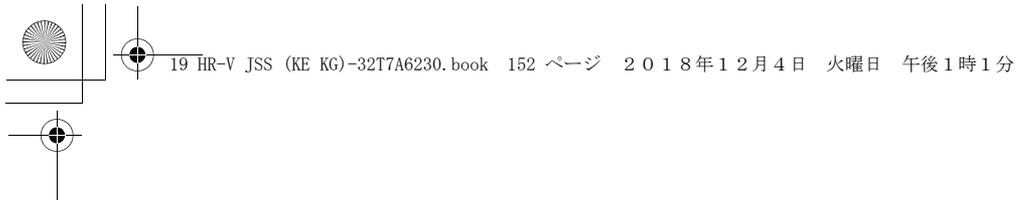
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Refueled, When Ignition Is Turned Off, Manual Reset,** or (exit).

5. Press the /▼ button and select **When Refueled**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

▶ The **When Refueled Setup** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

6. Press the /▼ button until (exit) appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.



Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock	154	Panoramic Roof*	178	Wipers and Washers.....	195
Locking and Unlocking the Doors		Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel		Brightness Control.....	198
Key Types and Functions	156	Models without keyless access system		Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Icon....	199
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength* ..	159	Ignition Switch.....	181	Driving Position Memory System*	200
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside ..	160	Models with keyless access system		Adjusting the Steering Wheel	202
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ...	166	ENGINE START/STOP Button	182	Adjusting the Mirrors	
Childproof Door Locks	168	Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison..	185	Interior Rearview Mirror.....	203
Opening and Closing the Tailgate	169	Turn Signals.....	186	Power Door Mirrors.....	204
Security System		Light Switches	187	Adjusting the Seats	
Immobilizer System	171	Fog Lights.....	190	Front Seats	206
Security System Alarm*	171	Headlight Adjuster*	191	Rear Seats	213
Ultrasonic Sensors*	173	Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)*	192	Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items	217
Super Locking*	174	Daytime Running Lights	194	Climate Control System	
Opening and Closing the Windows	175			Using Automatic Climate Control	230
				Automatic Climate Control Sensors	239

* Not available on all models

Clock

Adjusting the Clock

Models without navigation system

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON *1.

Adjusting the Time

Models with colour audio system

■ Using the MENU/CLOCK button



1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
▶ **Adjust clock** is selected.
2. Rotate  to change hour, then press .
3. Rotate  to change minute, then press .
4. To enter the selection, rotate  and select **Set**, then press .

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Adjusting the Clock

Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the navigation system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

You should customize the time zone and daylight saving.

▶ **Customized Features P. 345**

Adjusting the Time

Models with colour audio system

These indications are used to show how to operate the **LIST/SELECT** (Selector) knob.

Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

▶ **Customized Features P. 335**

You can also select **Adjust clock** by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate  to select **Adjust clock**, then press .

The clock in the multi-information display is automatically adjusted along with the audio system's clock display.

Models with display audio system**■ Using the settings menu on the audio/information screen**

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Info**.
4. Select the **Clock** tab.
5. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
6. Select  or  to change hour.
7. Select  or  to change minute, then select **OK**.

▶▶ Adjusting the Time**Models with display audio system**

The clock in the multi-information display is automatically adjusted along with the audio system's clock display.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

 **Customized Features** P. 345

You can turn the clock display on and off.

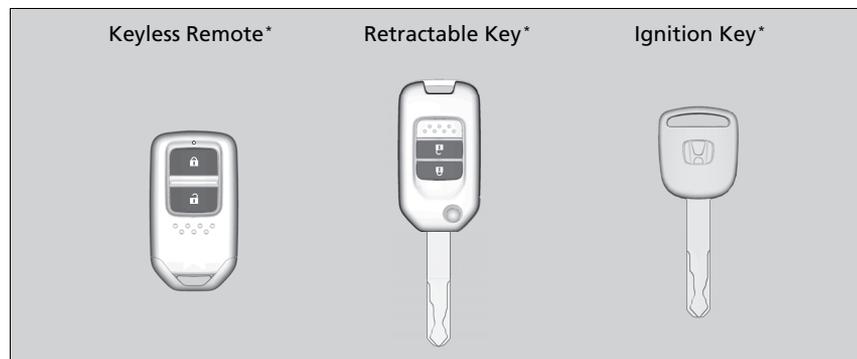
 **Customized Features** P. 345

Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:

Use the key to start and stop the engine, and to lock all the doors and tailgate. You can also use the remote transmitter or keyless access system* to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.



Controls

Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➤ **Immobilizer System** P. 171

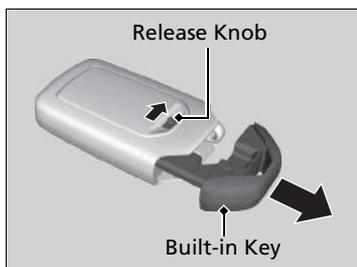
Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter/keyless access system* may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

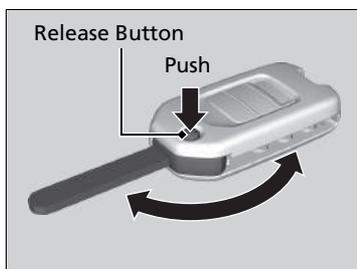
■ Built-in Key*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors and tailgate when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, pull it out while sliding the release knob. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

■ Retractable Key*



The key folds up inside the remote transmitter.

1. Press the release button to release the key out from the transmitter.
 - ▶ Make sure to fully extend the key.
2. To close the key, press the release button then push the key inside the transmitter until you hear a click.

☒ Retractable Key*

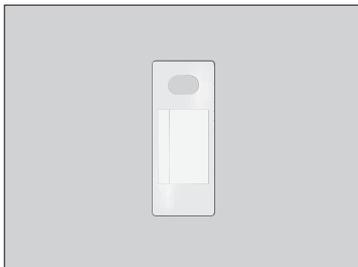
If the key is not fully extended, the immobilizer system may not work properly, and the engine may not start. Avoid contact with the key whenever it extends or retracts.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Locking and Unlocking the Doors ▶ Key Types and Functions

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

☒ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle. If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Controls

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength *

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

☒ Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength *

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use. The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

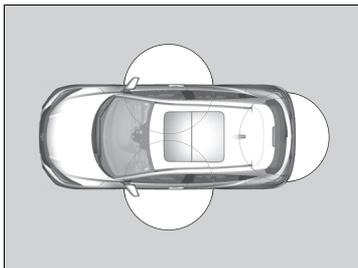
Controls

* Not available on all models

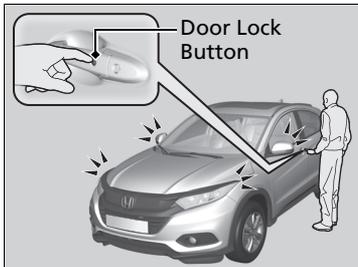
▶▶ Locking and Unlocking the Doors ▶ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System *



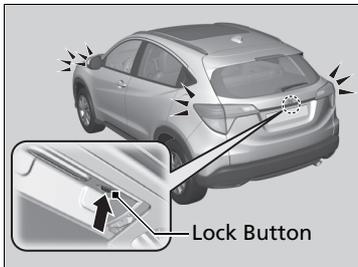
When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate. You can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm (32 inches) of the outside door handle or tailgate release button.



■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the door lock button on the front door or the tailgate.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.



▶ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

▶ **Interior Lights** P. 217

▶ Using the Keyless Access System *

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.

▶▶ Locking and Unlocking the Doors ▶ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside



■ **Unlocking the doors and tailgate**

Grab the front door handle:

- ▶ All the doors and tailgate unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

Press the tailgate release button:

- ▶ The tailgate and all doors unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.
- ☑ **Using the Tailgate Release Button** P. 170

☒ **Using the Keyless Access System***

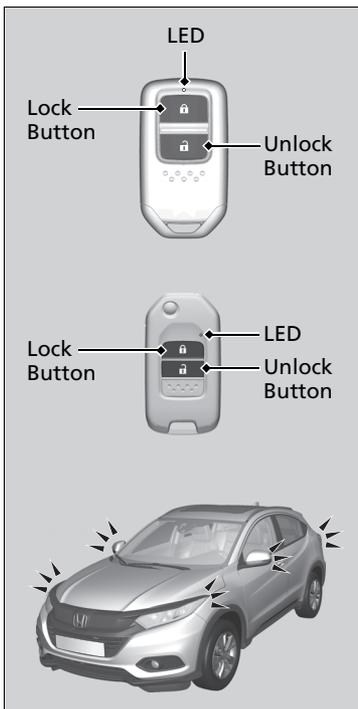
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm (32 inches) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Locking and Unlocking the Doors ▶ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system* sets.

▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter

Models with keyless access system

Right-hand drive type

You cannot lock any doors from the outside when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle, and the beeper sounds. If you want to lock a door while the remote is still in the vehicle, do any of the following four times:

- Press the lock button on the keyless remote.
- Turn the key in the cylinder to lock.
- Press the door lock button on the door handle or the tailgate.

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once, and all doors and the tailgate unlock.

☒ Using the Remote Transmitter

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

Models without keyless access system

The remote transmitter will not work when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter or keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

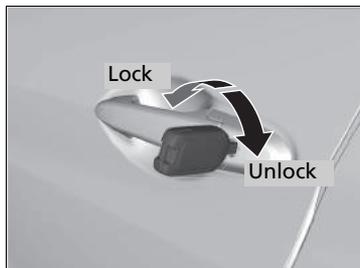
☒ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 580

Continued

▶▶ Locking and Unlocking the Doors ▶ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the remote does not work, use the key instead.
Fully insert the key and turn it.



Controls

▶ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

■ Models with security system alarm

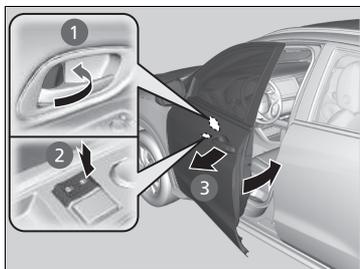
Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the remote transmitter.

■ Models with retractable key

If you are using the retractable key, make sure it is fully extended.

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward **1** or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction **2**, then pull and hold the outside door handle **3**. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passengers' doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

Models without keyless access system

The doors and the tailgate cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

The doors and the tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

☒ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

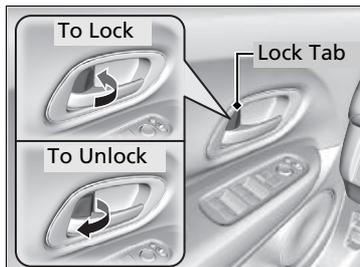
When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

▶▶ Locking and Unlocking the Doors ▶ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



■ **Locking a door**
Push the lock tab forward.

■ **Unlocking a door**
Pull the lock tab rearward.

▶▶ Using the Lock Tab

Left-hand drive type

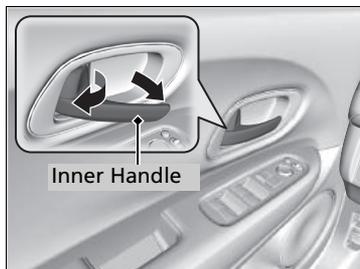
When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

Right-hand drive type

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

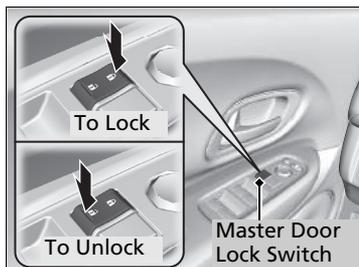
▶▶ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

▶ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 168

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors and the tailgate.

☒ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

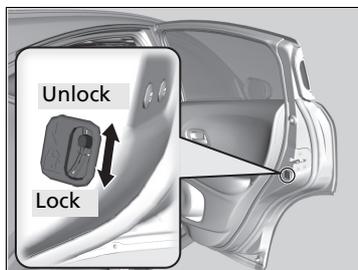
When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

▶▶ Locking and Unlocking the Doors ▶ Childproof Door Locks

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

☒ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Opening and Closing the Tailgate

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

- Open the tailgate all the way.
 - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
 - Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.
- Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:
- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
 - ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

☒ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 88

☒ Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

⚠ WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

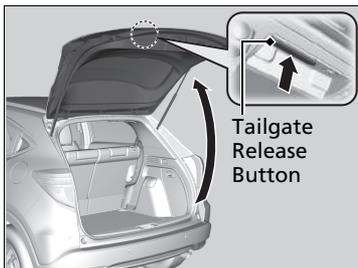
When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Controls

▶▶ Opening and Closing the Tailgate ▶ Using the Tailgate Release Button

Using the Tailgate Release Button



When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate release button and lift open the tailgate.

Models with keyless access system

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

All models

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.



▶▶ Using the Tailgate Release Button

Models with keyless access system

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.

Security System

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Security System Alarm *

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are opened without the remote transmitter or keyless access system*. It also activates if you unlock the door with the key.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*, or turn the ignition switch to ON **II***1. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

☒ Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact your dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

☒ Security System Alarm *

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates. The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash. Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

▶▶ Security System ▶ Security System Alarm*

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK [0]*¹.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, the remote transmitter, or keyless access system*.

Models without keyless access system

- The key has been removed from the ignition switch.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*, or when the ignition switch is turned to ON [II]*¹. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Security System Alarm*

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may activate once the battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

If you unlock a door with the key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

Models with ultrasonic sensors

The system may accidentally activate such as when:

- The vehicle is parked in an automated garage.
- The vehicle is being washed with highly pressurized water or being put through an automated car wash.
- The vehicle is being transported by train, ferry or trailer.
- The vehicle is subjected to heavy rain or stormy weather.
- Ice is being removed from the vehicle.

You can use ultrasonic sensor **OFF** button not to accidentally activate the security system alarm.

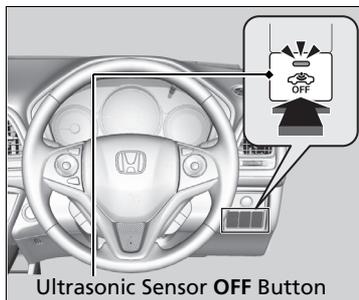
▶▶ **Ultrasonic Sensors*** P. 173

Ultrasonic Sensors*

The ultrasonic sensors activate only when the security system alarm sets. The sensors detect if someone intrudes into the passenger compartment through a window or moves in the compartment, and activate the alarm.

■ To set the security system alarm without activating the ultrasonic sensors

You can set the security system alarm without activating the ultrasonic sensor.



To turn off the ultrasonic sensor system, press the ultrasonic sensor **OFF** button after you remove the key from the ignition switch, or with the key in the ACCESSORY **I** or LOCK **0***1.

☒ Ultrasonic Sensors*

Do not set the security system alarm while someone is in the vehicle, or if a window is open. The system may accidentally activate when the ultrasonic sensor detects vibrations or loud sounds.

Whether the ultrasonic sensor is activated, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter or keyless access system*, not the key.

If you unlock a door with the key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

Controls

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Security System ▶ Super Locking*

Super Locking*

The super locking function disables the lock tabs on all doors.

■ To activate the super locking function

- Turn the key in the driver's door towards the vehicle front twice within five seconds.
- Press the lock button on the remote transmitter twice within five seconds.

Models with keyless access system

- Press the door lock button on the door handle or the tailgate twice within five seconds.

■ To cancel the super locking function

Unlock the driver's door with the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

▶▶ Super Locking*

⚠ WARNING

No one must be inside the vehicle with the super locking set. Persons locked in can get seriously sick or die from the heat built inside the vehicle if left in the sun.

Make sure there is no one inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.

If you unlock a door with the key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

Controls

Opening and Closing the Windows

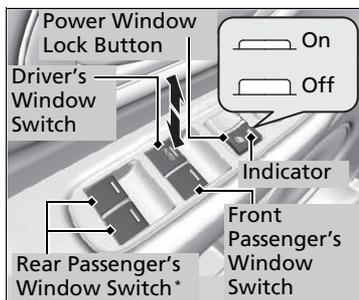
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON **II***1, using the switches on the doors. The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.

To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch off*1.

Auto-open/close function on front windows

Opening either front door cancels this function.

Auto-open/close function on all windows

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

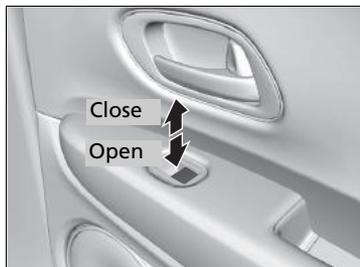
Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function*



To open: Push the switch down.

To close: Pull the switch up.

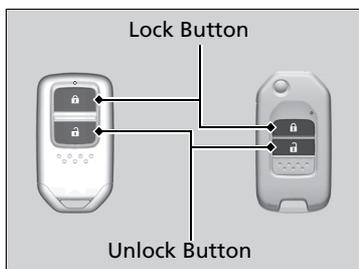
Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Controls

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

You cannot fully open the rear windows.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows, and Panoramic Roof and Sunshade* with the Remote*

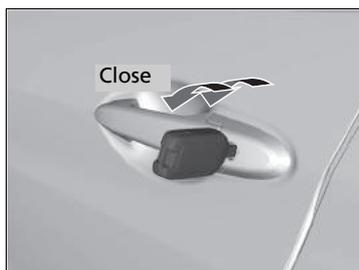


To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To close: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows and panoramic roof stop midway, repeat the procedure.

■ Closing the Windows, and Panoramic Roof and Sunshade* with the Key*



To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows and panoramic roof at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

☒ Closing the Windows, and Panoramic Roof and Sunshade* with the Key*

Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

* Not available on all models

Controls

Panoramic Roof*

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can operate the panoramic roof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the panoramic roof.

Controls

178 * Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

WARNING

Opening or closing the panoramic roof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the panoramic roof before opening or closing it.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

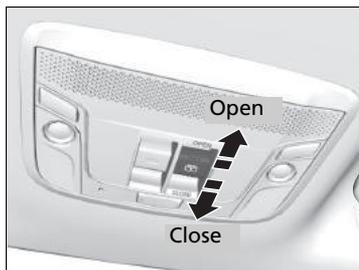
NOTICE

Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

The panoramic roof and sunshade can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

■ Using the Sunshade Switch



■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunshade automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunshade midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

☒ Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the panoramic roof and sunshade to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the panoramic roof and sunshade are almost closed to ensure that they fully close.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the panoramic roof.

☒ **Opening/Closing the Windows, and Panoramic Roof and Sunshade* with the Remote*** P. 177

☒ **Closing the Windows, and Panoramic Roof and Sunshade* with the Key*** P. 177

☒ Using the Sunshade Switch

The sunshade can be opened or closed to adjust the amount of light that enters the cabin.

When you use the sunshade switch to open the sunshade, the panoramic roof does not move.

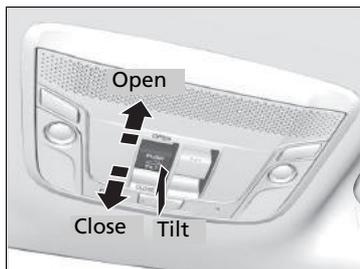
The sunshade cannot be fully closed if the panoramic roof is open. When you close the sunshade with the panoramic roof open, the sunshade stops close to the panoramic roof glass. When you push the switch forward again, the sunshade and the panoramic roof close together.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Panoramic Roof* ▶ Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

■ Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The panoramic roof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the panoramic roof midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the panoramic roof up

To tilt: Push on the centre of the panoramic roof switch.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

☒ Using the Panoramic Roof Switch

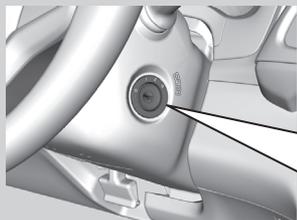
Whenever the panoramic roof is opening, the sunshade moves along with it. However, when the panoramic roof is closing, the sunshade does not move.

When you tilt open the panoramic roof, the sunshade opens slightly to let in fresh air. When you close the panoramic roof from this position, the sunshade returns to its closed position.

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

Models without keyless access system

Ignition Switch



- 0** LOCK: Insert and remove the key in this position.
- I** ACCESSORY: Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.
- II** ON: This is the position when driving.
- III** START: This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON **II** when you let go of the key.

Ignition Switch

Manual transmission models

WARNING

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

Continuously variable transmission models

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in **P**.

All models

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK **0** or ACCESSORY **I**, the following messages appear on the multi-information display:

- In LOCK **0**: 
- In ACCESSORY **I**: 

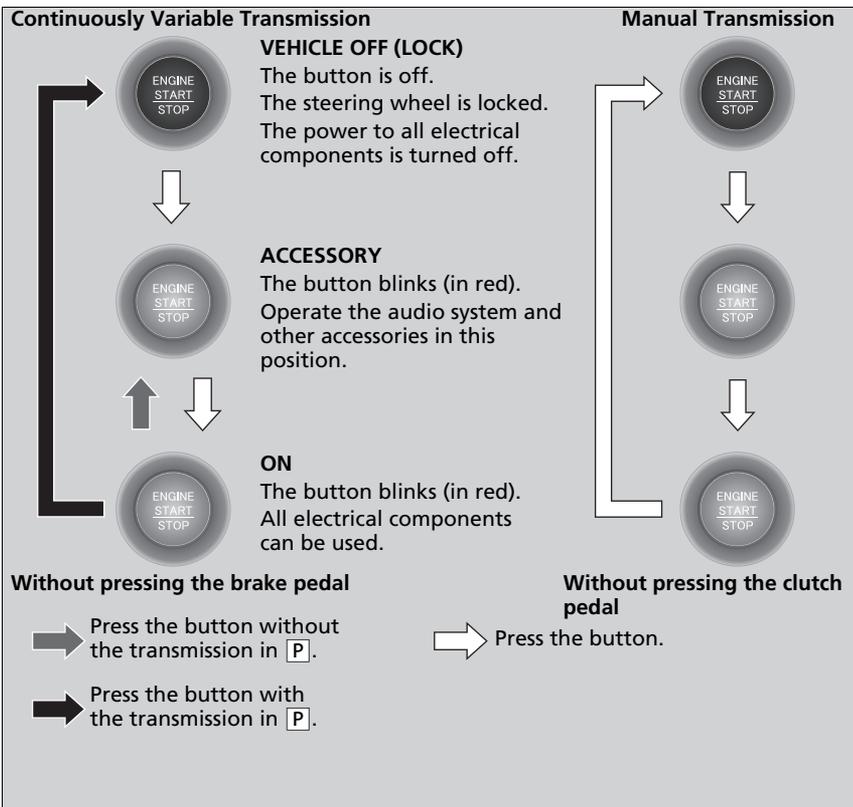
If the key won't turn from LOCK **0** to ACCESSORY **I**, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶▶ ENGINE START/STOP Button

Models with keyless access system

ENGINE START/STOP Button

Changing the Power Mode

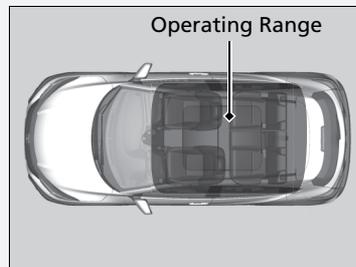


Controls

ENGINE START/STOP Button

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range

You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

❏ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak
P. 619

The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:
The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is red when the engine is running.

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the shift lever in **P***¹ and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock.

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

▶ **Changing the Power Mode** P. 182

☒ ENGINE START/STOP Button

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Controls

*1: Continuously variable transmission models

Continued

▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶▶ ENGINE START/STOP Button

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is in ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

Keyless Remote Reminder

Warning buzzers may sound from inside and/or outside the vehicle to remind you that the keyless remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

When the power mode is in ON

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, a warning buzzer sounds from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the multi-information display notifies the driver inside that the remote is outside of the vehicle.

When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

Keyless Remote Reminder

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to activate. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also activate even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

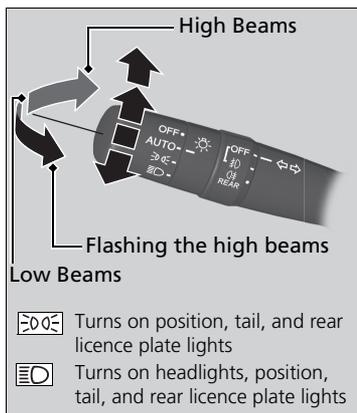
▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶▶ Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK 0 (with/without the key)	ACCESSORY I	ON II	START III
Without Keyless Access System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine is turned off and power is shut down. The steering wheel is locked. No electrical components can be used. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine is turned off. Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Normal key position while driving. All electrical components can be used. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use this position to start the engine. The ignition switch returns to the ON II position when you release the key.
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)	ACCESSORY	ON	START
With Keyless Access System and ENGINE START/STOP Button	Button-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine is turned off and power is shut down. The steering wheel is locked. No electrical components can be used. 	Button-Blinking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine is turned off. Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated. 	Button-Blinking (engine is turned off) On (engine is running) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All electrical components can be used. 	Button-On <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.

Light Switches

Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting or position of the ignition switch.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

■ Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The shift lever is in **P***1.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is moved out of **P***1 and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

*1: Continuously variable transmission models

Light Switches

Models without keyless access system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

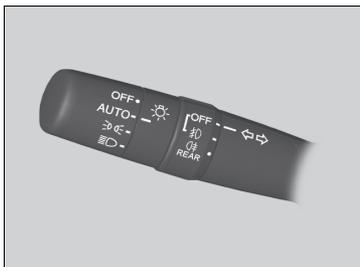
Models with keyless access system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶ Light Switches

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*



Automatic lighting control can be used when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

The headlights come on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

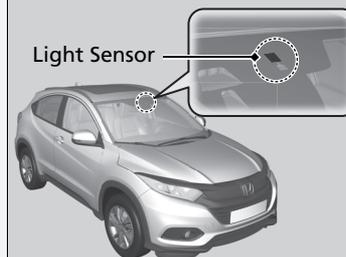
- ▶ Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

▶▶ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*

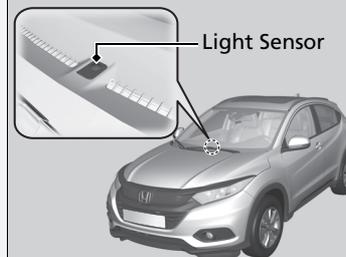
We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

Models with automatic intermittent wipers



Models without automatic intermittent wipers



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you remove the key or set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door. However, when the switch is in , the position lights remain on.

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK *1 with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶ Fog Lights

Fog Lights

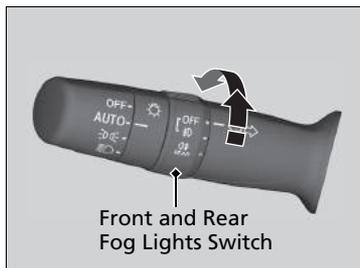
■ Front fog lights*

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

■ Rear fog light

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights* are on.

■ Front and Rear Fog Lights*



■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the 30C position. The 30C indicator comes on.

■ To turn the front and rear fog lights on

Rotate the switch one position up from the 30C position. The 30C and 30C indicator comes on.

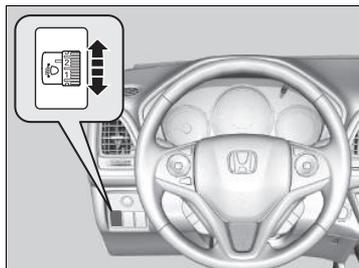
■ Rear Fog Light*



■ To turn the rear fog light on

Rotate the switch to 30C. The 30C indicator comes on.

Headlight Adjuster*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

■ To select the adjustment dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	0
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limit of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Headlight Adjuster*

Models with LED low beam headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models with LED low beam headlights

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, as per UN-Regulation No. R48 Dover Regulation.

Models with halogen low beam headlights

You may need to alter the headlight beam distribution.

▶▶ **Adjusting Headlight Distribution** P. 474

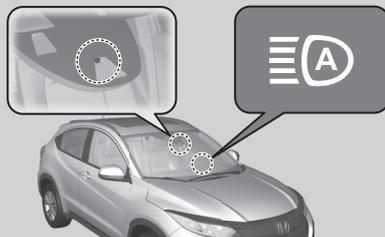
▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶▶ Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)*

Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)*

Using a camera mounted to the inside of the windshield, this system detects light sources ahead of the vehicle. Depending on the light source, the system automatically switches the headlights to high beam for optimal visibility at night.

The system operates when:

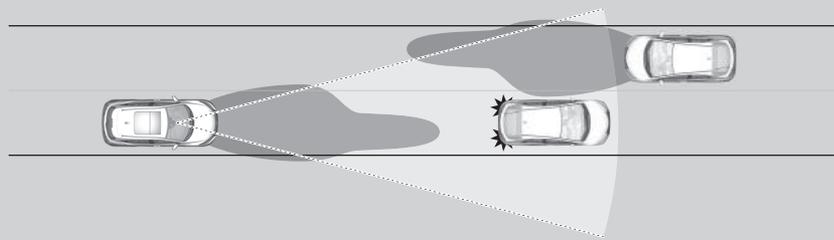
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The low beams are on and the system recognises that you are driving at night.
- The vehicle speed is above 40 km/h (25 mph).

**How it works**

When the camera detects lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights remain in low beam.

When the camera detects no lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights change to high beam.

The view angle or distance that the camera can detect lights ahead differs depending on conditions, such as the brightness of the lights and the weather.

**▶▶ Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)***

The high beam support system determines when to change the headlight beams by responding to the brightness of the lights ahead of your vehicle. In the following cases, the system may not respond to the lights properly:

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Other light sources, such as streetlights and electric billboards are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or with many curves.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

If you do not want the system to be activated at any time when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**, consult a dealer.

▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶▶ Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)*

■ Operating the System



To activate the system, turn the headlight switch to **AUTO** and then set the headlights to low beam. The auto high-beam indicator will come on.

☒ **Light Switches** P. 187

The high beams remain on unless:

- You have been driving below 24 km/h (15 mph) for an extended amount of time.
- The speed of the vehicle drops below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The windscreen wipers have been running at a high speed for more than a few seconds.
- You enter a well lit location.

The high beams come back on once the condition that caused them to turn off no longer exists.

If needed, you can temporarily turn the system off manually. Turn on the high beams by pushing the lever forward until you hear a click, or flash the high beams once by pulling the lever toward you. To turn the system back on, pull and hold the lever towards you for a few seconds.

☒ Operating the System

For the high beam support system to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

If the  message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the  message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶▶ Daytime Running Lights

Daytime Running Lights

The daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON *1.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

Turning off the ignition switch or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

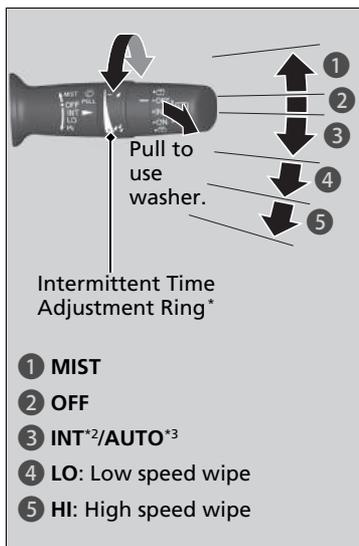
The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the head light switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

Controls

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



- 1 MIST
- 2 OFF
- 3 INT*²/AUTO*³
- 4 LO: Low speed wipe
- 5 HI: High speed wipe

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON **II***¹.

■ MIST

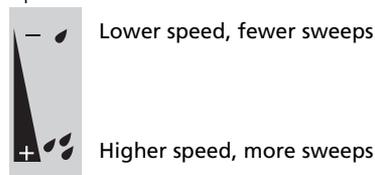
The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*²/AUTO*³, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with manual intermittent operation

*3: Models with automatic intermittent operation

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

Models without automatic intermittent wipers

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.

When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (**LO**) and the **LO** setting become the same.

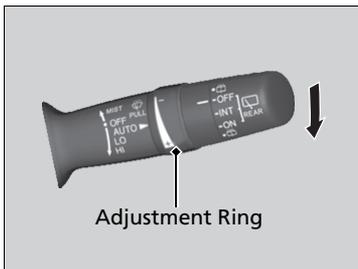
NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶ Wipers and Washers

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



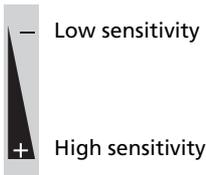
When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

Auto sensitivity adjustment

When in **AUTO**, you can also adjust the rainfall sensor sensitivity using the adjustment ring.

Sensor sensitivity



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

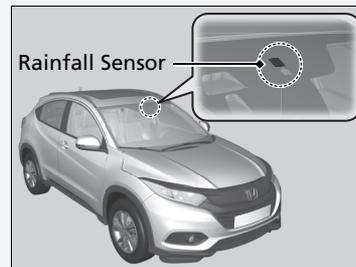
Wipers and Washers

If the wiper stops operating due to any obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to **ACCESSORY [1]** or **LOCK [0]***1, then remove the obstacle.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.

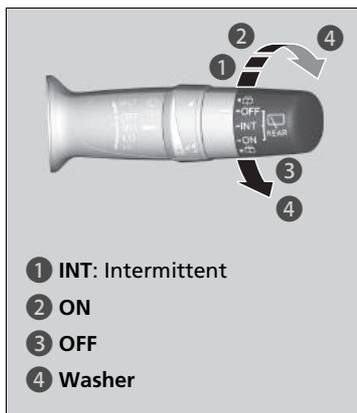


NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



- 1 INT: Intermittent
- 2 ON
- 3 OFF
- 4 Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to **R** with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

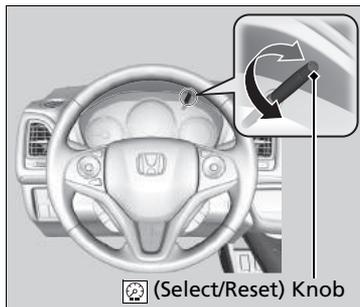
Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT* (Intermittent)	Intermittent
AUTO* (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low speed wipe)	Continuous
HI (High speed wipe)	Continuous

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶▶ Brightness Control

Brightness Control

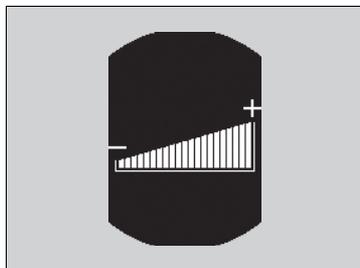


When the ignition switch is in ON **II***1, you can use the  (Select/Reset) knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

Brighten: Turn the knob to the right.

Dim: Turn the knob to the left.

The multi-information display will return to its original state several seconds after you adjust the brightness.



■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the multi-information display while you are adjusting it.

▶▶ Brightness Control

Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max.

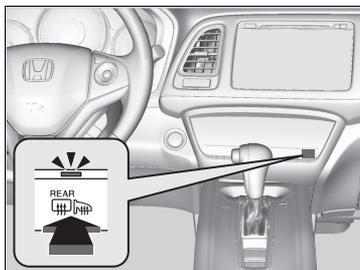
The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Controls

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Icon

Touch the icon to defog the rear window and door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON ^{*1}.



The rear demister and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, they do not automatically switch off.

☒ Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Icon

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When the ignition switch is in ON ^{*1} and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

Controls

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶▶ Driving Position Memory System*

Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver's seat positions with the driving position memory system.

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter or the keyless access system, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.

Controls



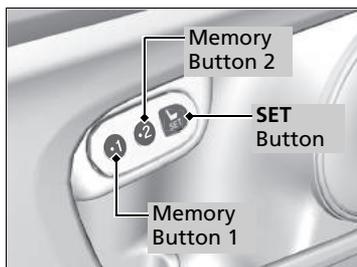
▶▶ Driving Position Memory System*

System Operation

The system will not operate if:

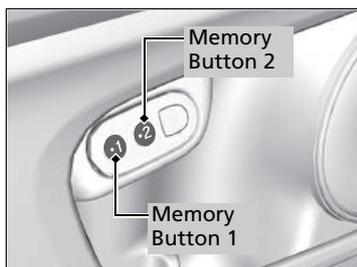
- Either seat position button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- Either memory position button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- The vehicle speed is above 3 km/h (2 mph).
- Overload to the seat motor.

■ Storing a Position in Memory



1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
 - ▶ You will hear a beep, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press and hold memory button **[1]** or **[2]** within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
 - ▶ Once the seat position has been memorized, you will hear the beeper twice, and the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

■ Recalling the Stored Position



Continuously variable transmission models

1. Put the transmission into **[P]**.
2. Press a memory button (**[1]** or **[2]**).
 - ▶ You will hear a beep, and the indicator light will blink.

Manual transmission models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Press a memory button (**[1]** or **[2]**).
 - ▶ You will hear a beep, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, you will hear the beeper twice, and the indicator light stays on.

⌘ Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be cancelled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

⌘ Recalling the Stored Position

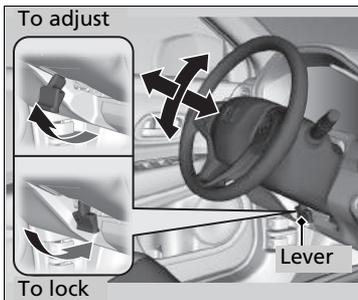
The seat will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button (**[1]** or **[2]**).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Put the transmission into a position other than **[P]** (continuously variable transmission).
- Release the parking brake (manual transmission).

▶▶ Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel ▶▶ Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
 - ▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - ▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - ▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

▶▶ Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

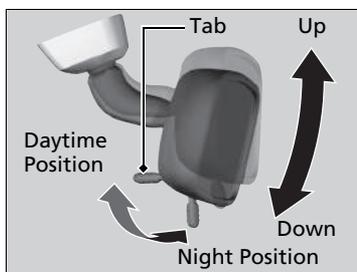
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Adjusting the Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

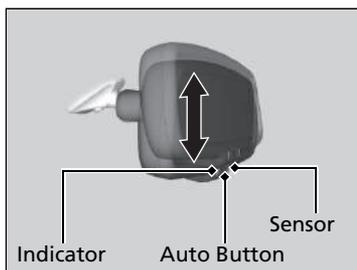
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position helps to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the auto button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the auto indicator comes on.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

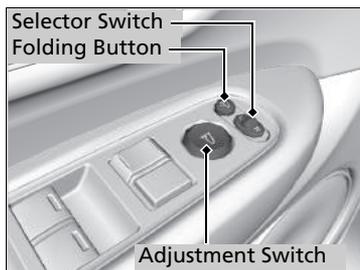
➤ **Front Seats** P. 206

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the shift lever is in **[R]**.

▶▶ Adjusting the Mirrors ▶ Power Door Mirrors

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON ^{*1}.

■ Mirror position adjustment

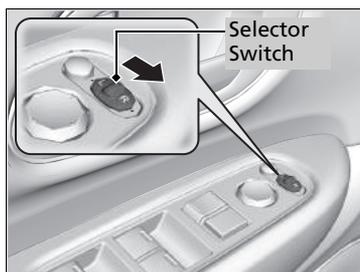
L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

■ Reverse Tilt Door Mirror*



If activated, passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into **R**; this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of **R**.

To activate this feature, turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, and slide the selector switch to the passenger side.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function *

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter or keyless remote twice within 10 seconds, and hold it.

- ▶ You can release the button once the mirrors start folding in automatically.

Models with keyless access system

Press the door lock button on either front outside door handle or the tailgate twice within 10 seconds, and hold it.

- ▶ You can release the button once the mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the remote transmitter. Open the driver's door.

- ▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Models with keyless access system

Grab either front outside door handle or press the tailgate release button and unlock all doors and the tailgate. Open the driver's door.

- ▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

⊠ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function *

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

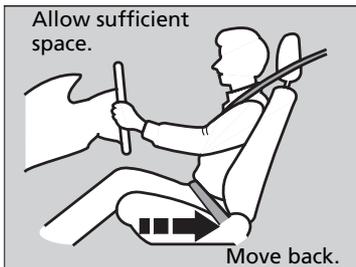
Controls

* Not available on all models

205

Adjusting the Seats

Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Adjusting the Seats

WARNING

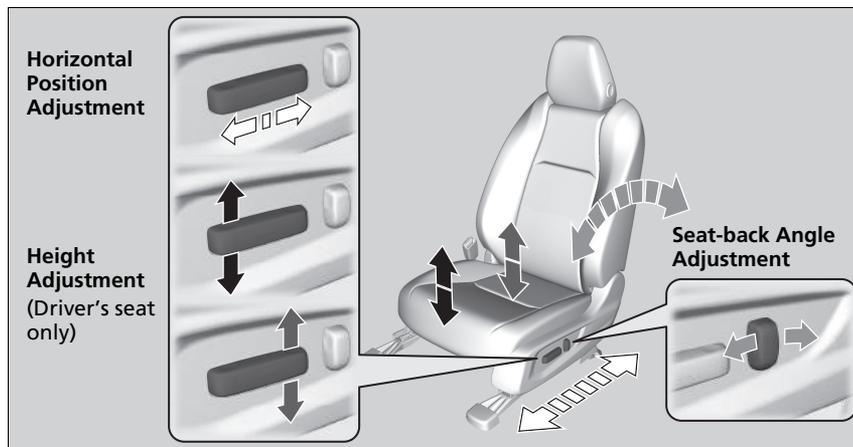
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

Controls

Adjusting the Seat Positions

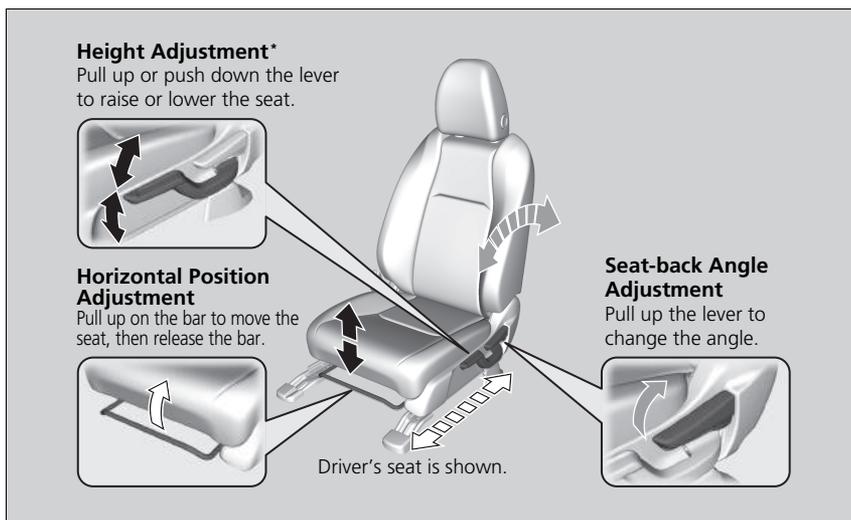
Adjusting the front power seats*



In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm (10 inches) between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

■ Adjusting the front manual seats*



▶ Adjusting the front manual seats*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

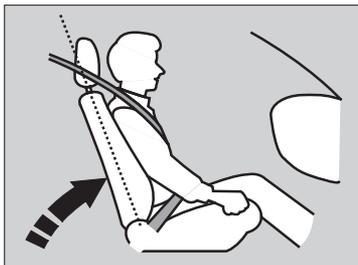
Controls

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Adjusting the Seats ▶ Front Seats

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Controls

▶▶ Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

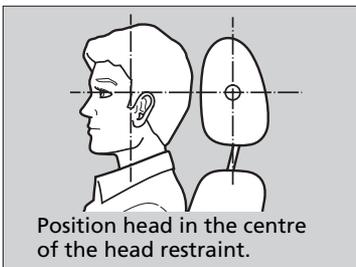
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

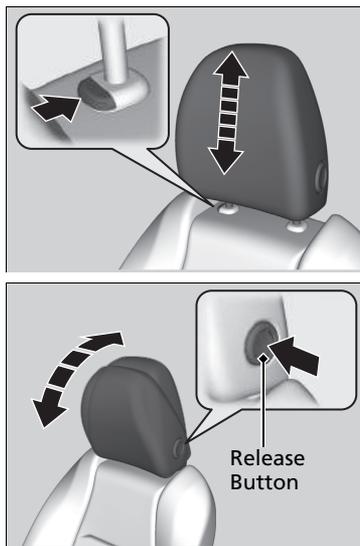
Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly.

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Continued

▶▶ Adjusting the Seats ▶ Head Restraints

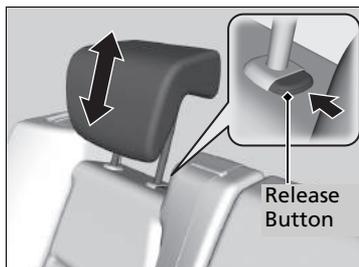


To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button.

To tilt the head restraint forward: Push the back of it forward.
To tilt the head restraint backward: Push it backward while pressing the release button on the side of the head restraint.

Controls

■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the outer or centre back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

☒ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions

When you use the head restraint in a rear seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.

☒ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

⚠ WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

To remove and install the rear outer head restraint, recline the seat-back slightly forward as the space between the ceiling and the seat-back is limited.

▶▶ Adjusting the Seats ▶ Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Controls

▶ Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Rear Seats

■ Adjusting the Rear Seat-Backs



Pull the lever on the right to change the angle of the right half of the seat-back, and left for the left half.

☒ Adjusting the Rear Seat-Backs

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

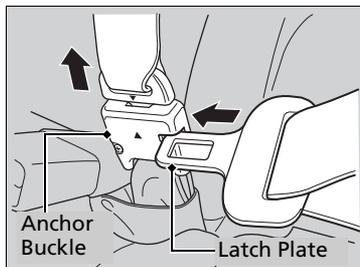
Continued

Controls

▶▶ Adjusting the Seats ▶ Rear Seats

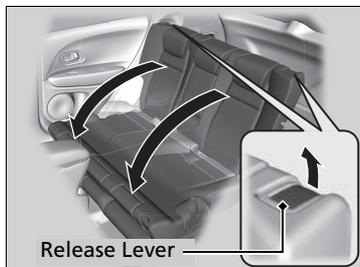
Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seats can be folded down separately to allow for additional storage space.



To fold down the seat

1. Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
☑ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor P. 49
2. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
3. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.



To return the seat to the original position, pull up the seat-back in the upright position.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

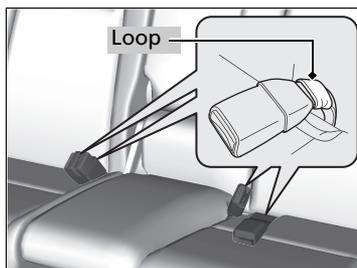
Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

Make sure the seat-back, head restraints and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt is re-positioned in the holding slot.

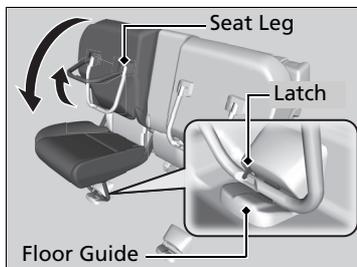
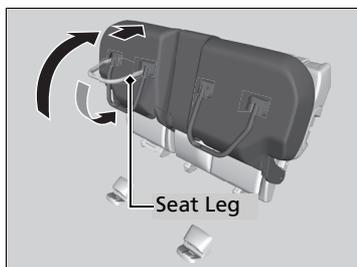
■ Folding the Rear Seat Up



Separately lift up the left and right halves of the rear seat cushions to make room for luggage area.

■ Lifting up the seat cushion

1. Make sure the seat belt buckles are in their loops on the seat.
2. Pull up the rear seat cushion.
3. Fold the seat leg down while pushing the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it.



■ Putting the seat in the original position

1. Hold the seat cushion in the upright position, and pull up the seat leg fully.
 - ▶ The seat cushion can abruptly fall down once you pull up the seat leg.
2. Slowly put down the seat cushion and set the seat leg in the floor guide.
 - ▶ A latch comes out when the leg is set properly.

☒ Folding the Rear Seat Up

After you fold the seat up, or put it back in the original position, make sure the seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back.

Check if there are any items on the seat before you pull the seat cushion up. Check if there are any obstacles around the floor guide before you put the seat back in the original position.

▶▶ Adjusting the Seats ▶ Armrest

Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

To adjust:

Slide the armrest to a desired position.

■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest*



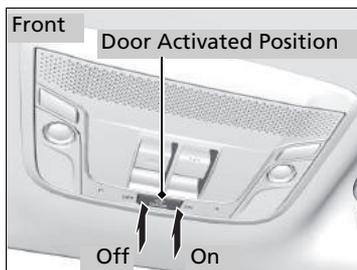
Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

Controls

Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switch



■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

Models without keyless access system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switch

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

Models without keyless access system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

Models with keyless access system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), but do not open a door.

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON **II***1.

Models without keyless access system

- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

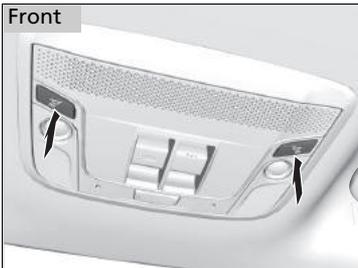
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

▶▶ Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items ▶▶ Interior Lights

Map Lights

Front



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the  (map light) button.

Rear



Interior Light Switch

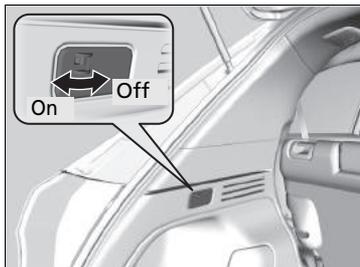
If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, or without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

Map Lights

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the rear map light will not go off when you press the  button.

Controls

Luggage Area Light



■ ON

The light comes on when you open the tailgate, and goes off when closed.

■ OFF

The light stays off with or without opening the tailgate.

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

Glove Box

⚠ WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Console Compartment

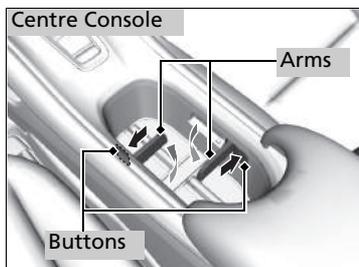


Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

Beverage Holders



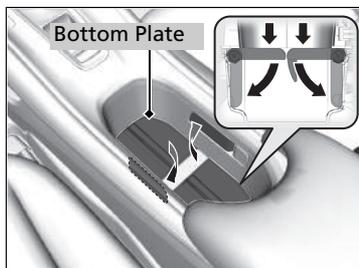
Front seat beverage holders



Centre console beverage holders

To put a short-size beverage:

Pressing a button inside the console raises the bottom plate. Arms come out to hold a beverage.



To put a tall-size beverage:

Close the arms and push down the bottom plate.

Beverage Holders

NOTICE

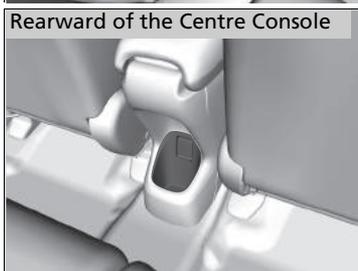
Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

Controls

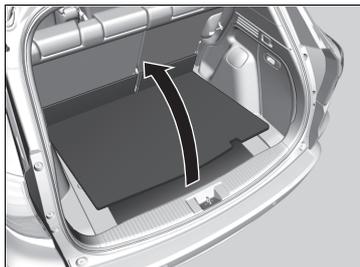
Continued

■ Rear seat beverage holders

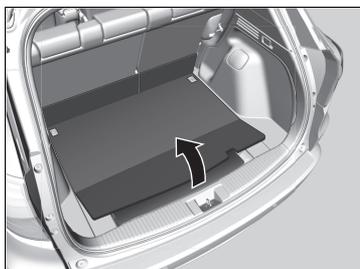


Controls

Under-Floor Storage Area



Pull up the luggage area floor lid.



Under-Floor Storage Area

The shape of the luggage floor box varies by model.

If your vehicle is equipped with the boot tray, remove it as necessary.

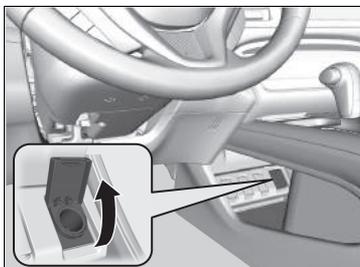
Controls

Continued

223

■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power socket can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II***1.



■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.

Controls

▶▶ Accessory Power Sockets

NOTICE

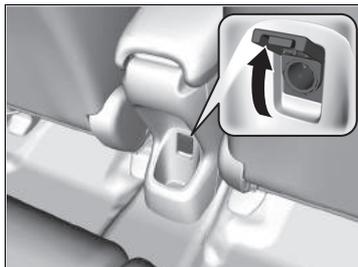
Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element: This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

When each socket is being used simultaneously, the combined power rating of the accessories should not exceed 180 watts (15 amps).

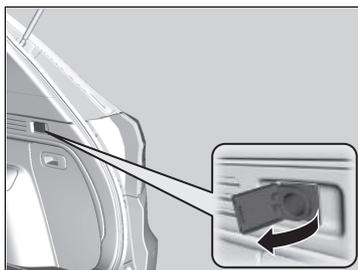
To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



■ **Rearward of the centre console***

Open the cover to use it.



■ **Luggage area**

Open the cover to use it.

Controls

* Not available on all models

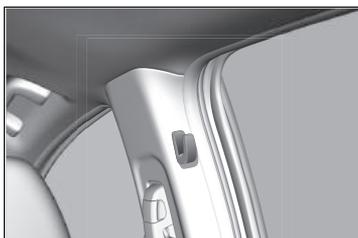
Continued

▶▶ Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items ▶ Interior Convenience Items

■ Coat Hooks



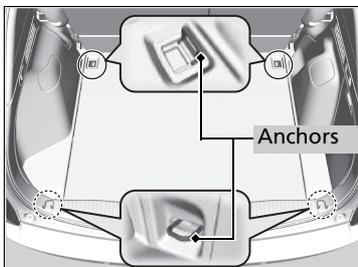
There are coat hooks on the rear left and right grab handles. Pull them down to use them.



There are coat hooks on the left and right door pillars.

Controls

■ Tie-down Anchors



The tie-down anchors on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

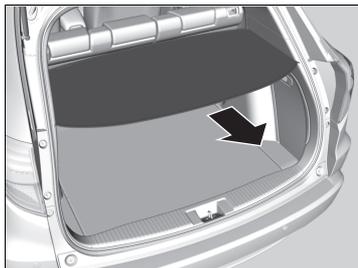
☒ Coat Hooks

The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.

☒ Tie-down Anchors

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

■ Tonneau Cover*



The tonneau cover can be used to conceal your items and protect them from direct sunlight.

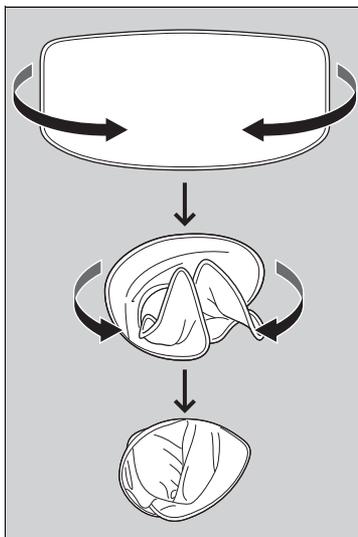
■ To remove:

Pull out the tonneau cover rearwards and remove it.

■ To fold:

The tonneau cover is collapsible.

1. Take the opposite sides, fold the cover halfway, then twist into opposite ways.
2. Curl to narrow the cover as shown.



* Not available on all models

☒ Tonneau Cover*

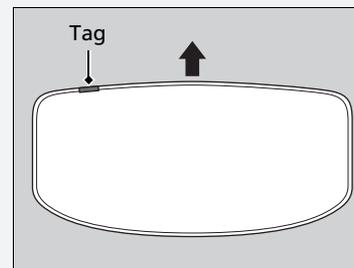
Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the luggage area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent tonneau cover damage, do not:

- Place items on the tonneau cover.
- Put weight on the tonneau cover.

When reinstalling the tonneau cover, put the tagged side first.



Continued

■ Luggage Area Cover*

The luggage area cover may be removed to give you more luggage room.

■ To remove the luggage area cover



1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the strap on each side of the tailgate.



3. Disengage the support rods, then remove the luggage area cover.

Reverse this procedure to install the luggage area cover.

After reinstalling the luggage area cover, make sure it is latched securely.

▣ Luggage Area Cover*

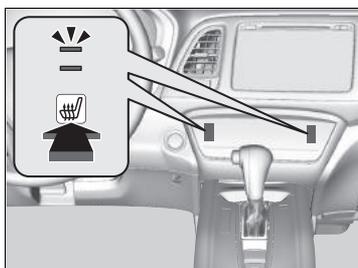
Do not place items on the luggage area cover, or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop.

Do not apply excessive pressure to the cover, such as leaning on it to retrieve an item.

Seat Heaters*



The ignition switch must be in ON **II***1 to use the seat heaters.



Touch the seat heater icon.
Once - The HI setting (two indicators on)
Twice - The LO setting
Three times - The OFF setting (no indicator on)

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Seat Heaters*

WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

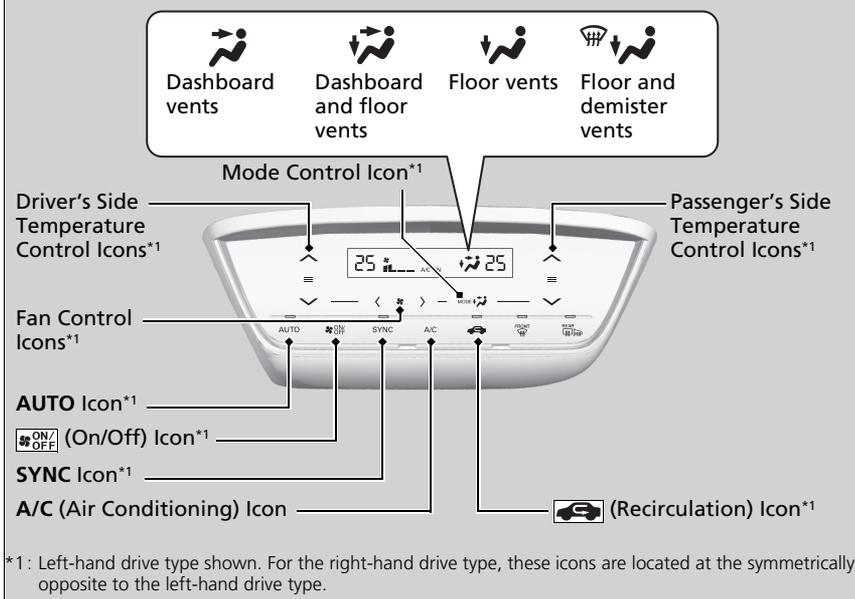
In the LO setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

Climate Control System

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Models with SYNC icon



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Select the **AUTO** icon.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control icons.
3. Select the **ON/OFF** icon to cancel.

Using Automatic Climate Control

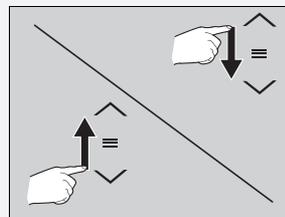
If any icons are selected while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the icon that was selected will take priority. The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the icon that was selected will be controlled automatically.

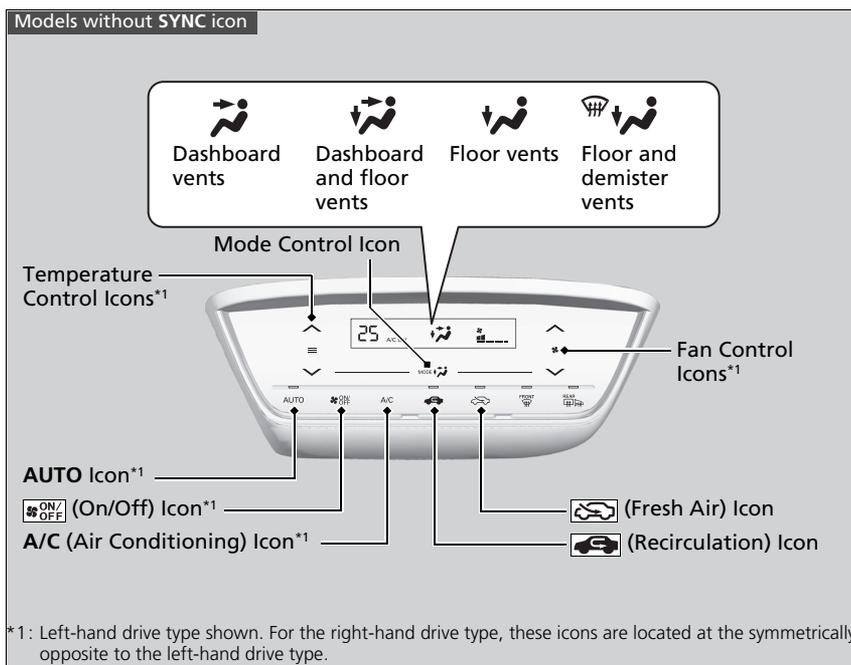
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** icon is selected.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

You can raise or lower the temperature or fan speed setting flicking either control icon.





Using Automatic Climate Control

Selecting the icon switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

During idle-stops*, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active.

If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop system **OFF** button to cancel idle-stop.

Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Select the **AUTO** icon.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control icons.
3. Select the icon to cancel.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Controls

▶▶ Climate Control System ▶ Using Automatic Climate Control

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Models with SYNC icon

Select the  (recirculation) icon and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Models without SYNC icon

Select the  (recirculation) or  (fresh air) icon to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

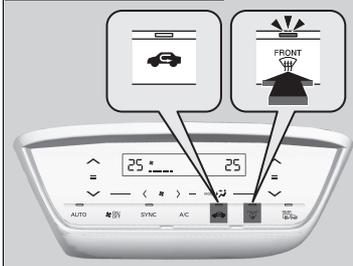
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Controls

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

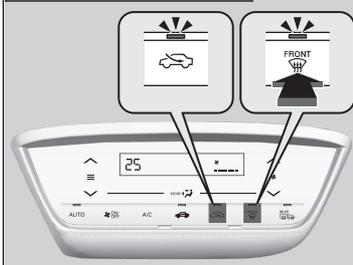
Models with SYNC icon



Select the  icon to turn the air conditioning system on and automatically switch the system to fresh air mode.

Select the  icon again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Models without SYNC icon



Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

Continuously variable transmission models with auto idle stop

Selecting the  icon restarts the engine automatically during the Auto Idle Stop.

Manual transmission models

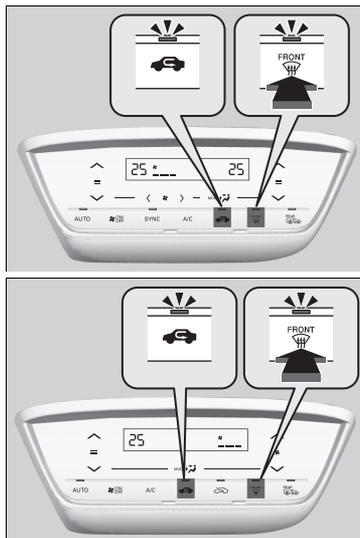
To defog during the Auto Idle Stop, restart the engine as follows.

1. Make sure the shift lever is in **N**.
2. Depress the clutch pedal fully.
3. Select the  icon.

Continued

▶▶ Climate Control System ▶ Using Automatic Climate Control

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



Models with SYNC icon

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select the  icon (indicator on).

Models without SYNC icon

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select the  icon.

▶▶ To rapidly defrost the windows

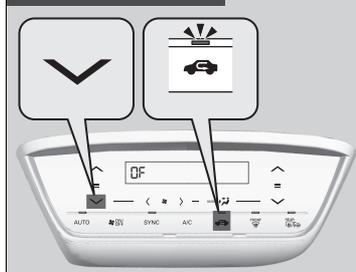
After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Controls

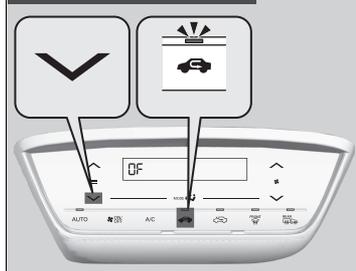
■ Turning On and Off the Touch Screen Beep

You hear the beep when operating the climate control system on the touch screen. This can be turned on and off.

Models with SYNC icon



Models without SYNC icon



To turn off the beep:

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
2. Touch the  of the temperature control icon five times while pressing and holding the .
3. Release the , after -- blinks five times and **OF** is displayed.

▶▶ Turning On and Off the Touch Screen Beep

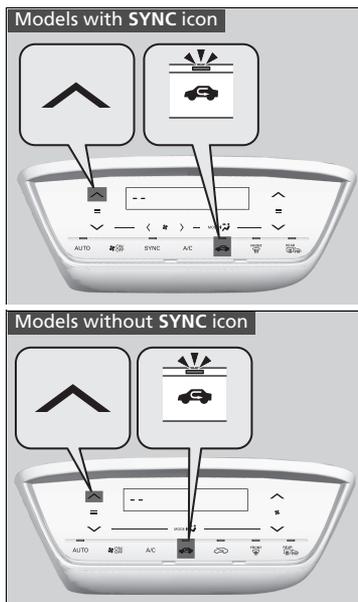
If you touch any other icons during this procedure, the setting may fail. In this case, once you turn the ignition switch to LOCK *1, then follow this procedure again.

Controls

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

▶▶ Climate Control System ▶ Using Automatic Climate Control



To turn on the beep:

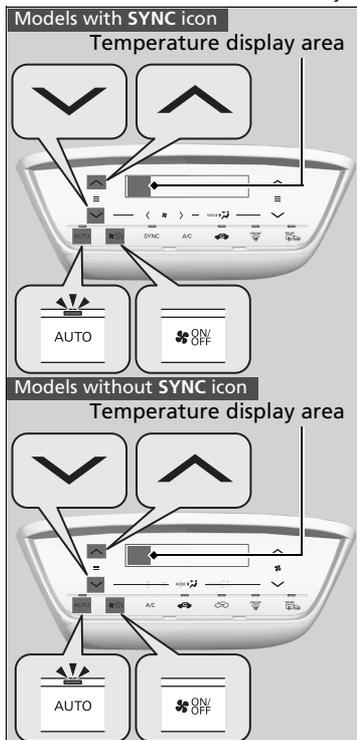
1. Turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}.
2. Touch the  of the temperature control icon five times while pressing and holding the .
3. Release the , after **OF** blinks five times and -- is displayed.

Controls

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Touch Panel Sensitivity Setting

You can set the level of sensitivity of the touch control panel to high, normal, or low.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON **[II]***1.
2. Press and hold the **AUTO** icon, then press any of the following icons five times to set the level.
 - : High (**Hi**)*2.
 - ▶ Previous setting blinks five times and **Hi** will be displayed in the temperature display area.
 - : Normal (--)
 - ▶ Previous setting blinks five times and -- will be displayed in the temperature display area.
 - : Low (**Lo**)
 - ▶ Previous setting blinks five times and **Lo** will be displayed in the temperature display area.
3. Release the **AUTO** icon.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Default setting

☒ Touch Panel Sensitivity Setting

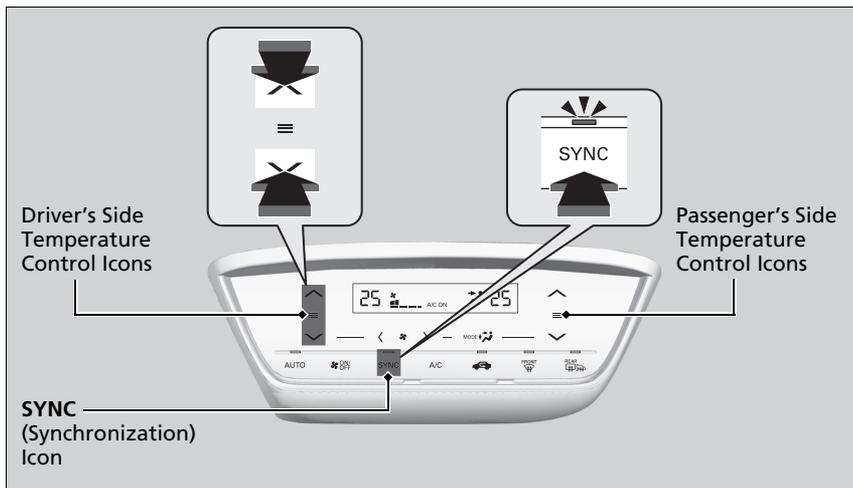
If you touch any other icons during this procedure, the setting may fail. In this case, once you turn the ignition switch to LOCK **[0]***1, then follow this procedure again.

Controls

Continued

▶▶ Climate Control System ▶ Using Automatic Climate Control

■ Synchronization Mode*



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Select the **SYNC** icon.
 - ▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control icon.

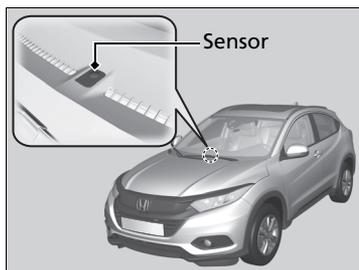
Select the **SYNC** icon or change the passenger's side temperature setting to return to dual mode.

▶ Synchronization Mode*

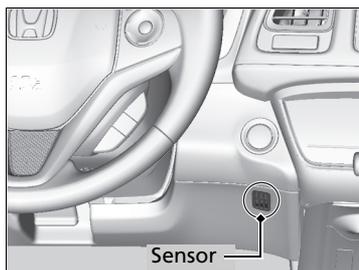
When you select the **FRONT** icon, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

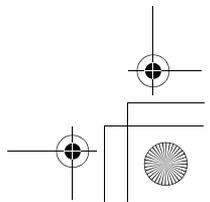
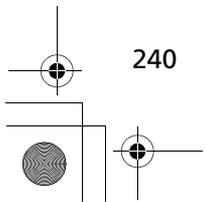
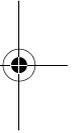
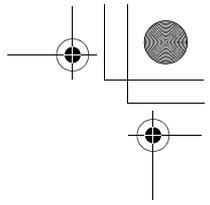
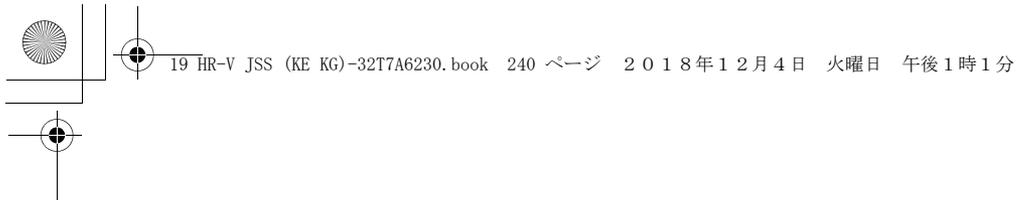
Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Controls



Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System

About Your Audio System.....	242
USB Port(s).....	243
HDMI™ Port*.....	244
Auxiliary Input Jack*.....	245
Audio System Theft Protection.....	246
Audio Remote Controls.....	247
Models with colour audio system	
Audio System Basic Operation	249
Models with display audio system	
Audio System Basic Operation	280
Audio Error Messages	327

General Information on the Audio System

.....	330
Models with colour audio system	
Customized Features	335
Models with display audio system	
Customized Features	345
Models with colour audio system	
Hands-Free Telephone System	361
Models with display audio system	
Hands-Free Telephone System	382

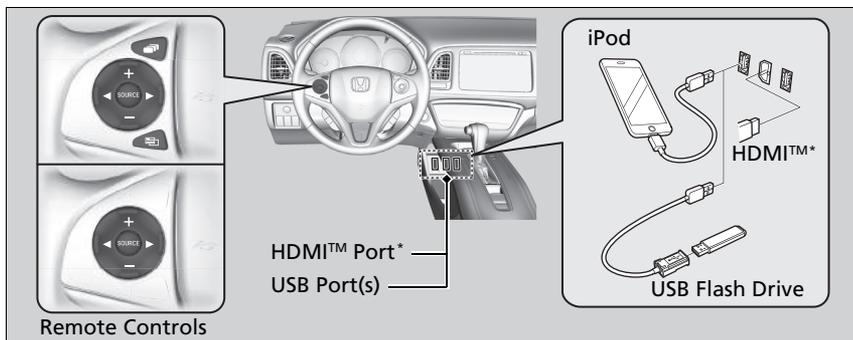
* Not available on all models

Audio System

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play audio CDs, WMA/MP3/AAC files, USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth* devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface*.



About Your Audio System

Video CDs, DVDs, and 8-cm (3-inch) mini CDs are not supported.

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

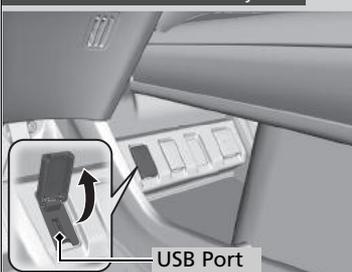
Models with display audio system

After you turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]^{*1}, you can use the audio system for up to 30 minutes per driving cycle. However, whether you can continue using the audio system depends on the battery condition. Repeatedly using this feature may drain the battery.

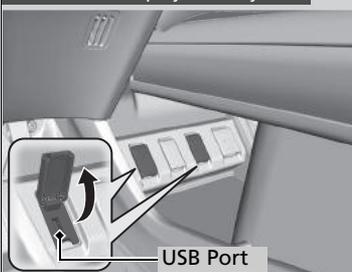
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

USB Port(s)

Models with colour audio system



Models with display audio system



1. Open the cover.
2. Install the iPod USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

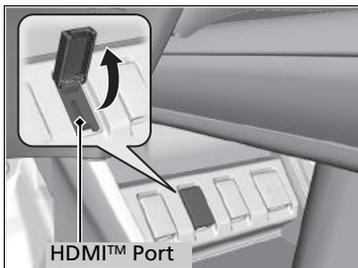
USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognise the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit www.apple.com/ipod.

▶▶Audio System▶HDMI™ Port*

HDMI™ Port*



1. Open the cover.
2. Install the HDMI™ cable to the HDMI™ port.

▶▶HDMI™ Port*

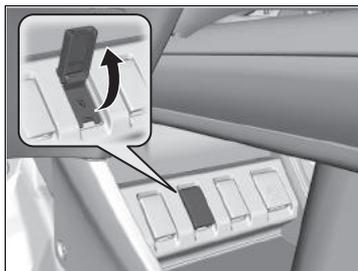
- Do not leave the HDMI™ connected device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

Features

244 * Not available on all models

Auxiliary Input Jack *



Use the jack to connect standard audio devices.

1. Open the **AUX** cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 3.5 mm (1/8 inch) stereo miniplug.
 - ▶ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

▶▶ Auxiliary Input Jack *

To switch mode, press any of the audio mode buttons. You can return to AUX mode by pressing the **CD/AUX** button.

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Audio System ▶ Audio System Theft Protection

Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a passcode input mode. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system

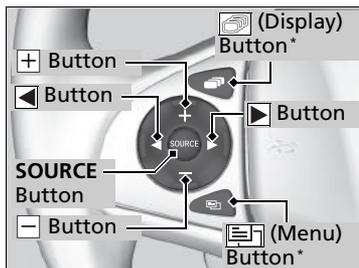
1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
 - ▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

Features

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving.



SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:

Models with colour audio system

FM1→FM2→DAB1*→DAB2*→LW→MW→
CD→USB→iPod→Bluetooth® Audio→AUX

Models with display audio system

FM→LW→MW→DAB→CD→USB→iPod→
Apps→Bluetooth® Audio→AUX HDMI™

+ - (Volume) Buttons

Press **+**: To increase the volume.

Press **-**: To decrease the volume.

◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
 - Press **▶**: To select the next preset radio station.
 - Press **◀**: To select the previous preset radio station.
 - Press and hold **▶**: To select the next strong station.
To select the next service (DAB).*
 - Press and hold **◀**: To select the previous strong station.
To select the previous service (DAB).*
- When listening to a CD, iPod, USB flash drive, or Bluetooth® Audio
 - Press **▶**: To skip to the next song.
 - Press **◀**: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a CD (MP3/WMA/AAC*), USB flash drive, or Bluetooth® Audio
 - Press and hold **▶**: To skip to the next folder.
 - Press and hold **◀**: To go back to the previous folder.

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Models with display audio system

While the **SOURCE** or **+/-** (volume) button is pressed, the selected audio mode or volume is displayed on the upper area of the screen.

Depending on the Bluetooth® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.

▶▶ Audio System ▶ Audio Remote Controls

Models with display audio system

Steering Wheel  (Menu) Button

- When listening to the radio
Press : To display the menu items. You can select **Scan, Save Preset, or Seek.**
- When listening to a CD or USB flash drive
Press : To display the menu items. You can select **Scan, Repeat, or Random.**
- When listening to an iPod
Press : To display the menu items. You can select **Repeat or Shuffle.**
- When listening to a *Bluetooth*® Audio
Press : To display the menu items. You can select **Pause or Play.**
- When watching a video
Press : To display the menu items. You can select **Scan, Repeat, Random or Play/Pause.**

Models with display audio system

 (Display) Button

Cycles through the displays as follows:

Navigation→Phone→Audio

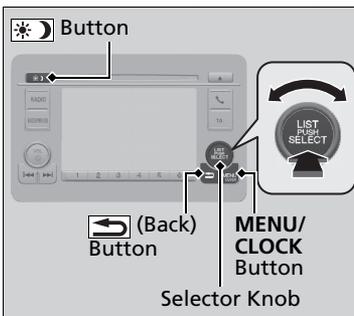
▶▶ Audio Remote Controls

The  button is available only when the audio mode is FM, DAB, LW, MW, CD, USB, iPod, or *Bluetooth*® Audio.

Audio System Basic Operation

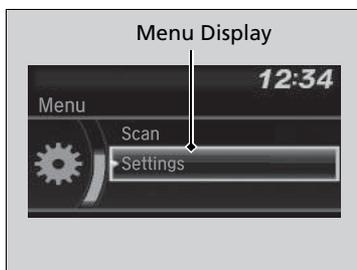
Models with colour audio system

To use the audio system, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**.



Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.



Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

MENU/CLOCK button: Press to select any mode.

The available modes include the wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play mode choices include scan, random, repeat, and so on.

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous display.

button: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press , then adjust the brightness using .

▶ Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode and nighttime mode.

Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

Menu items

- ▶ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 154
- ▶ **Wallpaper Setup** P. 252
- ▶ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 254
- ▶ **Display Setup** P. 255
- ▶ **Scan** P. 263, 267, 270, 276
- ▶ **Play Mode** P. 270, 273, 276
- ▶ **Bluetooth** P. 277

One of the operating systems used in this unit is eCos.

For software license terms and conditions, visit their website (eCos license URL:

<http://ecos.sourceforge.org/license-overview.html>)

For source code disclosure and other details regarding eCos, visit:

<http://www.hondaopensource2.com>

Press the **SOURCE**, , , or button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

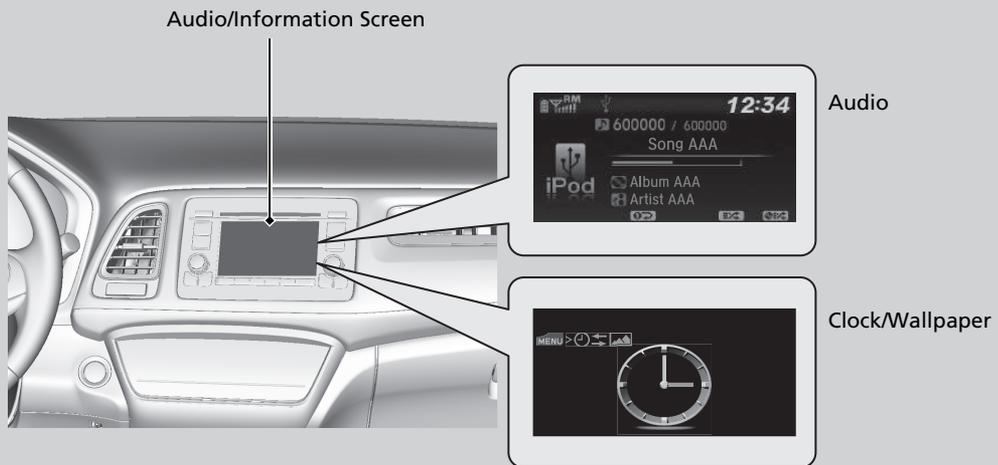
▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 247

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶ Audio/Information Screen

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display



Features

■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

■ Clock/Wallpaper

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

■ Change display

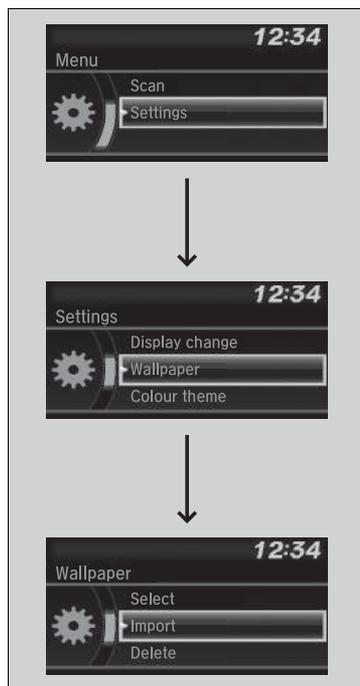
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Display change**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
▶ If you want to return to the audio display, select **Audio**.

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
 ▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 243
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Import**, then press .
 ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate to select a desired picture, then press .
 ▶ The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press to save the picture.
8. Press to select **OK**.
9. Rotate to select a location to save the picture, then press .
 ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Select**, then press 
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a desired wallpaper, then press .

■ Delete wallpaper

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Delete**, then press 
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
6. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press 
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

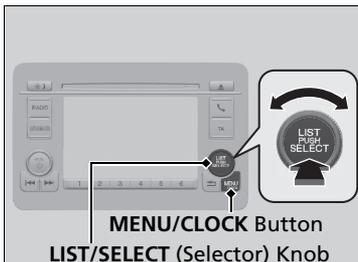
▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

To go back to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

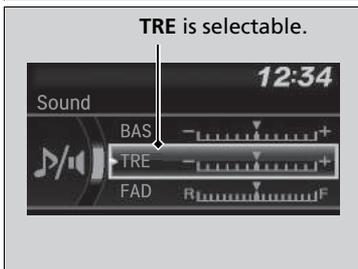
When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶ Adjusting the Sound

Adjusting the Sound

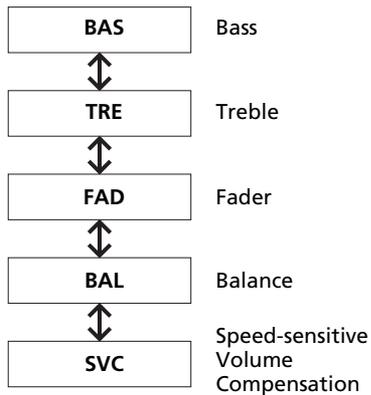


MENU/CLOCK Button
LIST/SELECT (Selector) Knob



TRE is selectable.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Sound**, then press .
3. Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



Rotate to adjust the sound setting, then press .

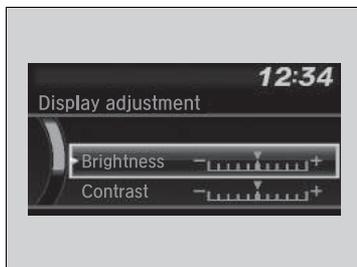
▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display adjustment**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
5. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Colour theme**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

▶▶ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black level** settings in the same manner.

Playing AM/FM Radio

Audio/Information Screen

RADIO Button
Press to select a band.

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

⏮/⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

Preset Buttons (1-6)
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.
To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.

TA Button
Press to activate the TA stand by function.

LIST/PRF/SELECT Knob
Turn to tune the radio frequency.
Press, and then turn to select an item. After that, press again to make your selection.

MENU/CLOCK Button
Press to display the menu items.

⏪ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.

Features

FM mode

Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides convenient automated services related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

To switch the audio mode, press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 247

You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset button memory. AM has two types of frequencies LW and MW, and each lets you store six stations. FM1 and FM2 let you store six stations each.

▶▶ Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Features

Continued

257

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

■ To find an RDS station from Station list



1. Press while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate to select the station, then press .

▶▶ Radio Data System (RDS)

While listening to an FM station on **Station list**, pressing / (Seek/Skip) button changes the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate to select **Update list**, then press .

■ Available RDS functions

Alternative Frequency (AF):

Automatically changes the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions.

Regional Programme (REG):

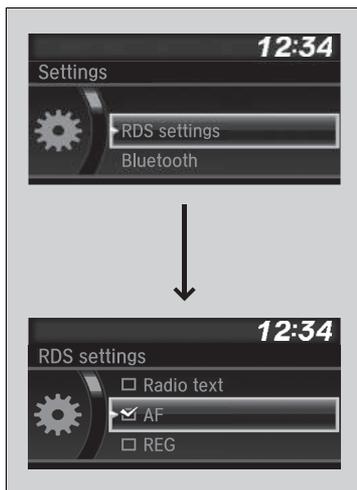
Keeps the same frequency of the stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.

Except AM/FM/DAB* mode

News Programme (News):

Automatically tunes to the news programme.

■ Selecting the RDS functions



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button with the FM selected.
2. Rotate to select **RDS settings** and press .
3. Each RDS function is displayed every time you rotate .
4. Press to select a function.

☒ Radio Data System (RDS)

Turning the Alternative Frequency (AF) function on and off turns the RDS on and off.

Pressing switches the function between on and off.

Continued

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

■ Traffic announcement (TA) button

TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode. The last tuned station must be an RDS-capable traffic programme station.

To turn the function on: Press the **TA** button. When a traffic announcement begins on your last tuned station, the system automatically switches to the FM mode. TA-INFO appears on the display. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, press the **TA** button again.

To cancel the function: Press the **TA** button.

☒ Radio Data System (RDS)

TA

When you press the **TA** button, the **TA** indicator appears on the display.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Pressing the **TA** button while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

Except AM/FM/DAB* mode

■ Programme type (PTY)/News interrupt function

Allows the system to interrupt with a newscast in any mode. The last tuned station must be the NEWS PTY coded station.

To activate the function: Select **News** from **RDS settings** and display the NEWS PTY before changing to other modes. When a newscast begins on your last tuned station, the system automatically switches to the FM mode.

▶ **Selecting the RDS functions** P. 259

The system returns to your last selected mode if changed to another programme, or signal gets weak.

■ PTY alarm

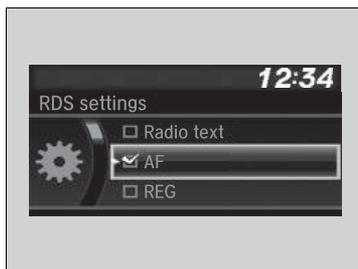
The PTY code, ALARM is used for emergency announcements, such as natural disasters. When this code is received, ALARM appears on the display and the system interrupts your audio operation.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

■ Radio text



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button with the FM selected.
2. Rotate  to select **Radio text** and press .

▶▶ Radio text

The **TEXT** indicator appears on the display indicating radio text information.

AM (LW/MW) mode**Station List**

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button to switch to a mode.
2. Press  to switch to the station list mode.
3. Rotate  to select the station, then press .

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press the **RADIO** button to switch to a mode.
2. Press  to switch to the station list mode.
3. Rotate  to select **Update list**, then press .

Scan

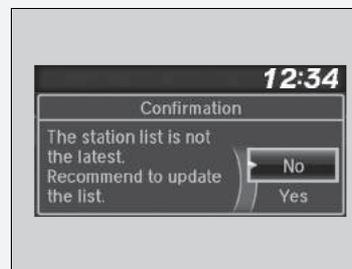
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

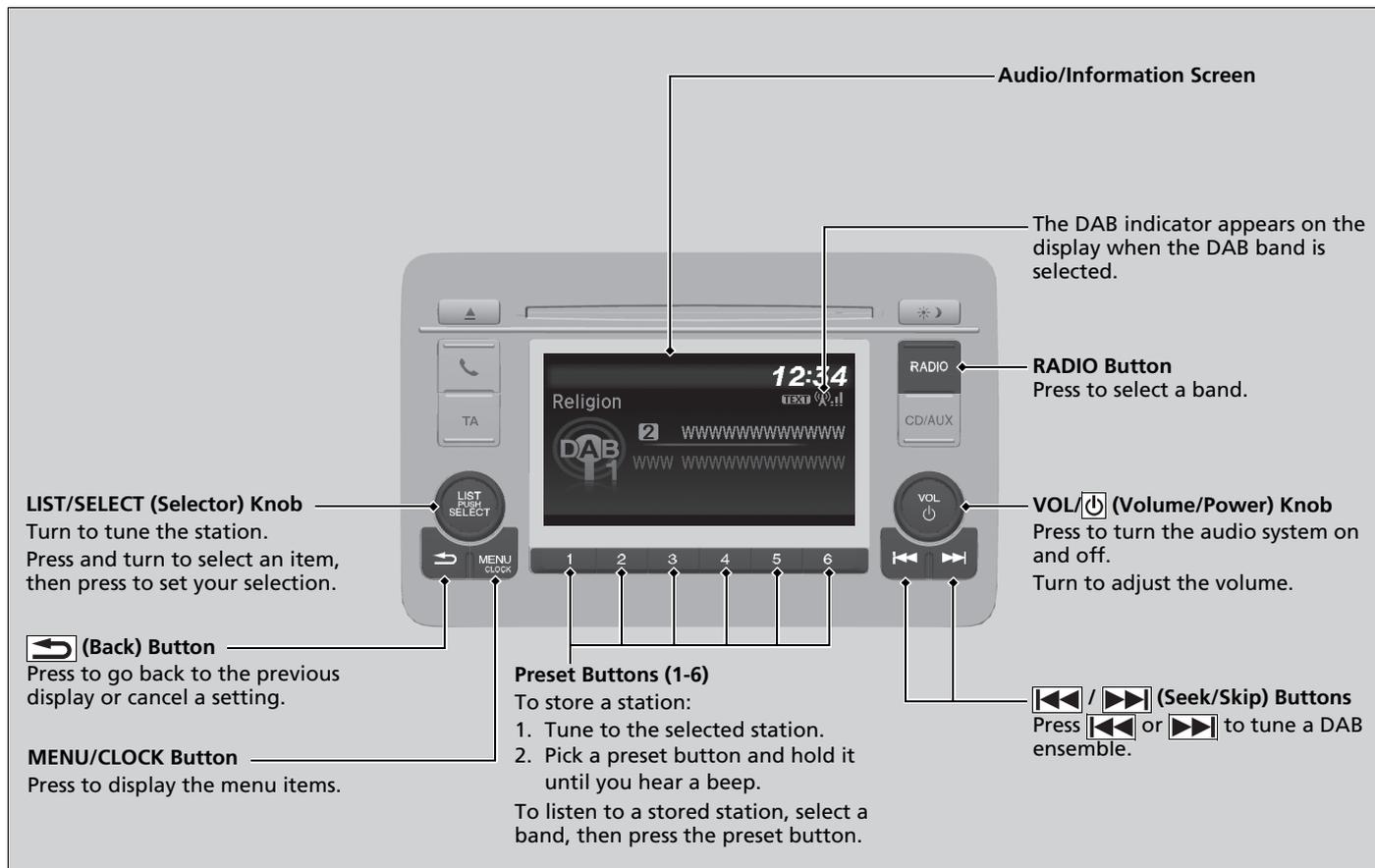
Station List

If the system cannot find any station on **Station list**, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press to  update the list.



▶▶Audio System Basic Operation▶▶Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*



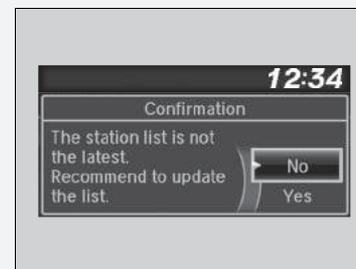
■ To find an DAB station from Service List or Ensemble List



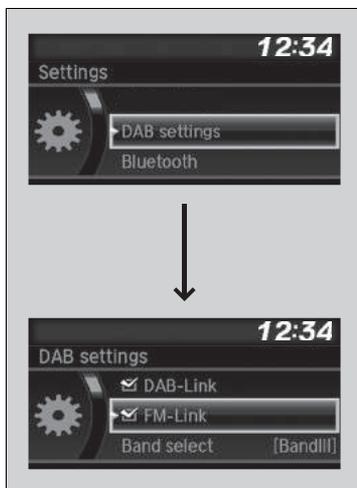
1. Press while selecting the DAB mode.
2. Rotate to select the station, then press .
- ▶ If you select **Update list**, the system update the station list.

▶▶ To find an DAB station from Service List or Ensemble List

If the system cannot find a station, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press to update the list.



■ Setting the DAB functions



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button with the DAB selected.
2. Rotate to select **DAB settings** and press .

3. Each DAB function is displayed every time you rotate .
4. Press to select a function.

Continued

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*

■ DAB Settings

■ DAB-Link:

Automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.

■ FM-Link:

If the system finds the same station from an FM band, it automatically switches the band.

■ Band select:

You can select specific bands. This can reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.

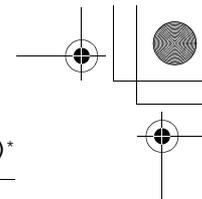
■ Radio Text



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button with the DAB selected.
2. Rotate  to select **Radio text** and press .

▶▶ Radio Text

The **TEXT** indicator appears on the display indicating radio text information.

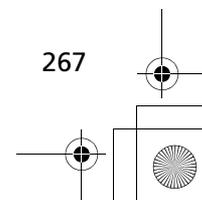
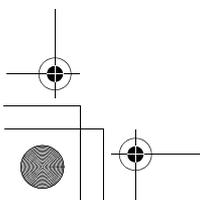
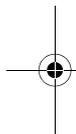


■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

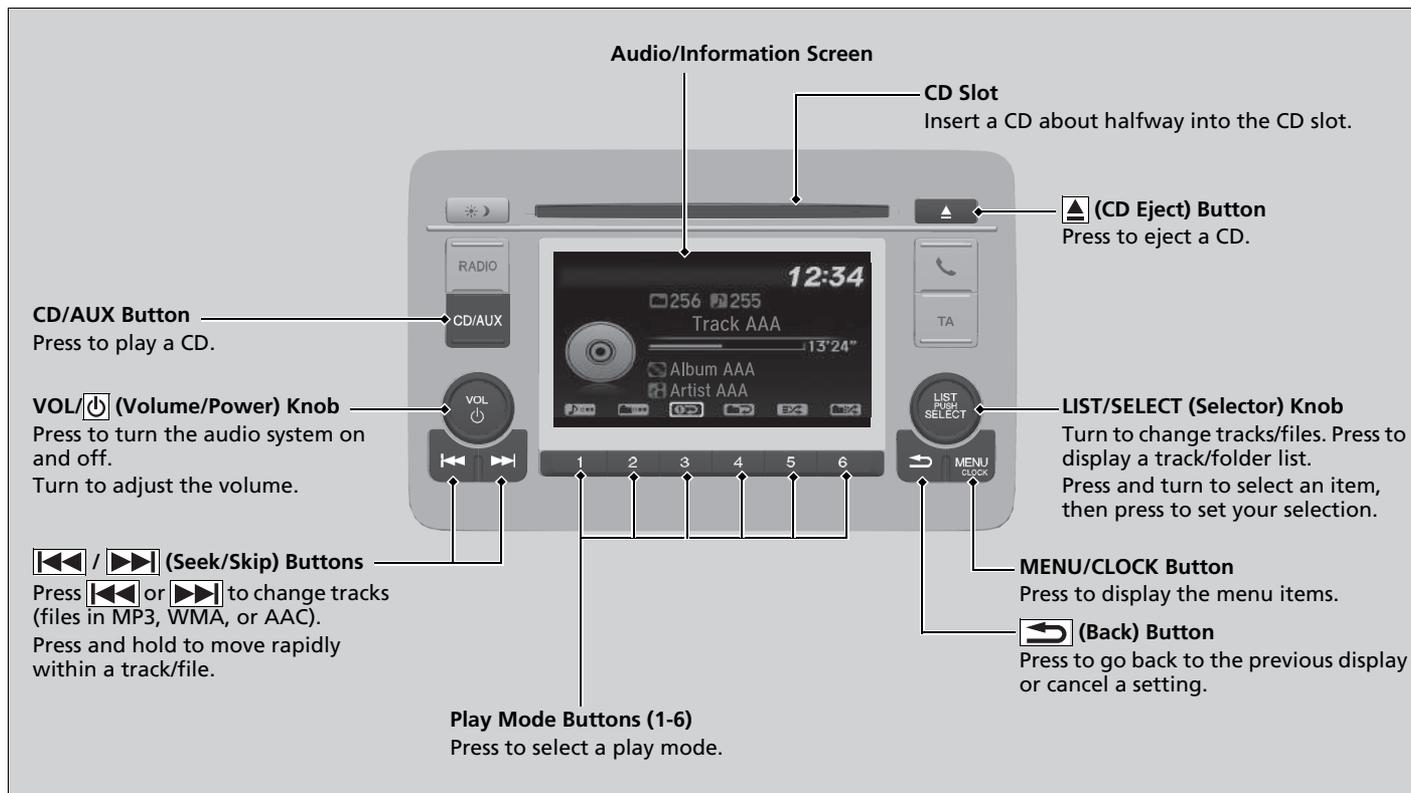
To turn off scan, press .



▶▶Audio System Basic Operation▶▶Playing a CD

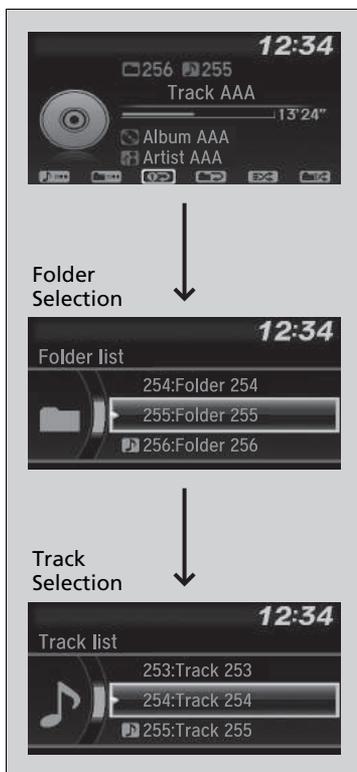
Playing a CD

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs, and CD-RWs in either MP3 or WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, press the **CD/AUX** button.



*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Press to switch the display to a folder list.

2. Rotate to select a folder.

3. Press to display a list of tracks in that folder.

4. Rotate to select a track, then press .

▶▶ Playing a CD

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable file**, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

Continued

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing a CD

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a track or file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

Repeat

Repeat one folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat one track: Repeats the current track/file.

Random

Random in folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random all: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

Scan

Scan folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play mode**, then press .

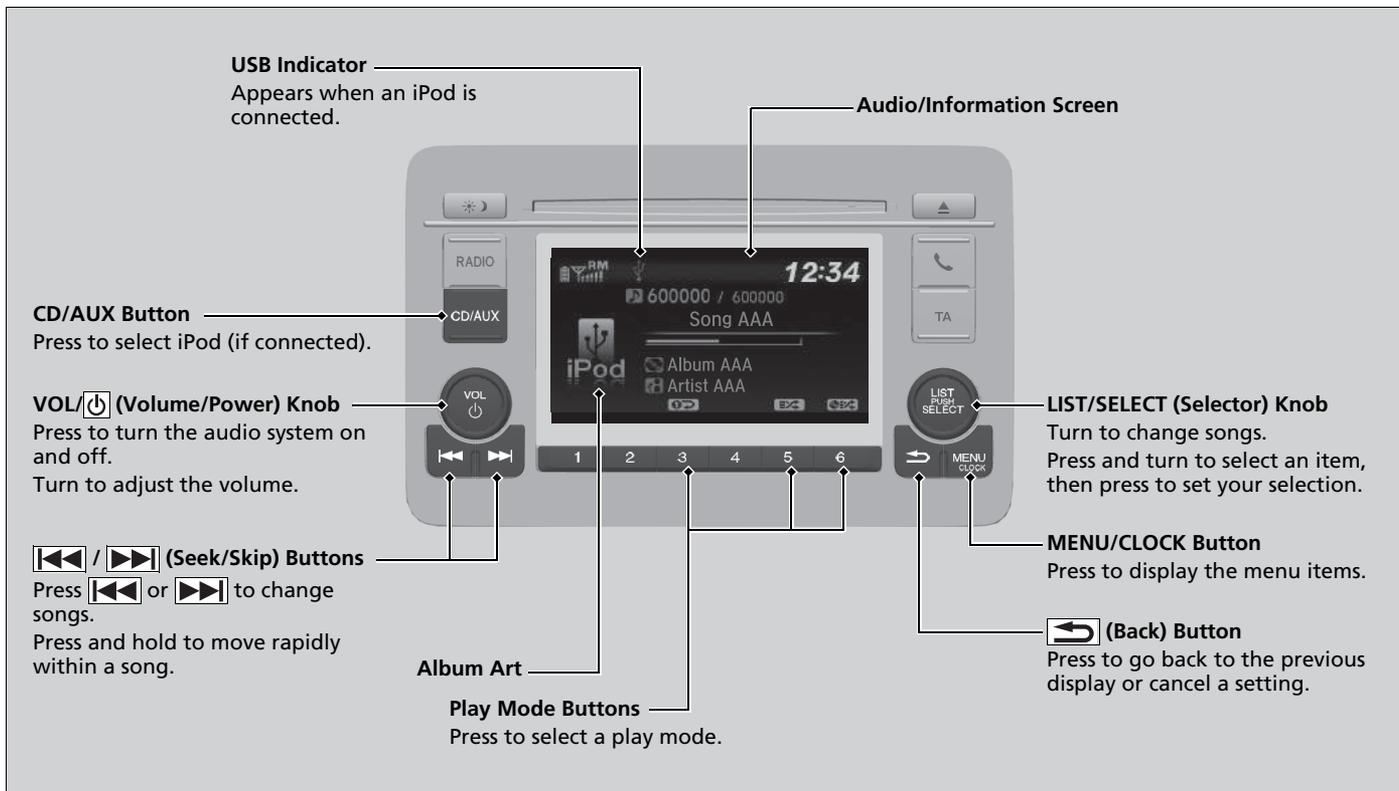
Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal play**, then press .

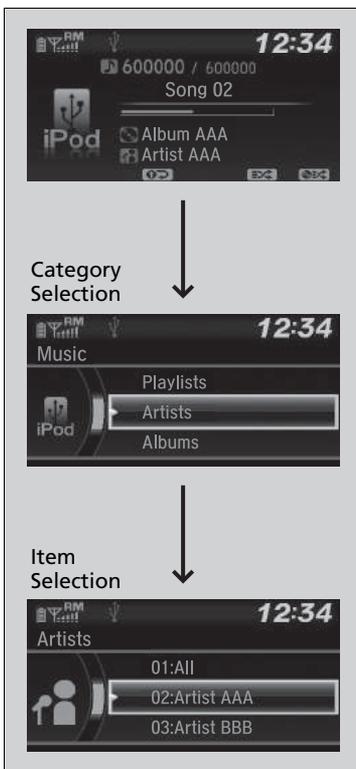
Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then press the **CD/AUX** button.

📖 **USB Port(s)** P. 243



How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display the iPod music list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

▶▶ Playing an iPod

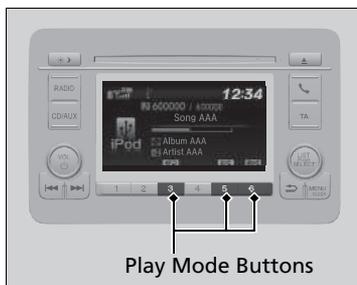
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 328

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



Play Mode Buttons

Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

Shuffle albums: Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Shuffle: Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Repeat one track: Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal play**, then press .

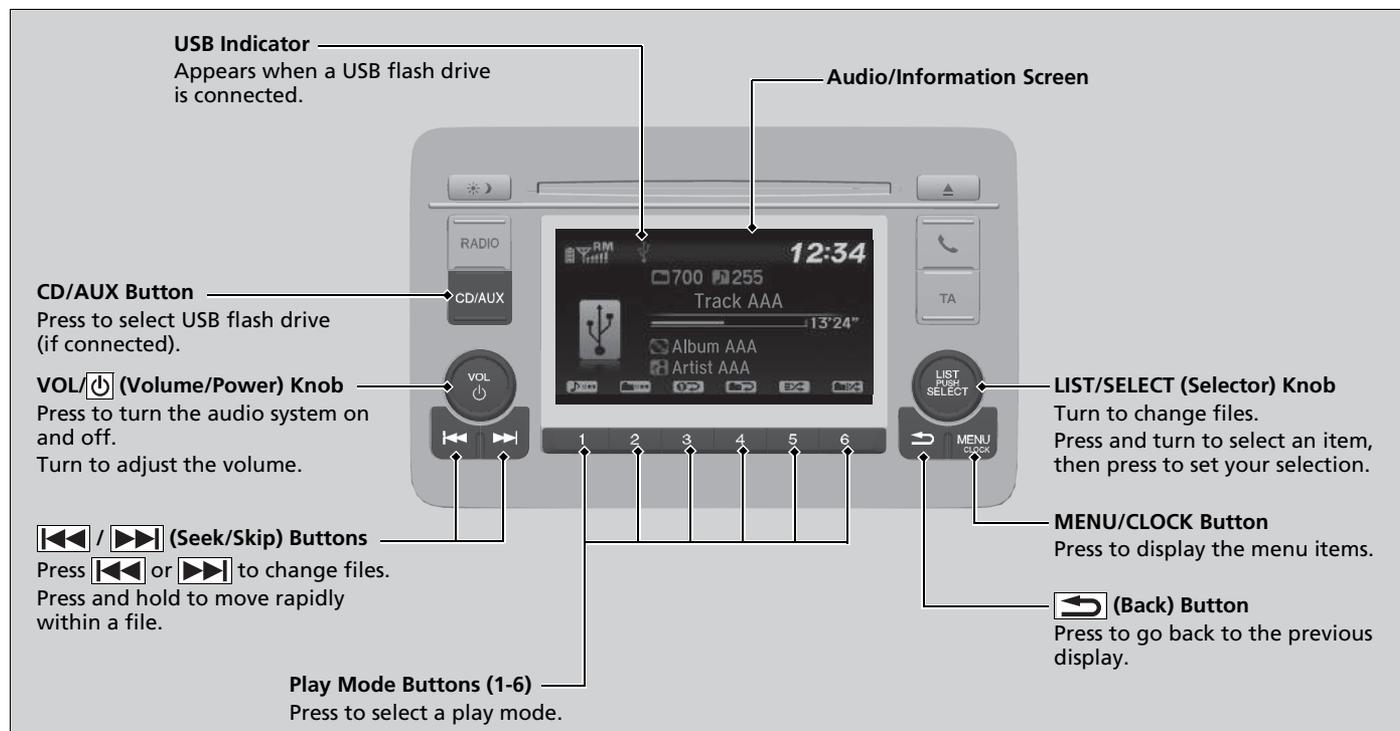
▶▶Audio System Basic Operation▶▶Playing a USB Flash Drive

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC*1 format.

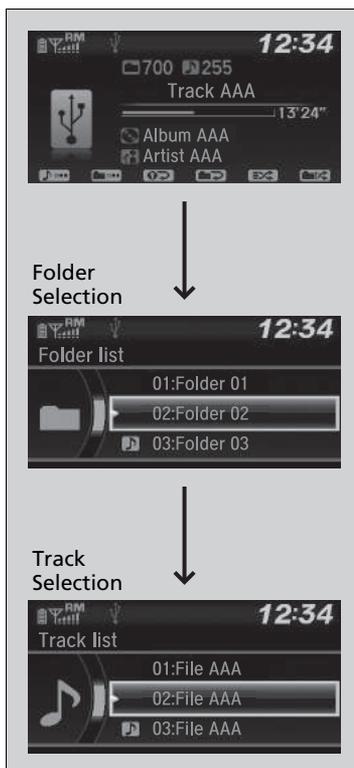
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **CD/AUX** button.

📌 **USB Port(s)** P. 243



*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display a folder list.

2. Rotate to select a folder.

3. Press to display a list of files in that folder.

4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**
P. 330

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played. The audio system displays **Unplayable file**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 328

Continued

275

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons. Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

Repeat

Repeat one folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat one track: Repeats the current file.

Random

Random in folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random all: Plays all files in random order.

Scan

Scan folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

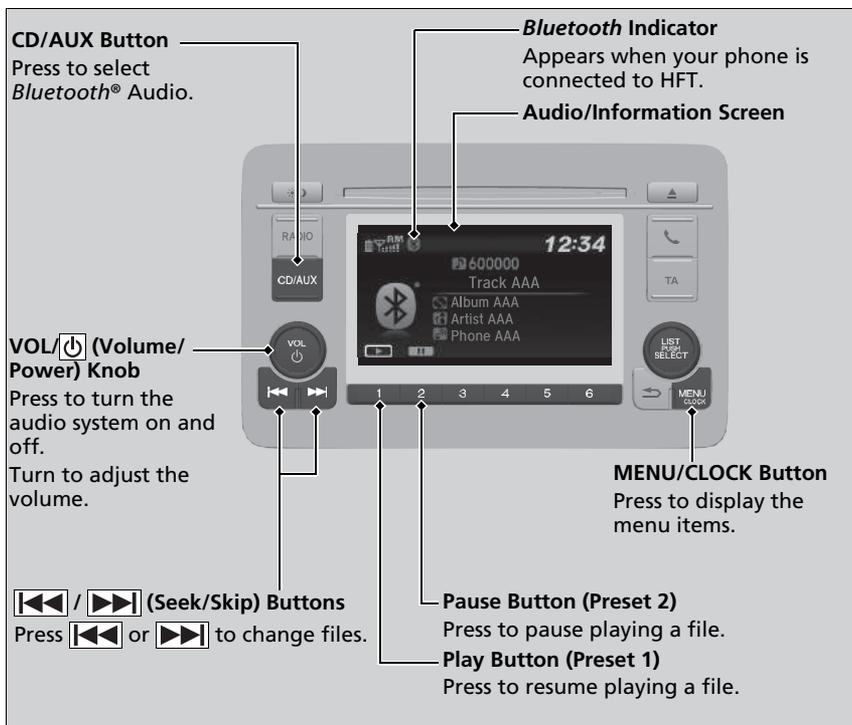
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal play**, then press .

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 367



▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

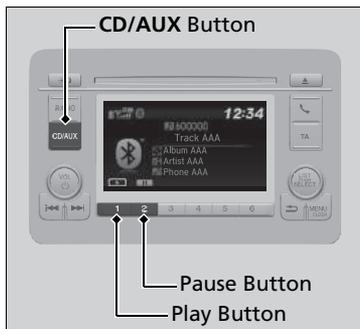
Some functions may not be available on some devices.

Features

Continued

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
2. Press the **CD/AUX** button until the Bluetooth Audio Source is selected.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file

Press the play or pause button to select a mode.

▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

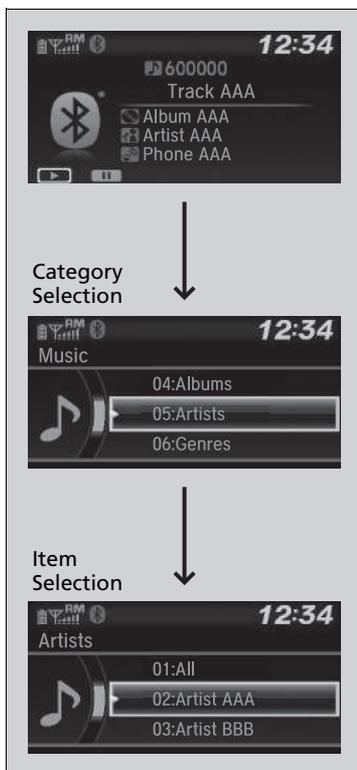
To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack or USB port, you may need to press the **CD/AUX** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display the music search list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

- ▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

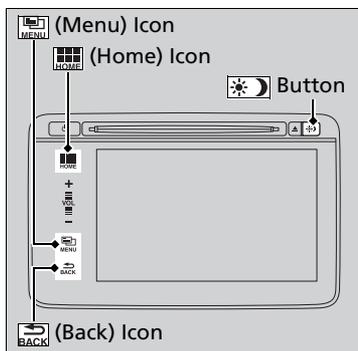
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

Audio System Basic Operation

Models with display audio system

You can use the audio system for 30 minutes when the ignition switch is in LOCK [0]*1 position, the system will then turn off automatically.

If you want to keep using it, we recommend that you turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY [I] or ON [II]*1.



(Home) Icon: Select to go to the home screen.

Switching the Display P. 281

(Menu) Icon: Select to select any mode. The available mode includes **Change Source, Station List, Save Preset, Radio Text, Music Search**, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from **Scan, Random/Repeat**, and so on.

(Back) Icon: Select to go back to the previous display when it is displayed.

button:

Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press once and select or to make an adjustment.

▶ Each time you press , the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio Menu Items

- ▶ **Station List** P. 300, 301
- ▶ **How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)** P. 307, 313
- ▶ **Scan** P. 301, 302, 304, 308, 314
- ▶ **How to Select a Play Mode** P. 308, 311, 314

When the battery has been reconnected or replaced, the next start-up may take a few minutes for the audio system to start. Wait a few moments while the system is starting up.

Press and hold the (power) button for approximately 10 seconds to reset the system. When the system is reset and started up, you are required to input the password.

▶ **Audio System Theft Protection** P. 246

Key Off Operation

▶ **About Your Audio System** P. 242

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display



Select the  icon to go to the home screen.
Select **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, or **Navigation**.

Phone

Displays the HFT information.

 **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 382

Audio/Information Screen

Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Audio/Information Screen

■ Info

To see all available information, **Trip Computer**, **Clock/Wallpaper**, or **System/Device Information**, select the  icon.

Trip Computer:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.

Clock/Wallpaper:

Displays the clock and wallpaper.

System/Device Information:

- **Version Information**: Displays the software version of the audio system.
- **USB Device Information**: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.
- **USB Device Change**: Connects or disconnects USB device to this audio system.

■ Audio

Displays the current status.

■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

- ▶ **Customized Features** P. 345

■ Navigation

Displays the navigation screen.

- ▶ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

■ Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **HOME** tab.
5. Select **Home icon position**.
6. Select and hold the icon then, drag it to the desired position.

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
 ▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 243
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Info**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
 ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
 ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
 ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
 - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or select the **BACK** (Back) icon.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

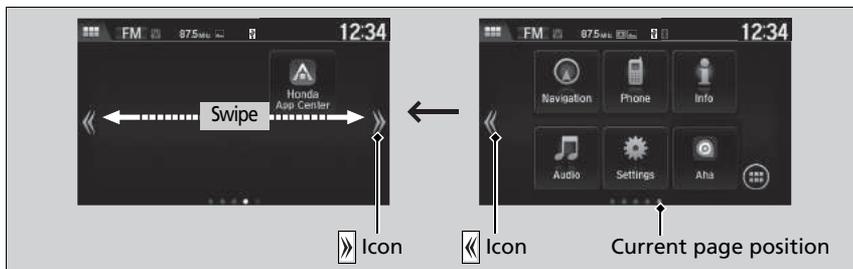
To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

Continued

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Audio/Information Screen

Home Screen

To change to a next screen



Selecting  or , or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.

■ To use apps or widgets



1. Select .
 - ▶ The **App/Widget List** screen appears.
2. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstall app list:

- **Aha Radio:** Starts up Aha Radio app.
- **Browser:** Displays the web browser utilized by smartphone and Wi-Fi connection.
- **Calculator:** Displays Calculator.
- **Calendar:** Displays Calendar.
- **Clock:** Displays Clock.
- **Downloads:** Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
- **Gallery:** Displays the image list stored in the audio system.
- **Garmin Navigator:** Starts up navigation app.
- **Honda App Center:** Displays Honda App Center.
- **Install App:** Installs and updates app stored in the USB flash drive. However, you can install and update app only through Honda App Center.
- **Music:** Displays the music list stored in the audio system.
- **Search:** Displays various retrieval screens.
- **Settings:** Displays the Android setting screen.

Continued

▶▶ To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

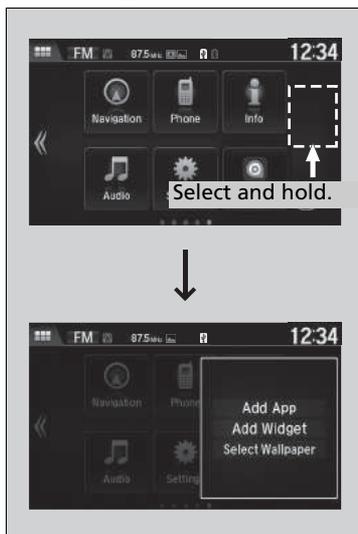
If preinstall apps do not startup normally, try **Factory Data Reset**. In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

 **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 360

■ To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
2. Select **Add App** or **Add Widget**.
 - ▶ The **Add App/Widget** screen appears.



3. Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
 - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
4. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
5. Select **OK**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



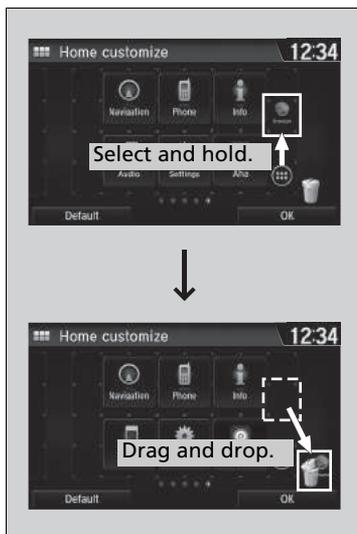
1. Select and hold an icon.
 - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
3. Select **OK**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

▶▶To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, and Navigation** icons in the same manner.

■ To delete icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
 - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to delete to the waste basket icon.
 - ▶ The icon is deleted.
3. Select **OK**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

☒ To delete icons on the home screen

You cannot delete the **Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, and Navigation** icons.

Apps or widgets will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Continued

■ To change a wallpaper of the home screen

You can change a wallpaper of the home screen.



1. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.

▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

2. Select **Select Wallpaper**.

▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.



3. Select an app for selecting wallpapers.

4. Select the wallpaper you want to change.

5. Select **Set wallpaper**.

▶ The wallpaper is changed, then the screen will return to the home screen.



Status Area



Swipe the upper area of the screen.

▶ The status area appears.

Select an item to see the details.

Select  or swipe up the  icon to close the area.

Features

Continued

Changing the Screen Interface

You can change the screen interface design.



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Skin Change**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Changing the Screen Interface

You need to reboot the system after changing the interface design. Wait a few moments while the system is starting up.

You can change the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

▶ **Wallpaper Setup** P. 284

If you change the screen interface, some of the setting items will change.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 345

■ Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.



1. Select and hold the  icon.
2. Select the **Active** tab.
 - ▶ If you select the **Active/History** tab, you can close the apps that are currently running and delete the app activity history simultaneously.
3. Select an app you want to close.
4. Select **Clear**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the app list.

☒ Closing Apps

If you leave the apps used open in the background, some apps may stop operating properly next time using them.
If this happens close unused apps.

To close all apps on the system, select **Clear All**, then **Yes**.

You cannot close **Garmin Navigator**.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Sound**.

Select a tab from the following choices:
BASS, TREBLE, FADER, BALANCE, Speed Volume Compensation (SVC)



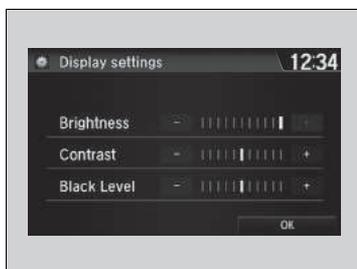
▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off, Low, Mid, and High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

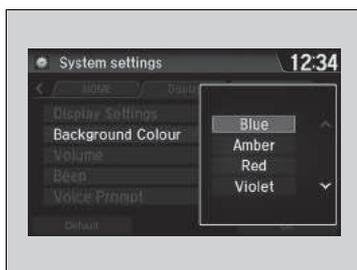
You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

Changing the Screen's Colour Theme



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Colour**.
6. Select the setting you want and select it again.
 - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes** to reboot the system.

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

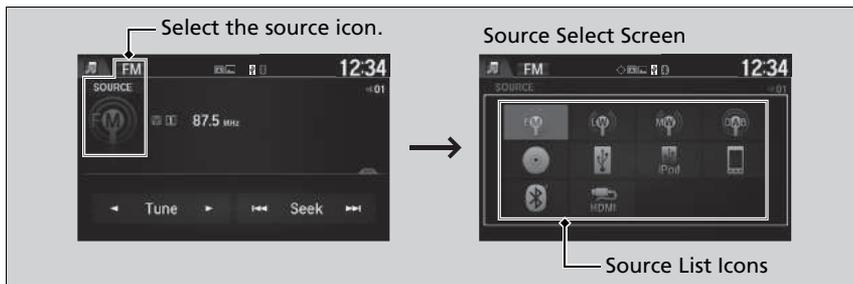
Reboot may take a few minutes.
If you default the **System** settings when the colour theme is changed from its default colour, the system reboots.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 345

Continued

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶ Display Setup

Selecting an Audio Source



Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

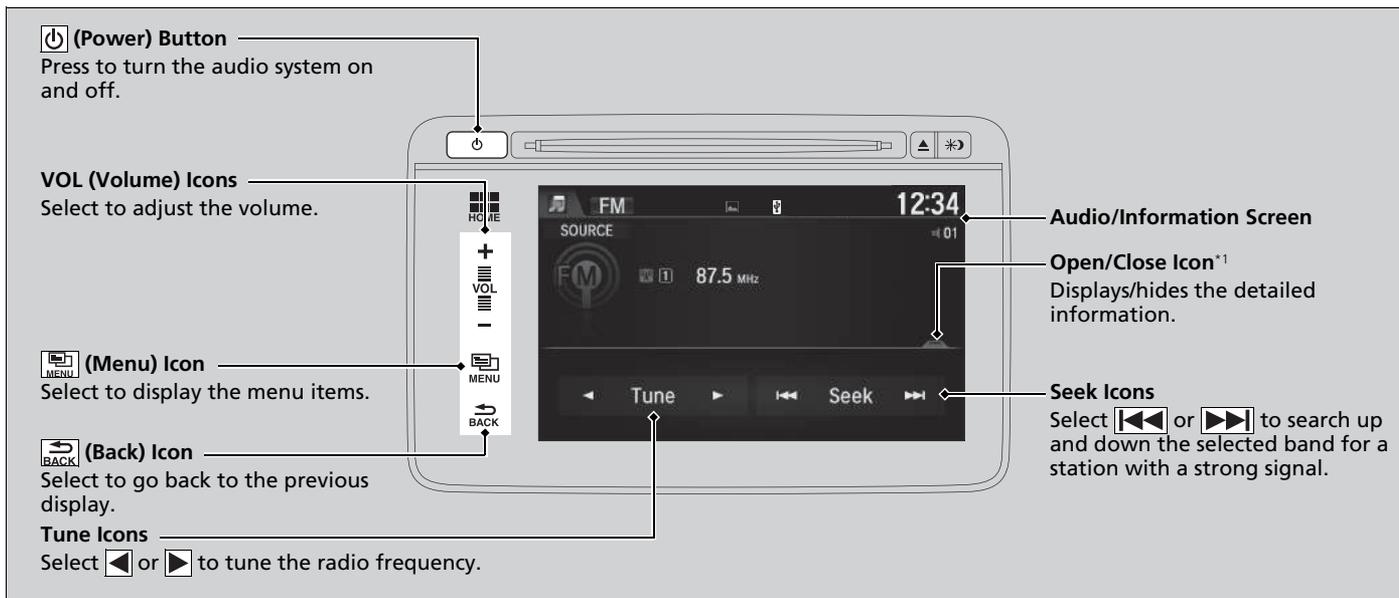
Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Selecting an Audio Source

If you startup preinstalled audio apps, **App/Widget** is displayed on the upper left of the screen. These preinstalled apps cannot be displayed on the source select screen. You can startup those audio apps from **App/Widget List**.

Playing AM/FM Radio



*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.



▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select the  icon.
3. Select **Save Preset**.
4. Select the preset number for the station you want to store.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select **Update List**.

▶▶ Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

 **Audio Remote Controls** P. 247

You can also switch the mode by selecting **Change Source** on the **Audio menu** screen.

You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory. AM has two types of frequencies LW and MW, and each lets you store six stations.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Scan**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel Scan**.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select the  icon while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

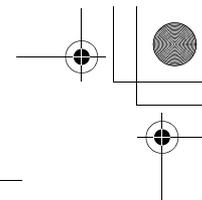
Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the  icon while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select **Update List**.

☑ Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Continued



▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Radio Text**.

■ Scan

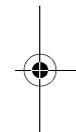
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Scan**.

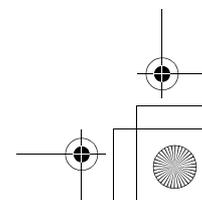
To turn off scan, select **Cancel Scan**.



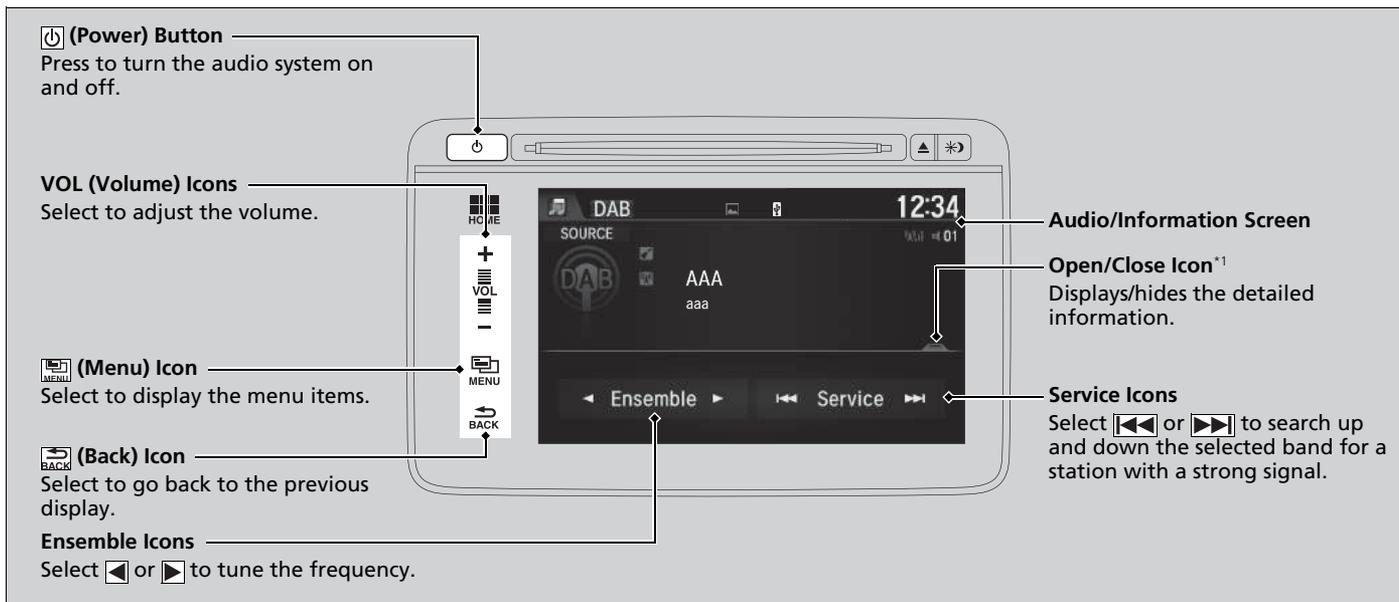
Features



302



Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

■ Preset Memory

Stores a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select the  icon.
3. Select **Save Preset**.
4. Select the preset number for the station you want to store.

■ Ensemble List

Lists the strongest stations.

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Ensemble List**.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Ensemble List**.
3. Select **Update List**.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select **Scan Ensemble** or **Scan Service**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel Scan**.

▶▶ Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

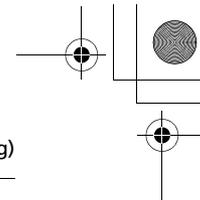
Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

▶▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 247

You can also switch the mode by selecting **Change Source** on the **Audio menu** screen.

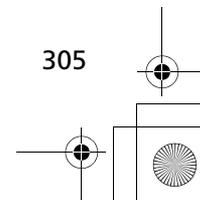
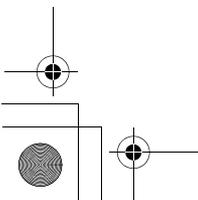
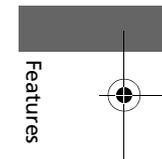
You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.



■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

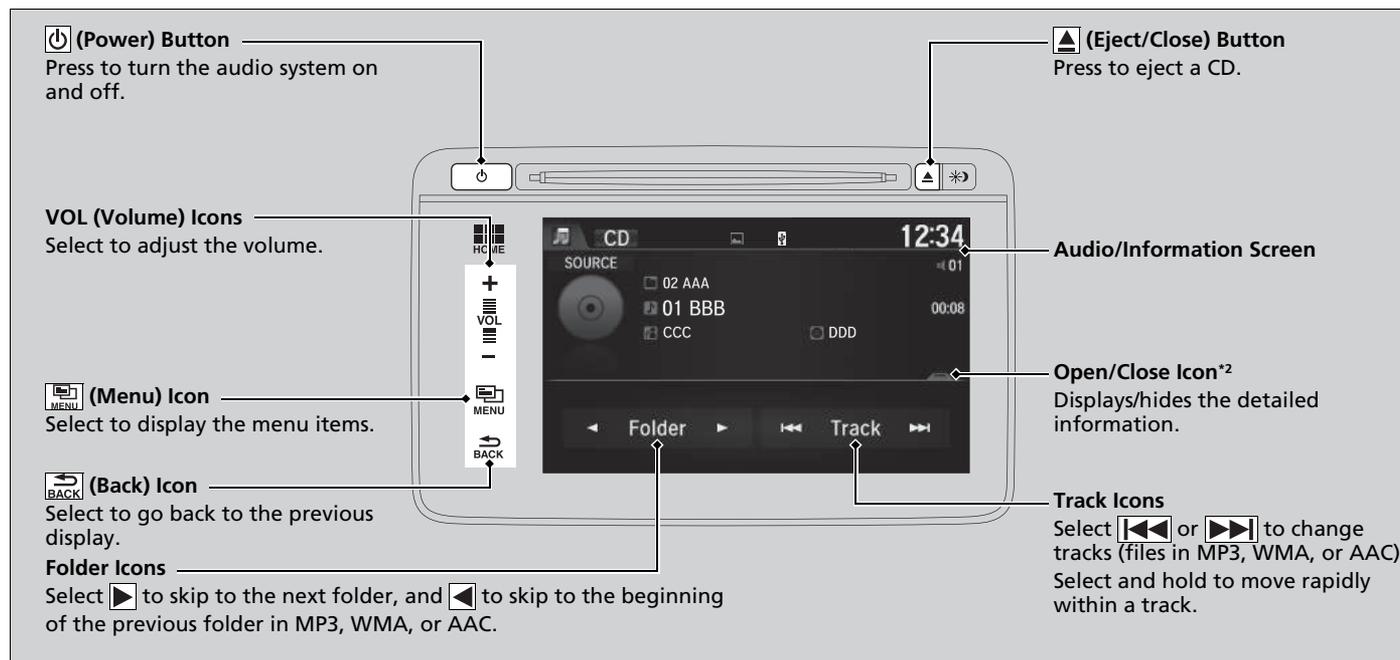
1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Radio Text**.



▶▶Audio System Basic Operation▶▶Playing a CD

Playing a CD

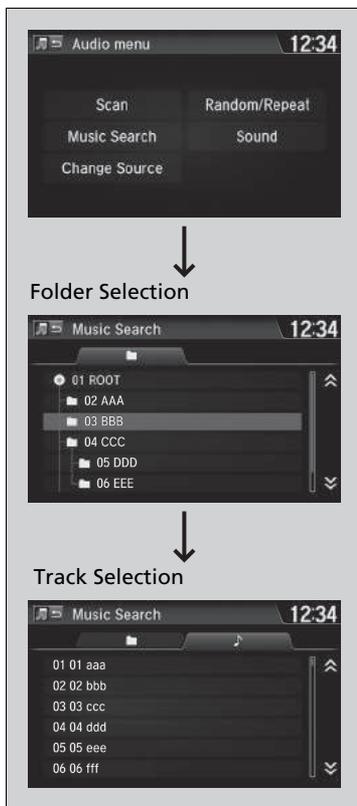
Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs, and CD-RWs in either MP3 or WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.



*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Select the  icon and select **Music Search**.

2. Select a folder.

3. Select a track.

▶▶ Playing a CD

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

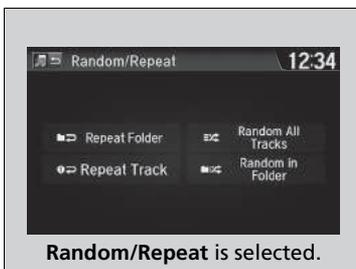
Features

Continued

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing a CD

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

To turn off a play mode

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current track/file.

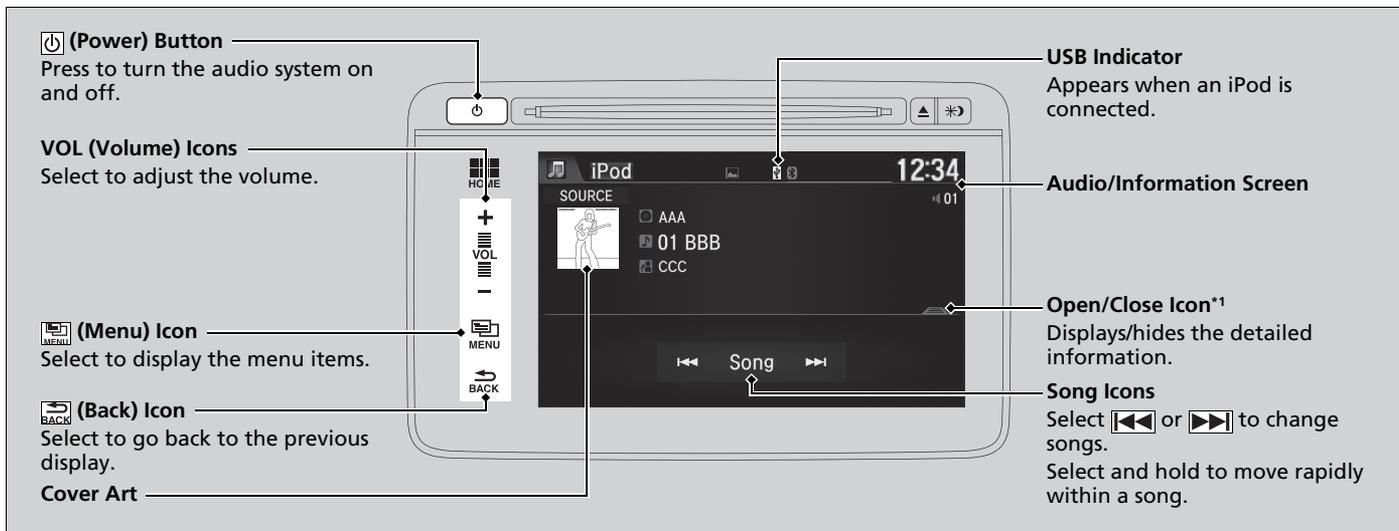
Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

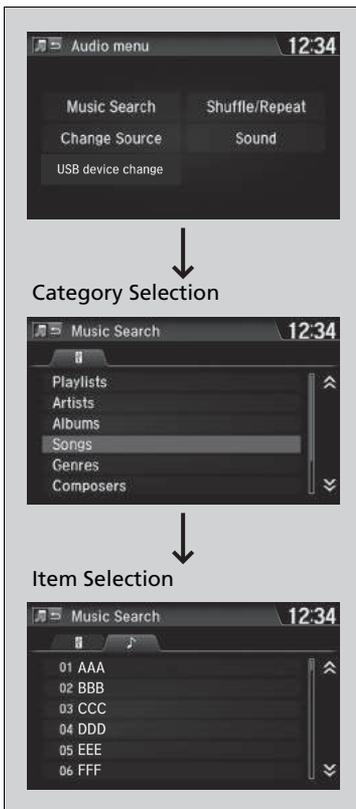
▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 243



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Features

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select the  icon and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

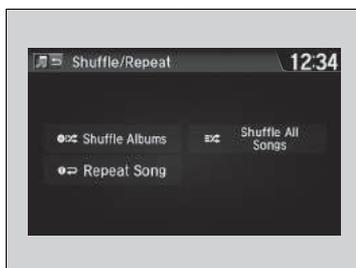
 **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 328

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

Select **USB device change** in the **Audio menu** screen to switch to another USB device.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Shuffle/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

☒ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

Repeat Song: Repeats the current track.

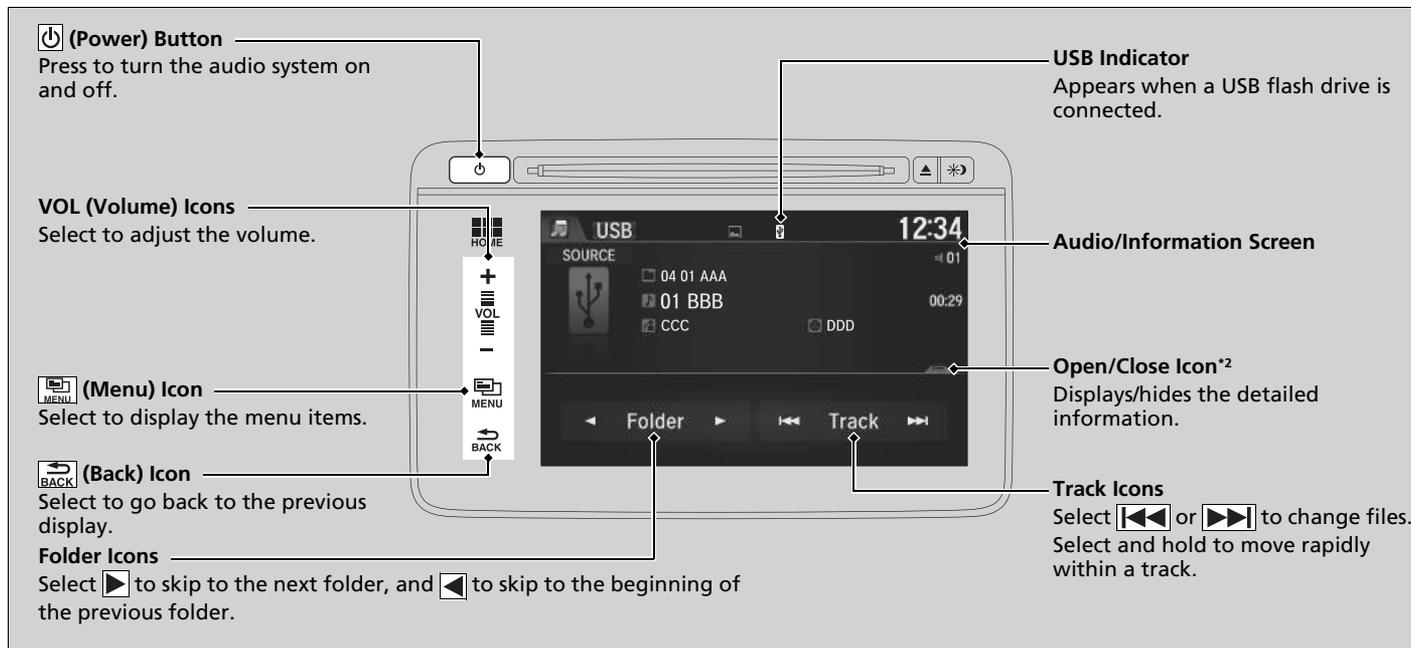
▶▶Audio System Basic Operation▶▶Playing a USB Flash Drive

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC*1, or WAV format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

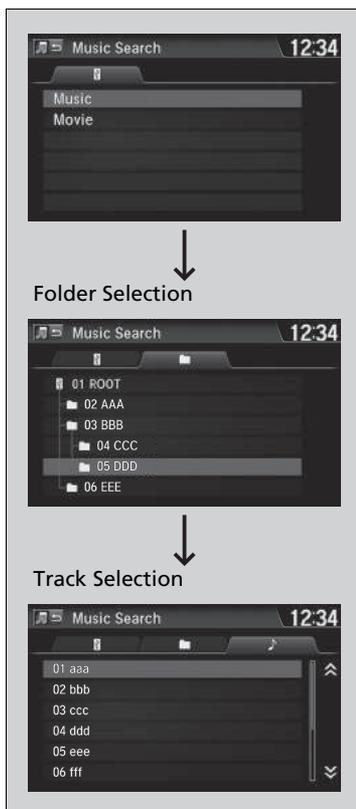
📌 **USB Port(s)** P. 243



*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select the  icon and select **Music Search**.

2. Select **Music** or **Movie**.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a track.

▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**
P. 330

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 328

Select **USB device change** in the **Audio menu** screen to switch to another USB device.

Continued

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

To turn off a play mode

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folder: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Track (Scan Movies*1): Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.
Repeat Tracks (Repeat Movies*1): Repeats the current file.

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks (Random All Movies*1): Plays all files in random order.

When playing a video file:

Play/Pause: Select to resume or play a file.

Stop: Select to stop a file.

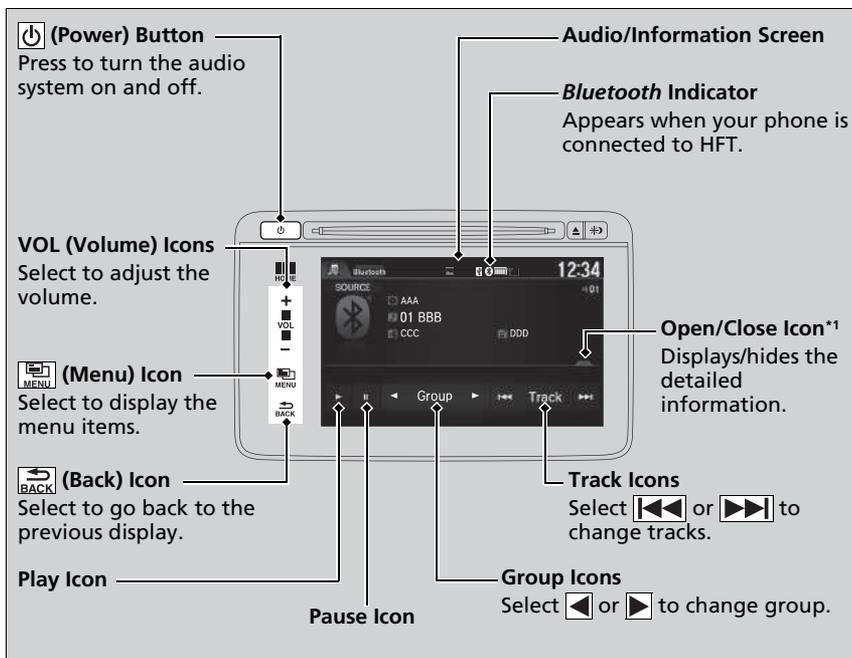
*1: When playing a video file

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System.

☛ **Phone Setup** P. 388



*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

Features

Continued

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 388

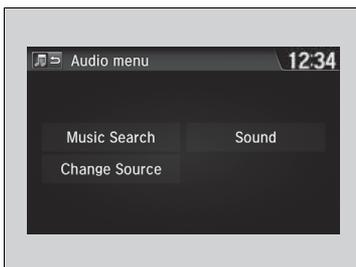
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

■ Searching for Music



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Music Search**.
3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
4. Select an item.
 - ▶ The selection begins playing.

▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the **Bluetooth Device List** on the **Audio** settings screen by the following procedure.

1. Select  icon.
2. Select **Settings**

▶▶ Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

Your audio system allows you to play videos from an HDMI-compatible device. Connect the device, using an HDMI™ cable, then select the HDMI™ mode.

▶ **HDMI™ Port*** P. 244



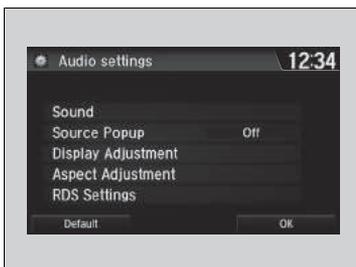
Features

* Not available on all models

Continued 317

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶▶ Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

Changing the Screen Aspect



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Aspect Adjustment**.
5. Select the setting you want.
6. Select **OK**.

▶▶ Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

This feature is limited while driving. To play videos, stop your vehicle and apply the parking brake.

On Board Apps

Honda Connect has the capability of On Board Apps which may be created by Honda or by 3rd parties. Apps may be already installed or can be downloaded through Honda App Center. Some apps require internet access which can be established by Wi-Fi connection.

▶ **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 324

Please visit the below web address for further information:

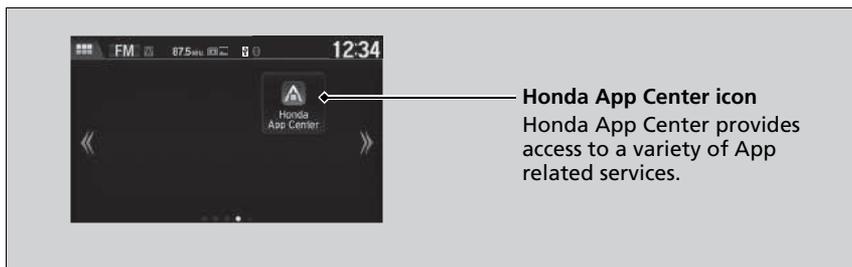
<https://ivhs.os.ixonos.com/honda/help>

▶▶ On Board Apps

Make sure the GPS setting is turned on before using Honda App Center.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 345

Even if you change **Background Colour** on the **System settings** screen, it will not be reflected on the Honda App Center screen.



- Using the Display Audio system while driving can take your attention away from the road, causing a crash in which you could be seriously injured or killed. Only operate system controls when the conditions permit you to safely do so. **Please always adhere to the laws of the territory when operating this device.**
- Applications on the head unit are subject to change at anytime. This may mean that they are not available or operate differently. Honda shall not be liable to you in such instances.
- Applications available on the device may be provided by parties other than Honda to which 3rd party software licences and charges may apply.
- Data usage and roaming charges may result in using applications on the device in conjunction with your mobile phone and Honda is not liable for any costs you might incur from such use. Honda recommends you consult your mobile phone network provider in advance.
- Downloading applications from the Honda App Center will be subject to Terms and Conditions which can be found at: <https://ivhs.os.ixonos.com/honda/help>, and may also incur charges.

Smartphone Connection

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable, or wirelessly.

- ▶ **Connecting Your iPhone** P. 322
- ▶ **Connecting Your Smartphone** P. 323
- ▶ **Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)** P. 324

Smartphone Connection

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on your smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth*[®] connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

- ▶ **To change the currently paired phone**
P. 389

The following may vary by phone type:

- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time

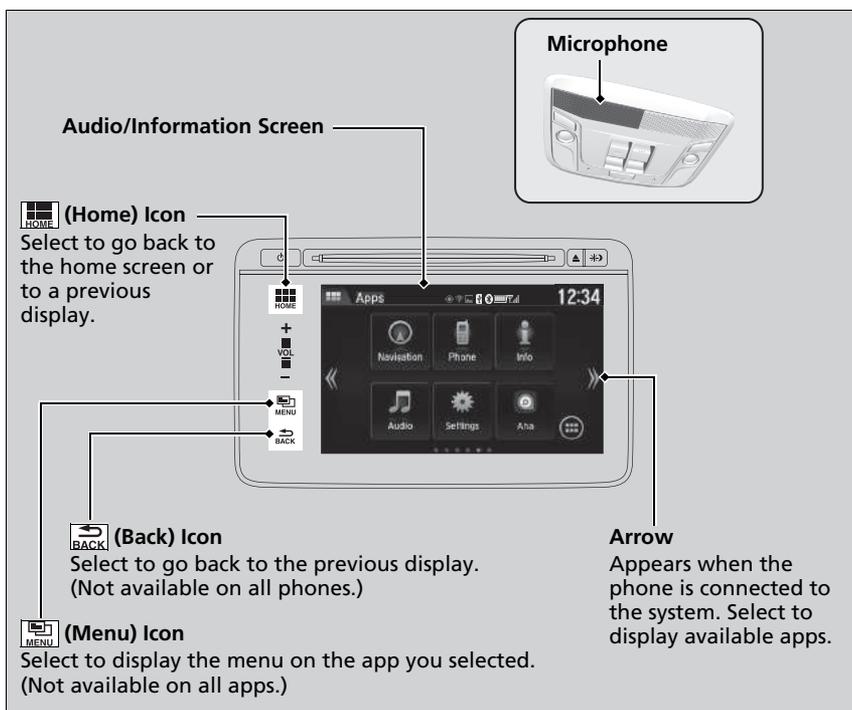
We do not support every app operation on the audio system.

Ask the app provider for any queries on the app's features.

Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

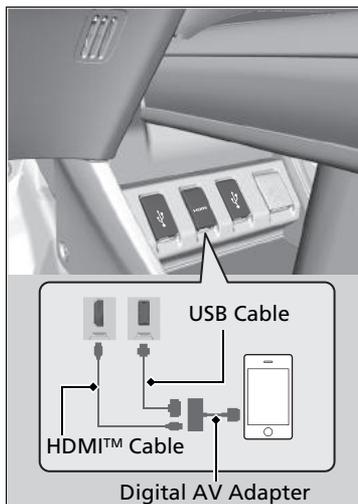
▶ **Phone Setup** P. 388



Continued

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶ Smartphone Connection

■ Connecting Your iPhone



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.
 - ▶ **Phone Setup** P. 388
2. Plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ jack.
3. Connect the digital AV adapter to your iPhone.
 - ▶ Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.
4. Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
5. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ To go back to the previous screen, select the  icon.

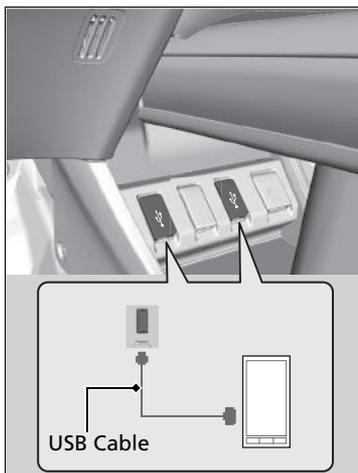
☒ Connecting Your iPhone

Make sure to plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ jack first. If not, smartphone connection may not work properly.

To recharge your phone, connect it to the USB jack, too.

Contact a dealer for the digital AV adapter or HDMI™ cable purchasing information.

■ Connecting Your Smartphone



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.
▶ **Phone Setup** P. 388
2. Plug in your phone to the USB jack.
 - ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
 - ▶ Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.
3. Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
4. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ To go back to the previous screen, select the  icon.

☒ Connecting Your Smartphone

The phone is rechargeable while being connected to the USB jack. However, if the phone is overloaded with many operational tasks, the battery level may get lowered.

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶ Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the display audio system to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Wi-Fi** tab.
5. Select **Wi-Fi On/Off Status**, then **On**.
6. Select **Wi-Fi Device List**.
 - ▶ Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
 - ▶ Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
 - ▶ If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on **Wi-Fi Device list**. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.



7. Select **Connect**.

- ▶ Enter a password for your phone, and select **Done**.
- ▶ If you cannot enter the password on the displayed keyboard, change the keyboard to the one in which you can enter from the Android setting.
 - ▣ **Customized Features** P. 345
- ▶ When the connection is successful, the  icon is displayed on the list.

8. Select the  icon to go back to the home screen.

■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

▶▶ Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

If you cannot enter the password on the displayed keyboard, change the keyboard to the one in which you can enter from the following order:
Settings→**Android**→**Language & input**→select  next to **Android keyboard**→**Input language**→uncheck the box next to **Use system language**→select the keyboard languages that you can enter.

▶▶ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

iPhone users

You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

▶▶ Audio System Basic Operation ▶ Siri Eyes Free

Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System.

 **Phone Setup** P. 388

▶▶ Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

▶▶ Using Siri Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

■ Using Siri Eyes Free

 **(Hang-up/back) Button**

Press to deactivate Siri.



 **(Talk) Button**

Press and hold until the display changes as shown.

Appears when Siri is activated in Siri Eyes Free



While in Siri Eyes Free:
The display remains the same. No feedback or commands appears.

Audio Error Messages

CD Player

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
Unplayable file* ¹ Unplayable File* ²	Track/file format not supported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.
Bad disc Please check owners manual Push eject* ¹ Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual Push Eject* ²	Mechanical error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the  (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared. Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Protecting CDs P. 331 If the error message reappears, press the  button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
Mechanical error* ¹ Mecha Error* ²		
Bad disc Please check owners manual* ¹ Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual* ²	Servo error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Protecting CDs P. 331
Check disc* ¹ Check Disc* ²	Disc error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Protecting CDs P. 331
Heat error* ¹ Heat Error* ²	High temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.

*1: Colour audio system

*2: Display audio system

▶▶ Audio Error Messages ▶ iPod/USB Flash Drive

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB error ^{*1} USB Error ^{*2}	Appears when there is a problem with the USB adapter unit. Check if the device is compatible with the USB adapter unit.
Incompatible USB device ^{*1} Incompatible USB Device Please Check Owner's Manual ^{*2}	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Unsupported version ^{*1} Unsupported Version ^{*2}	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Retry connection ^{*1} Connect Retry ^{*2}	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable file ^{*1} Unplayable File ^{*2}	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
No data ^{*1} No song ^{*1} No Data ^{*2}	<p>iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.</p> <p>iPod Appears when the iPod is empty.</p> <p>USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash drive.</p>
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

*1: Colour audio system

*2: Display audio system

Models with display audio system

Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
Unfortunately, **** has stopped. ^{*1}	Error has occurred within app, select OK on the screen to close the app. Unless it is a fatal error, it would return to normal if you startup the app. If it does not return to normal even after starting up the app, press and hold the  (power) button to perform the forced reset. If it still does not get back to normal, you need Factory Data Reset . ➤ Defaulting All the Settings P. 360
**** is not responding. Would you like to close it? ^{*1}	App is in a busy state. Select Wait if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select OK to close the app and start it up. When it does not return to normal, press and hold the  (power) button to perform the forced reset. You also need Factory Data Reset . ➤ Defaulting All the Settings P. 360
Security warning	Occurs if you open the browser when the system date is older than the certificate date information. It also occurs when you are in the area where GPS reception is unavailable or GPS setting of the Android setting is turned off. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Turn on GPS setting of the Android setting. • Move to the area where GPS reception is available. ➤ Customized Features P. 345

*1:****part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

General Information on the Audio System

Recommended CDs

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labelled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



CDs with MP3, WMA, or AAC files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

Recommended CDs

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.

■ Protecting CDs

Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:

- Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
- When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the centre to the outside edge.
- Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
- Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
- Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
- Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
- Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

▶▶ Protecting CDs

NOTICE

Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples:

- Bubbled, wrinkled, labelled, and excessively thick CDs
 -  Bubbled/Wrinkled
 -  With Label/Sticker
 -  Using Printer Label Kit
 -  Sealed
 -  With Plastic Ring
- Damaged CDs
 -  Chipped/Cracked
 -  Warped
 -  Burrs
- Small CDs
 -  8-cm (3-inch) CD
- Poor quality CDs

▶▶ General Information on the Audio System ▶ Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 6th generation) launch in 2010
iPod nano (7th generation) launch in 2012
iPod touch (1st to 4th generation) launch in 2010
iPod touch (5th generation) launch in 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s ^{*1} /iPhone 5c ^{*1} / iPhone 6 ^{*1} /iPhone 6 Plus ^{*1} /iPhone 6s ^{*1} /iPhone 6s Plus ^{*1}

*1: Display audio system

■ USB Flash Drives

- Use a recommended USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV* formats may be unsupported.

☒ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

☒ USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

▶▶ General Information on the Audio System ▶ Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

Models with display audio system

Recommended Devices

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MP4 version)	Baseline Level 3 (MPEG4-AVC), Simple Level 5 (MPEG4)	
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	720 X 576 pixels	

Features

▶▶ General Information on the Audio System ▶ About Open Source Licences

Models with display audio system

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Android**.
4. Select **About device**.
5. Select **Legal information**.
6. Select **Open source licences**.

▶▶ About Open Source Licences

You can also go to step 4 when you:

- Swipe down from the top.
- ▶ Select  appears on the screen.
- Select , then select **Settings** on the **App** tab.

Features

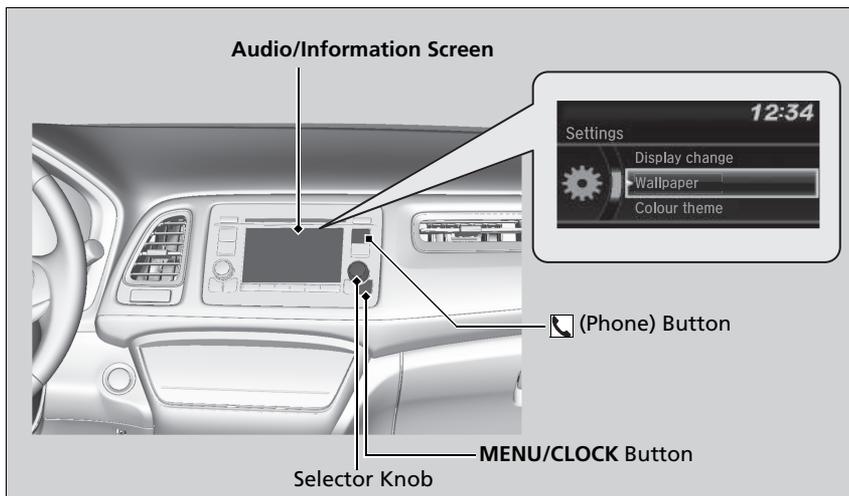
Customized Features

Models with colour audio system

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON , press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the  button, then select **Phone setup**.



▶ Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.

Continuously variable transmission models

- Shift to **P**.

Manual transmission models

- Set the parking brake.

▶ How to customize

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

To customize other features, select **Settings**, rotate , then press .

- ▶ **List of customizable options** P. 340

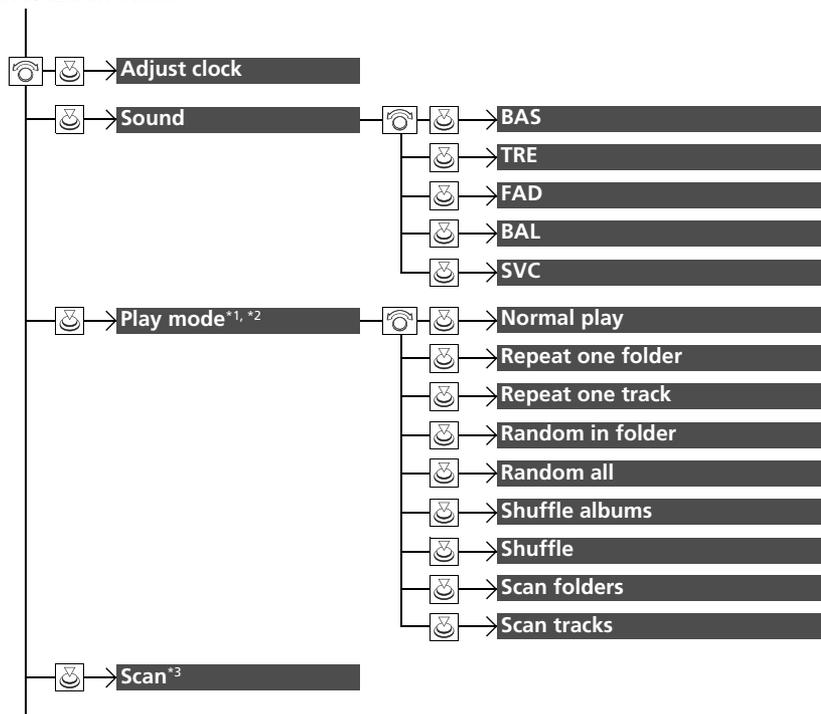
Features

Continued

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

■ Customization Flow

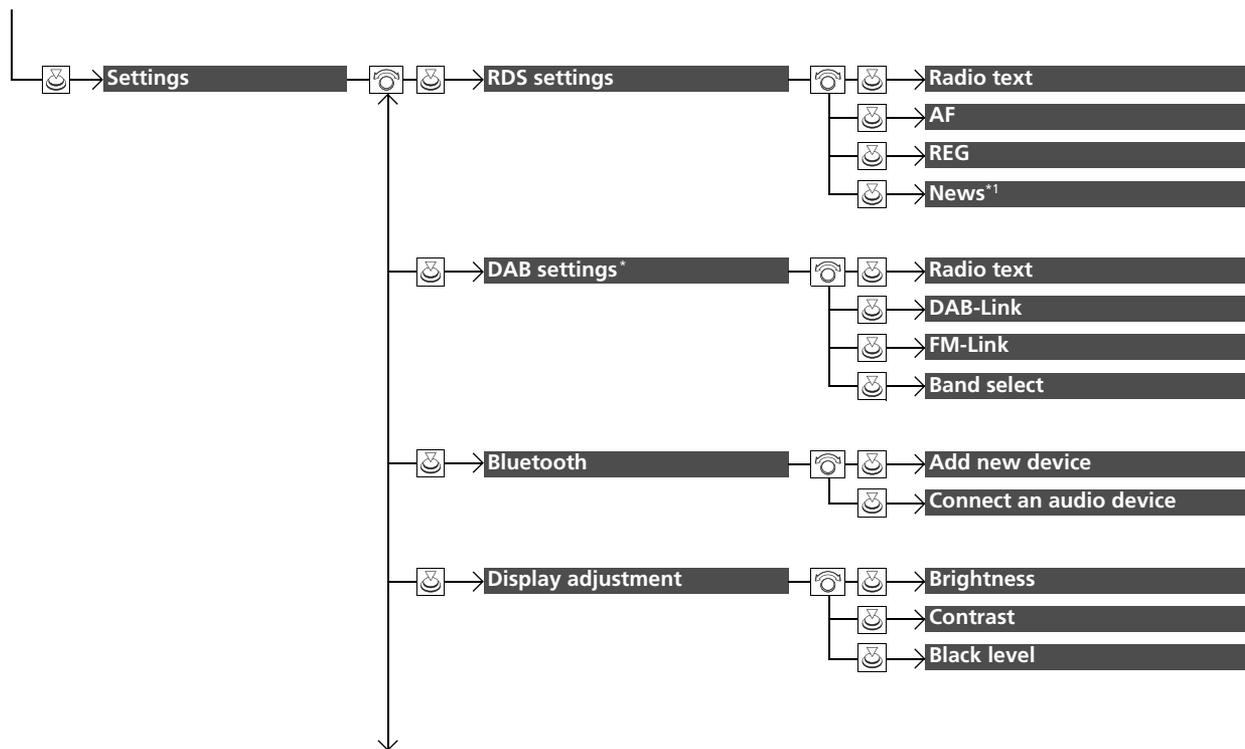
Press the MENU/CLOCK button.



*1: The items of play mode depend on audio modes.

*2: CD/iPod/USB mode

3: AM/FM/DAB mode



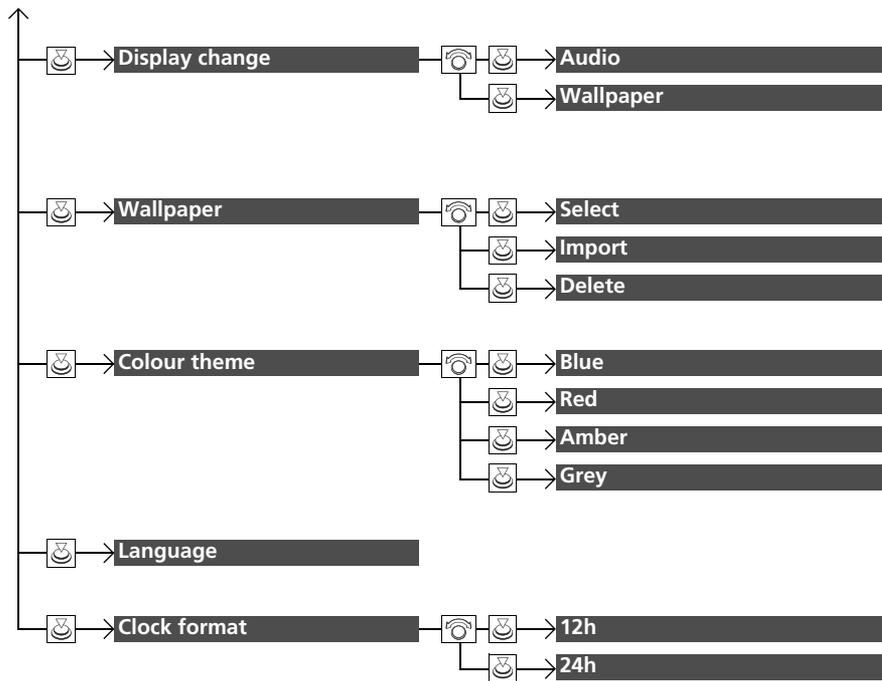
Features

1: Except AM/FM/DAB mode

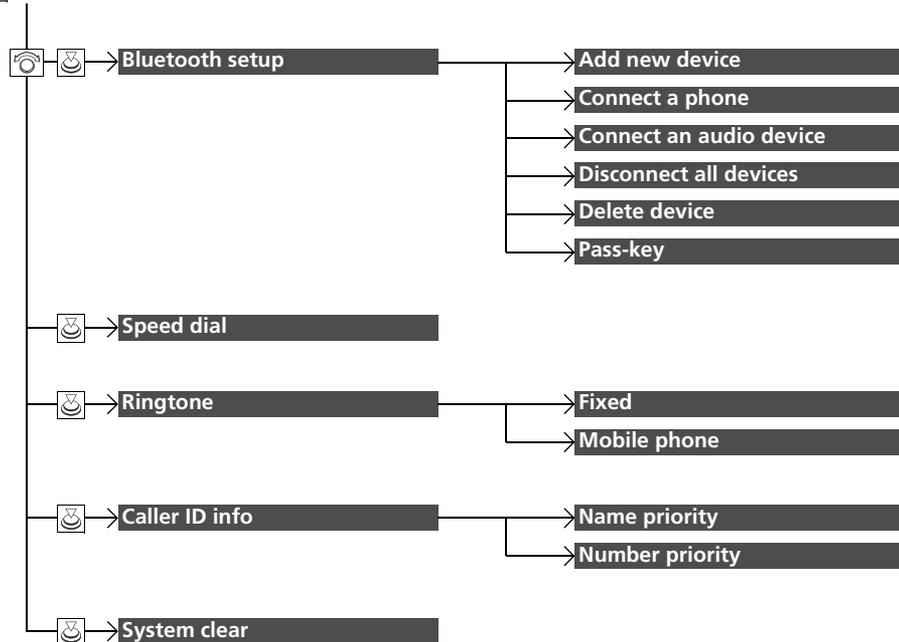
* Not available on all models

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

Features



Press the  button and rotate  to select **Phone setup**, then press .



Features

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust clock		Adjusts Clock. ▶ Clock P. 154	—
	BAS TRE FAD BAL SVC	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound. ▶ Adjusting the Sound P. 254	—

Features

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Play mode	Normal play		
	CD/USB mode		
	Repeat one folder		
	CD/iPod/USB mode		
	Repeat one track		
	CD/USB mode		
	Random in folder		
	CD/USB mode		
	Random all	Selects a play mode ▶ How to Select a Play Mode P. 270, 273, 276	—
	iPod mode		
Scan folders	Shuffle albums		
	iPod mode		
	Shuffle		
	CD/USB mode		
Scan tracks	Scan folders		
	CD/USB mode		
	Scan tracks	Selects the scan mode.	
	AM/FM/DAB* mode		
Scan		▶ Scan P. 263, 267	

* Not available on all models

Continued 341

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Settings	RDS settings	Radio text	Turns on and off the radio text information.	On/Off*1
		AF	Turns on and off Alternative Frequency (AF).	On*1/Off
		REG	Turns on and off Regional Programme (REG).	On*1/Off
		News Except AM/FM/DAB* mode	Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme.	On/Off*1
	DAB settings*	Radio text	Turns on and off the radio text information.	On/Off*1
		DAB-Link	Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.	On*1/Off
		FM-Link	Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band.	On*1/Off
		Band select	Selects specific bands to reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.	Both*1/BandIII/L-Band
	Bluetooth	Add new device	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone. ➡ Phone Setup P. 367	—
		Connect an audio device	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	—
	Display adjustment	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		Black level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—

*1:Default Setting

▶▶ Customized Features ▶▶

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Settings	Display change	Changes the display type.	Audio^{*1}/Wallpaper	
	Select	Changes the wallpaper type.	Clock^{*1}/Image 1/Image 2/ Image 3	
	Wallpaper	Import	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. ▶ Wallpaper Setup P. 252	—
		Delete	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	Image 1^{*1}/Image 2/Image 3
	Colour theme	Changes the background colour of the audio/ information screen.	Blue^{*1}/Red/Amber/Grey	
	Language	Changes the display language.	English^{*1} : See other selectable languages on the screen.	
	Clock format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12h^{*1}/24h	

*1:Default Setting

Features

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Phone setup	Add new device	Pairs a new phone to HFT. ☒ Phone Setup P. 367	—	
	Bluetooth setup	Connect a phone	Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFT. ☒ Phone Setup P. 367	—
		Connect an audio device	Connects a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	—
		Disconnect all devices	Disconnects a paired phone from HFT.	—
		Delete device	Deletes a paired phone.	—
		Pass-key	Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone.	—
	Speed dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ☒ Speed Dial P. 374	—	
	Ringtone	Selects the ring tone.	Fixed/Mobile phone *1	
	Caller ID info	Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID.	Name priority *1/ Number priority	
	System clear	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone setup group as default.	—	

*1:Default Setting

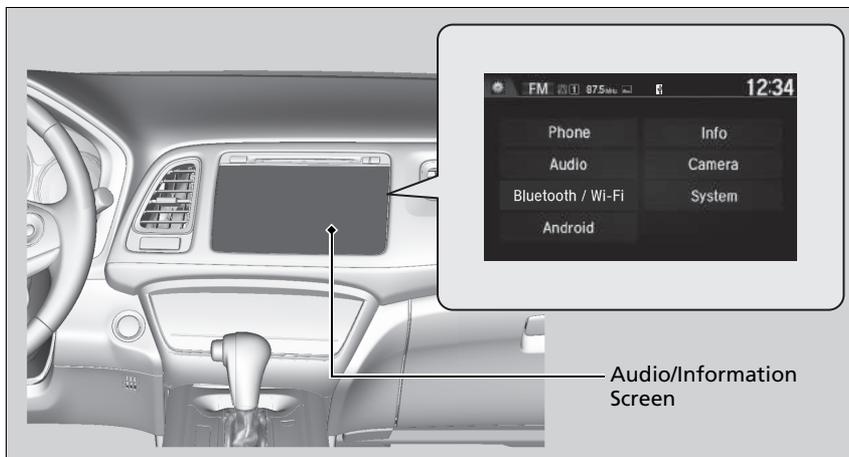
Customized Features

Models with display audio system

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

With the ignition switch in ON *1, select **Settings**, then select a setting item.



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Customized Features

When you customize settings, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to **P**.

To customize other features, select **Settings**.

➤ **List of customizable options** P. 350

If you press and hold the  (power) button when resetting the system, it may restore the customized value to its default value depending on the setting items.

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

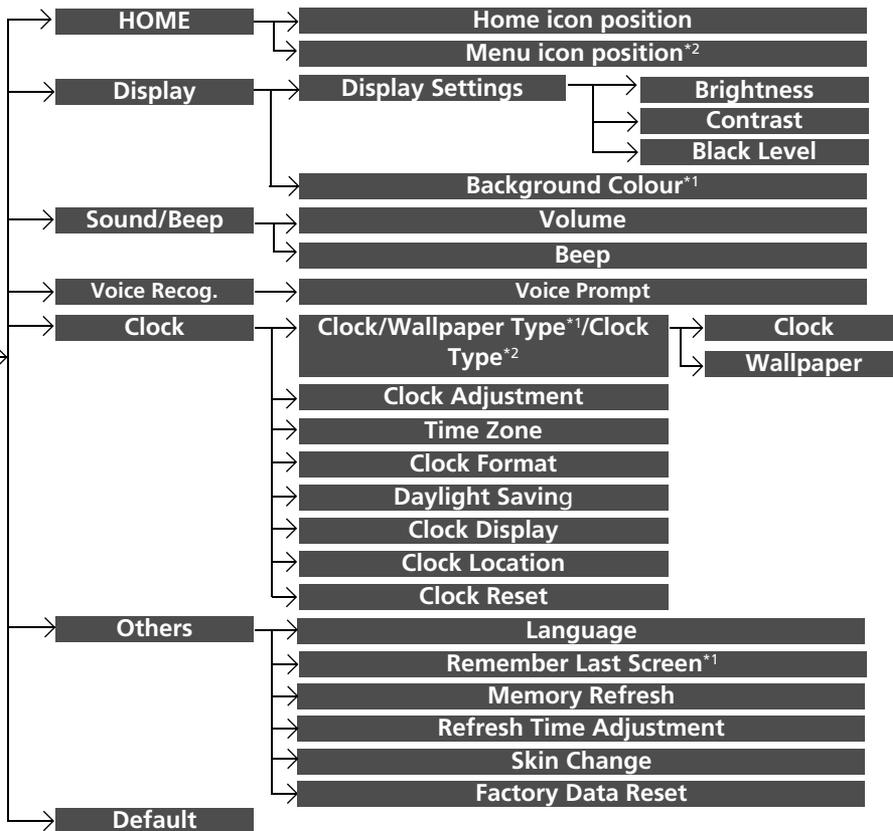
■ Customization flow

Select the  icon.

Select **Settings**.



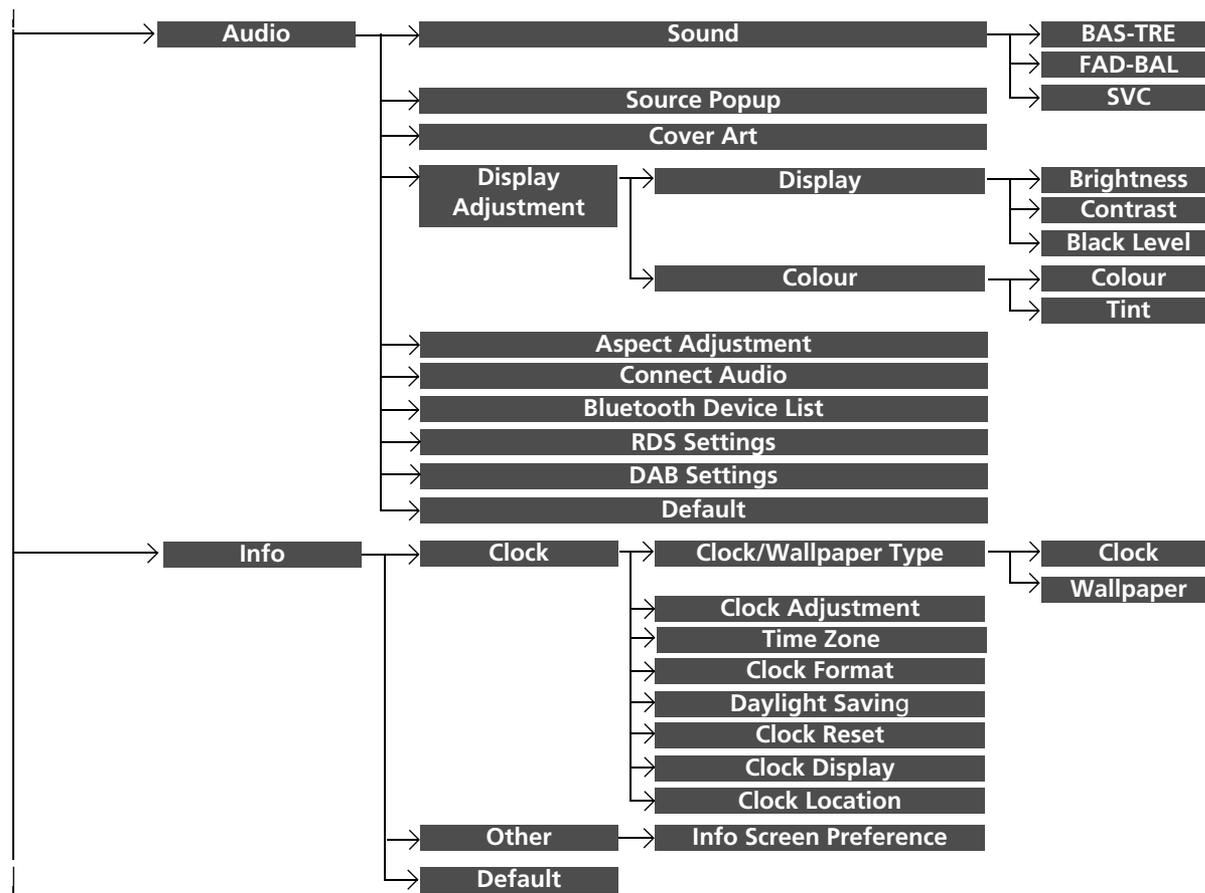
System



*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

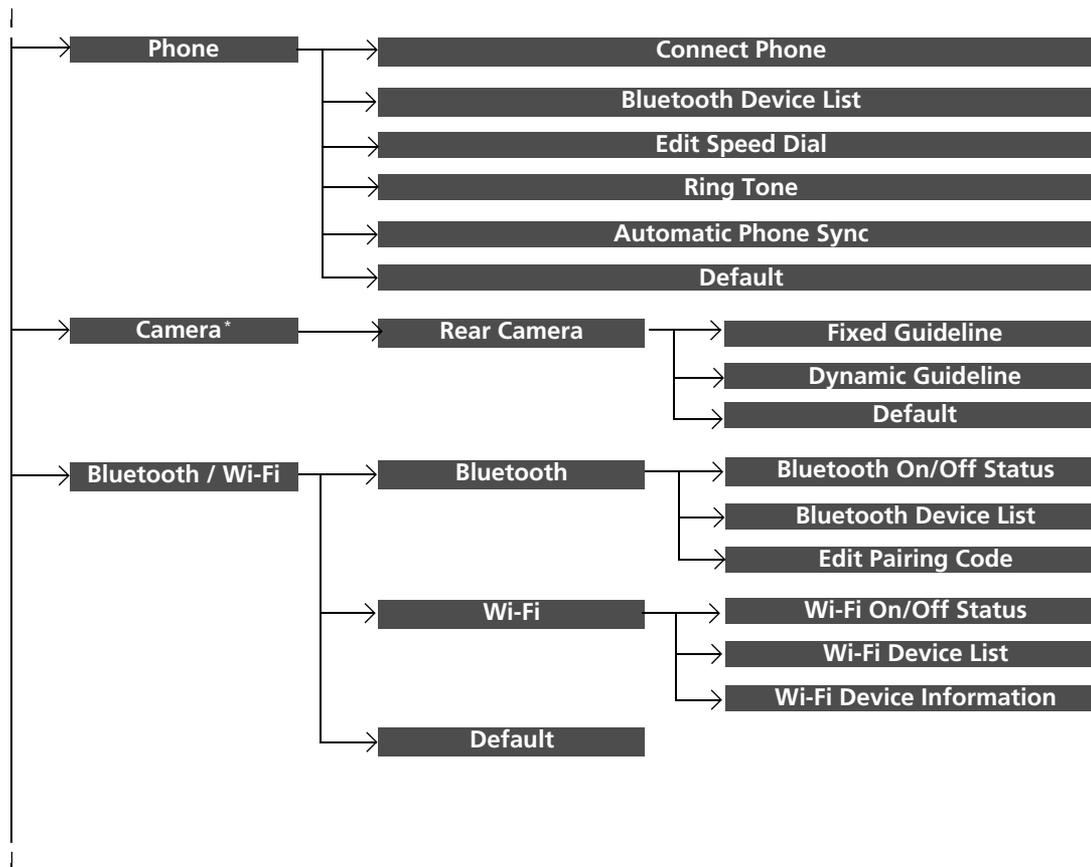
▶▶ Customized Features ▶▶

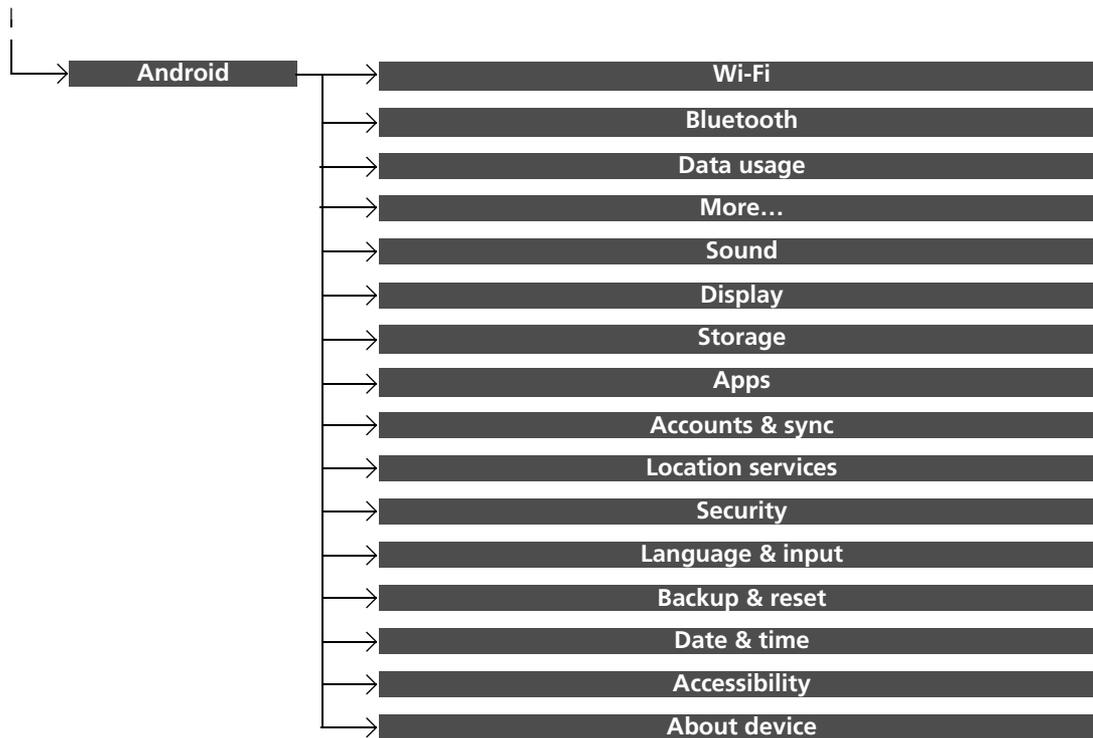


Features

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

Features





Features

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
HOME	Home icon position	Changes the home screen icon layout.	—
	Menu icon position ^{*3}		
Display	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
	Display Settings	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.
		Background Colour ^{*2}	Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen.
Sound/Beep	Volume	Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system. ➡ Refer to the Navigation System Manual	0~6 ^{*1} ~11
	Beep	Changes the beep volume.	Off/1/2 ^{*1} /3
Voice Recog.	Voice Prompt	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	On ^{*1} /Off

*1:Default Setting

*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings		
System	Clock	Clock	Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital^{*1}/ Small Digital/Off	
		Clock/ Wallpaper^{*2}/ Clock Type^{*3}	Wallpaper	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Changes the wallpaper type. Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. Deletes an image file for a wallpaper. 	Galaxy^{*1}/Metallic/ Blank
		Clock Adjustment	Adjusts clock. ▶ Adjusting the Clock P. 154	—	
		Time Zone	Changes the time zones.	WET/GMT^{*1}	
		Clock Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12H^{*1}/24H	
		Daylight Saving	Adjusts the clock automatically when a summer time change occurs.	On^{*1}/Off	
		Clock Display	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	On^{*1}/Off	
		Clock Location	Changes the clock display layout.	Upper right^{*1}/Upper left/Lower right/ Lower left	
	Clock Reset	Resets the clock settings to the factory default.	—		

*1: Default Setting

*2: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

*3: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	Language	Changes the display language.	English (United Kingdom)*1: See other selectable languages on the screen.	
	Remember Last Screen*2	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	On/Off*1	
	Others	Memory Refresh	Turns on the audio system automatically and restores the fragmentation of a memory when the ignition switch is LOCK 0 *3.	On*1/Off
		Refresh Time Adjustment	Sets the time for Memory Refresh .	00:00~02:00*1~23:59
		Skin Change	Changes the screen interface design.	—
	Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. ☑ Defaulting All the Settings P. 360	Yes/No	
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the System settings group as default.	Yes/No	
Audio	Sound	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ☑ Adjusting the Sound P. 296	-6 ~ 0*1 ~ +6 (BASS and TREBLE), RR9~0*1~FR9 (FADER), L9~0*1~R9 (BALANCE), Off/Low/Mid*1/High (Speed Volume Compensation)	

*1:Default Setting

*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

*3:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Customized Features ▶▶

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Audio	Source Popup	Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when Audio is selected on the home screen.	On/Off *1	
	Cover Art CD, iPod, USB mode	Turns the cover art display on and off.	On *1/ Off	
	Display Adjustment USB, HDMI™ mode	Brightness	See System on P. 350	—
		Contrast		
		Black Level		
		Colour		
	Colour	Tint	Changes the tint of the audio/information screen.	—
		Aspect Adjustment USB, HDMI™ mode	Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio from Original (only USB), Normal , Full and Zoom .	Original (only USB)/ Normal/Full *1/ Zoom
	Connect Audio Bluetooth® Audio mode	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	—	
	Bluetooth Device List Bluetooth® Audio mode	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. ☑ Phone Setup P. 388	—	

*1:Default Setting

Continued 353

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Audio	TA-Information	Turns on and off the traffic information.	On/Off^{*1}	
	News	Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme.	On/Off^{*1}	
	RDS Settings	REG	Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.	On^{*1}/Off
	AF	Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions.	On^{*1}/Off	
	DAB Settings	DAB-DAB Link	Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.	On^{*1}/Off
	DAB-FM Link	Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band.	On^{*1}/Off	
	Band select	Selects specific bands to reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.	BOTH^{*1}/BANDIII/L-BAND	
Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Audio settings group as default.	Yes/No	

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings																
Info	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Clock/ Wallpaper Type</td> <td>Clock Wallpaper</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Clock Adjustment</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Time Zone</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Clock Format</td> <td>See System on P. 351</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Daylight Saving</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Clock Reset</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Clock Display</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Clock Location</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Clock/ Wallpaper Type	Clock Wallpaper	Clock Adjustment		Time Zone		Clock Format	See System on P. 351	Daylight Saving		Clock Reset		Clock Display		Clock Location			
	Clock/ Wallpaper Type	Clock Wallpaper																	
	Clock Adjustment																		
	Time Zone																		
	Clock Format	See System on P. 351																	
	Daylight Saving																		
	Clock Reset																		
	Clock Display																		
	Clock Location																		
Other	Info Screen Preference	Changes the information screen type.	Info Top/Info Menu/ Off*1																
Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Info settings group as default.	Yes/No																

*1:Default Setting

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone	Connect Phone	Pairs a new phone to HFT, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ☒ Phone Setup P. 388	—
	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. ☒ Phone Setup P. 388	—
	Edit Speed Dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ☒ Speed Dial P. 394	—
	Ring Tone	Selects the ring tone.	Fixed/Mobile phone *1
	Automatic Phone Sync	Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	On/Off
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone settings group as default.	Yes/No

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Camera*	Fixed Guideline	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. ▶ Multi-View Rear Camera * P. 495	On*/Off
	Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the dynamic guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. ▶ Multi-View Rear Camera * P. 495	On*/Off
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Rear Camera setting group as default.	Yes/No
Bluetooth / Wi-Fi	Bluetooth On/Off Status	Selects to display the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status.	On*/Off
	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone, or creates a security PIN. ▶ Phone Setup P. 388	—
	Edit Pairing Code	Edits a pairing code. ▶ To change the pairing code setting P. 389	Random/Fixed*1
	Wi-Fi On/Off Status	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	On*/Off
Wi-Fi	Wi-Fi Device List	Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	—
	Wi-Fi Device Information	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the device.	—
Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Bluetooth / Wi-Fi settings group as default.	Yes/No

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Customized Features ▶

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Android	Wi-Fi	Shows the status of the Wi-Fi connection (On/Off) and adds new Wi-Fi networks.	On*1/Off
	Bluetooth	Shows the status of the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® connection (On/Off) and adds new <i>Bluetooth</i> ® devices.	On*1/Off
	Data usage	Shows the data usage of the system.	—
	More...	Adds VPN (Virtual Private Network).	—
	Sound	Adjusts the alarm volume and selects the favourite sound.	—
	Display	Sets up the wallpaper and changes the font size.	—
	Storage	Shows the storage capacity of the system and the USB capacity.	—
	Apps	Shows the status of the installed apps.	—
	Accounts & sync	Adds the additional account information.	—
	Location services	Turn on/off the GPS setting before using apps.	—
	Security	Shows the security status of the system.	—
	Language & input	Changes the display language of the system and the input keyboard.	—
	Backup & reset	Resets the system.	—
Date & time	Changes the date, the time zones, and the clock format.	—	

*1:Default Setting

▶▶ Customized Features ▶▶

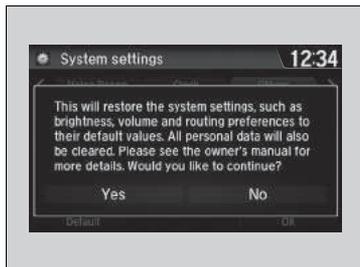
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Android	Accessibility	Changes the display font of the system and the voice guidance of the password.	—
	About device	Shows the status of the system, the Android version, the legal information, and so on.	—

Features

▶▶ Customized Features ▶ Defaulting All the Settings

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
 - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
 - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK**.
 - ▶ After selecting **OK**, the system will reboot.

▶▶ Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

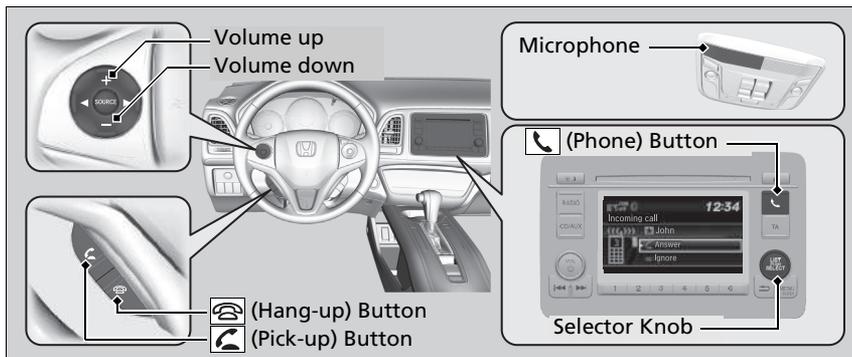
Hands-Free Telephone System

Models with colour audio system

The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Using HFT

HFT Buttons



(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up) button: Press to end a call.

(Phone) button: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen.

LIST/SELECT (Selector): Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press .

Hands-Free Telephone System

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

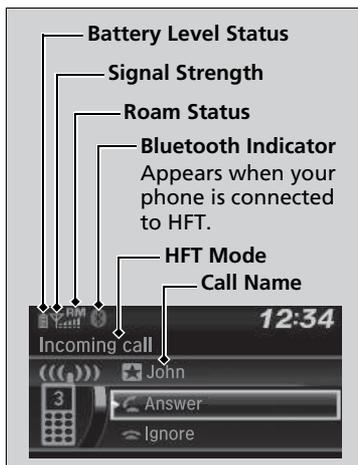
Speed Dial P. 374

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ Using HFT

HFT Status Display



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

See the following URLs for Declaration of conformity (DoC) of Hands Free Telephone:
<http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/>

HFT Status Display

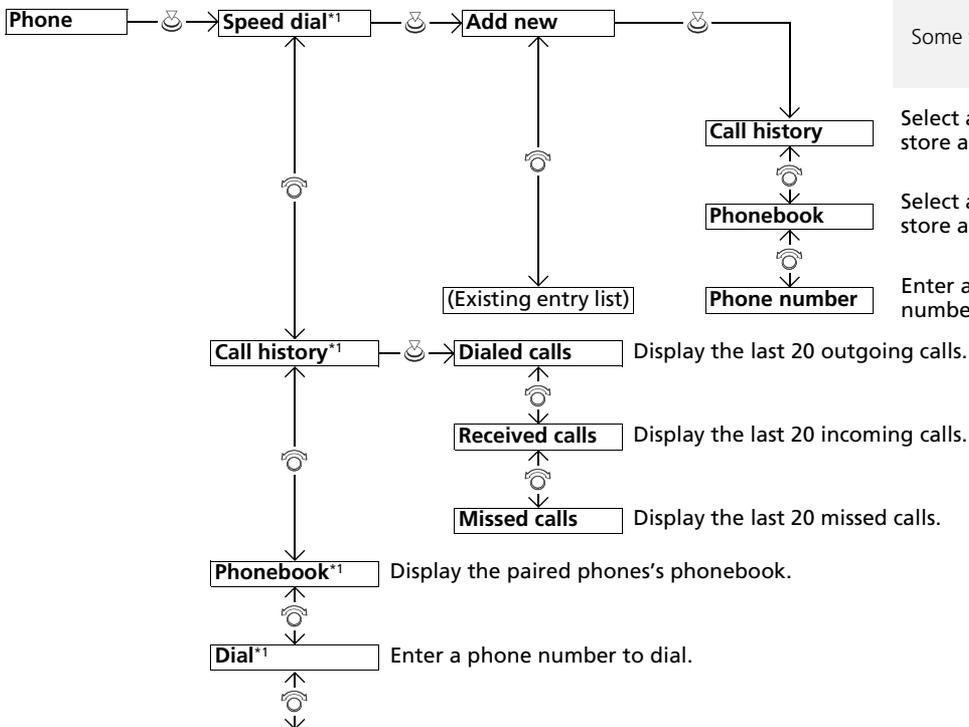
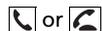
The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 335

HFT Menu

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II** to use HFT.



HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.

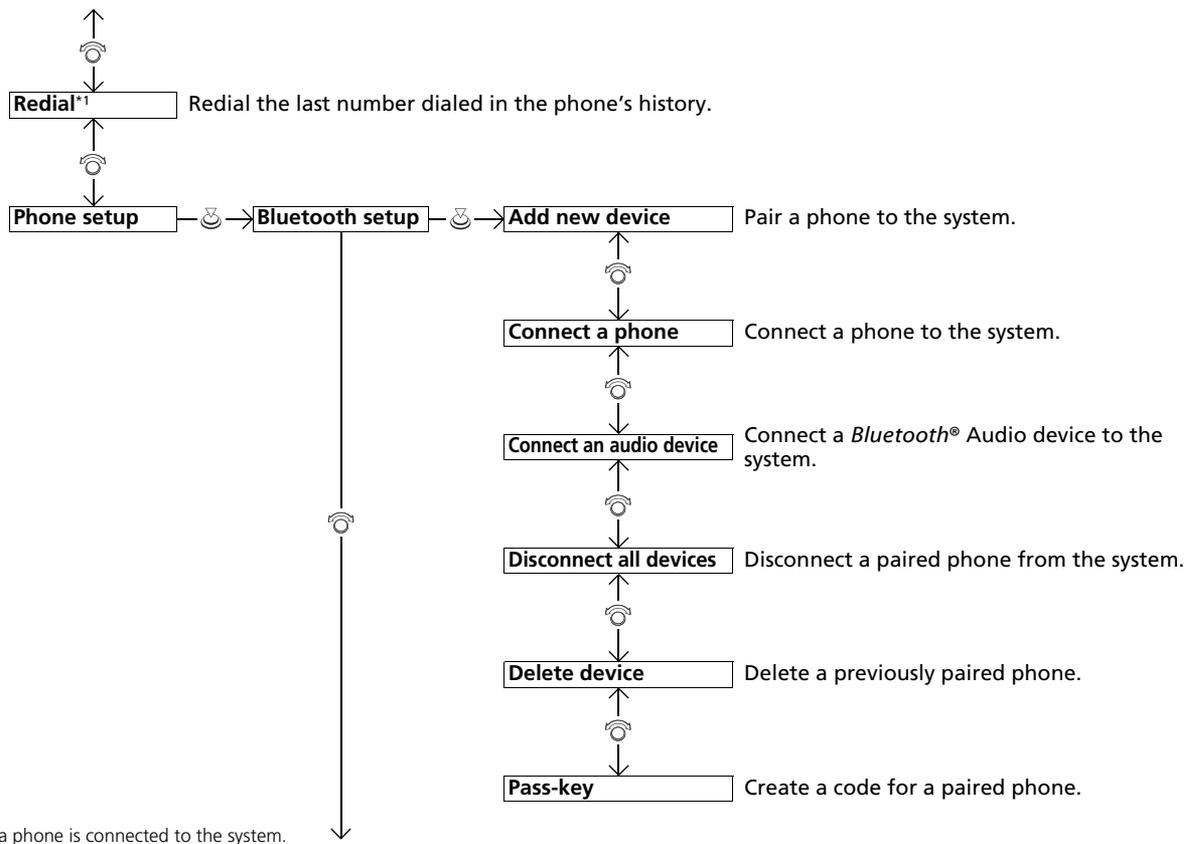
Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

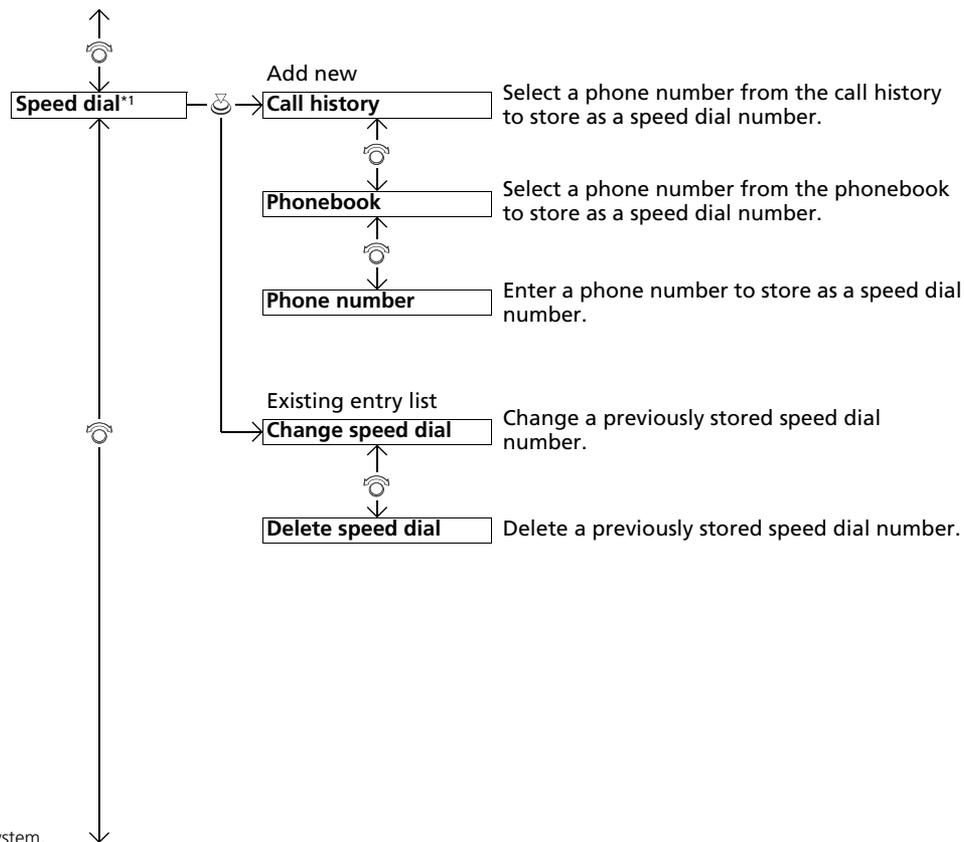
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus



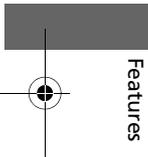
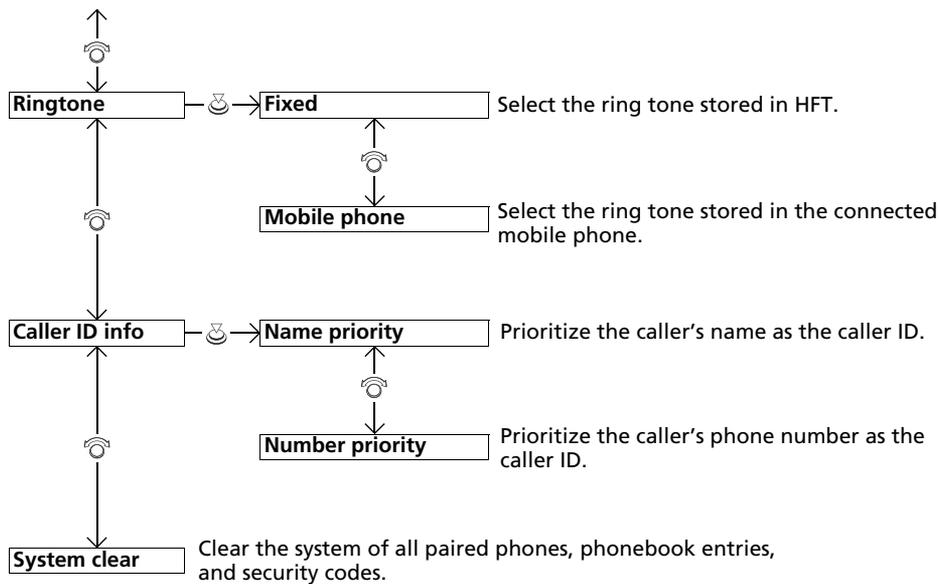
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.



Features

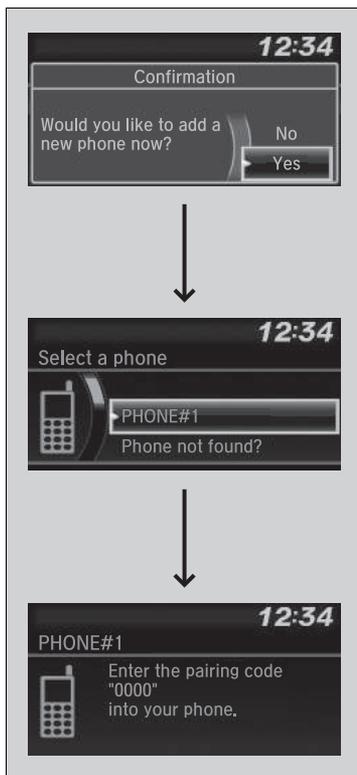
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus



Features

Phone Setup



■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
 - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*[®] device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
 - ▶ If your phone doesn't appear, select **Phone not found?** and search for *Bluetooth*[®] devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and returns to idle.

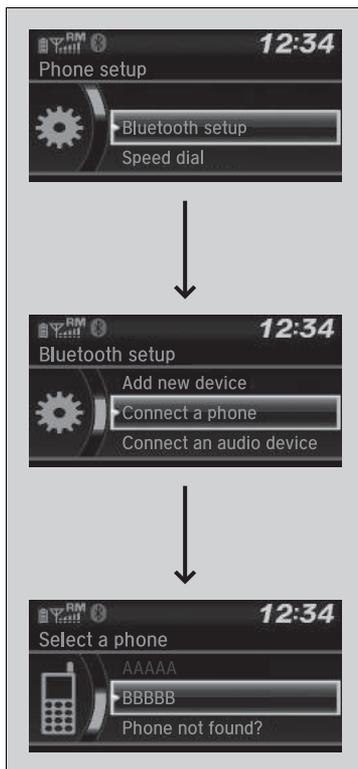
Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

- : The phone can be used with HFT.
- : The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*[®] Audio.

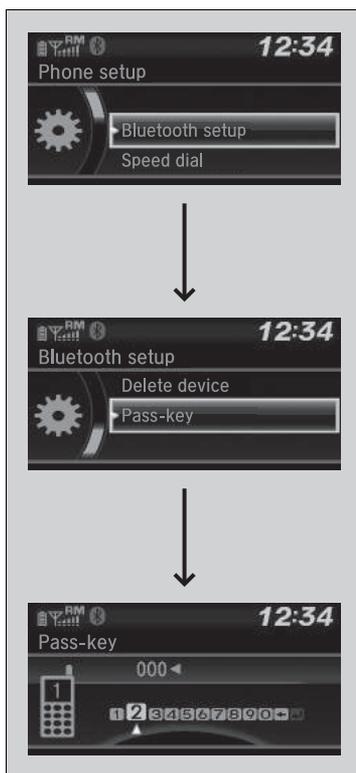
Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus



■ To Change the currently paired phone

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Connect a phone**, then press .
 - ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .
 - ▶ The system disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.

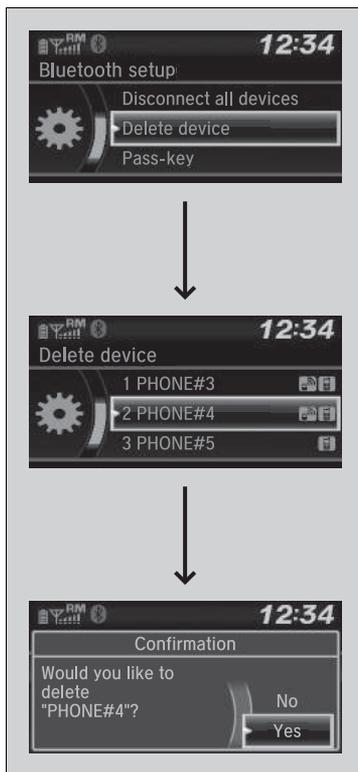


■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Pass-key**, then press .
5. Input a new pairing code, then press .

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus



■ To delete a paired phone

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete device**, then press .
▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

Features

Ring Tone

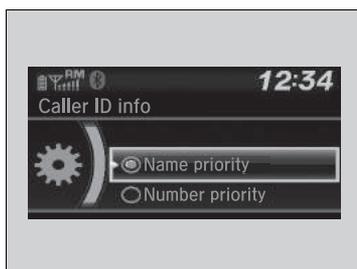
You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Ringtone**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Fixed** or **Mobile phone**, then press .

Caller's ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Caller ID info**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

Ring Tone

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.
Mobile phone: The ring tone stored in the connected mobile phone sounds from the speakers.

Caller's ID Information

Name priority: A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.
Number priority: A caller's phone number is displayed.

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus

To Clear the System

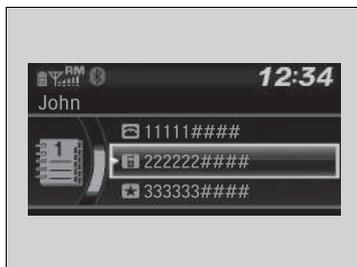
Pairing codes, paired phones, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **System clear**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. A notification appears on the screen. Press .

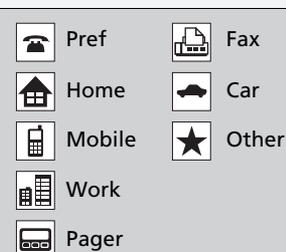
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.



Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

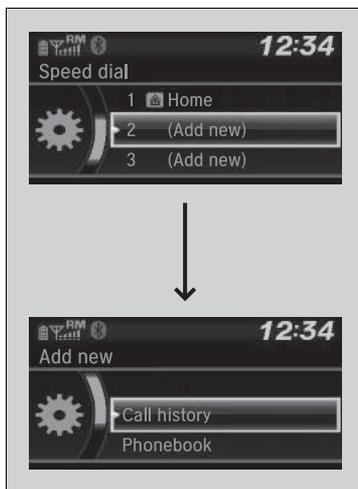
The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus

■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Add new**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .
 - From **Call history**:
 - ▶ Select a number from the call history.
 - From **Phonebook**:
 - ▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.
 - From **Phone number**:
 - ▶ Input the number manually.

▶▶ Speed Dial

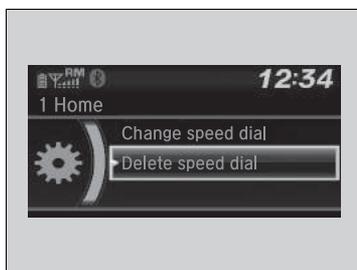
You can use the audio preset buttons during a call to store a speed dial number:

1. Press and hold the desired audio preset button during a call.
2. The contact information for the active call will be stored for the corresponding speed dial.



■ To edit a speed dial

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Change speed dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .



■ To delete a speed dial number

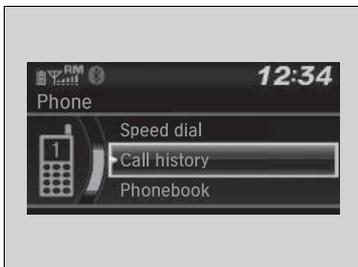
1. Press the button or the button.
 2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
 3. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
 4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
 5. Rotate to select **Delete speed dial**, then press .
- ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus

■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

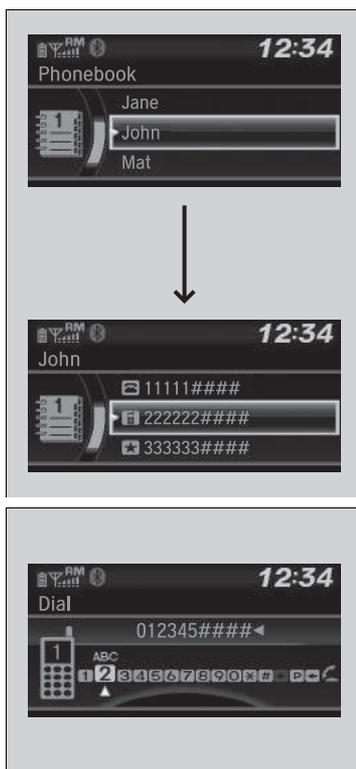


Features

▶▶ Making a Call

The maximum range between your phone and vehicles is 10 metres (30 feet).

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to the system.

1. Press the button or the button.
 2. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
 3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Rotate to select the initial, then press .
 4. Rotate to select a name, then press .
 5. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the button or the button.
 2. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
 3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
 4. Rotate to select , then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶ To make a call using the imported phonebook

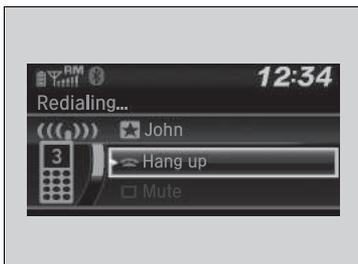
This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving.

▶▶ To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving.

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus



■ To make a call using redial

1. Press the button or the button.
 2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **Dialed calls**, **Received calls**, and **Missed calls**.

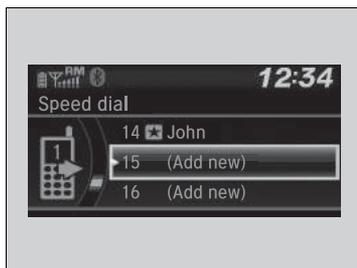
1. Press the button or the button.
 2. Rotate to select **Call history**, then press .
 3. Rotate to select **Dialed calls**, **Received calls**, or **Missed calls**, then press .
 4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶ To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.

▶▶ To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.



■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Press the  button or the  button.
 2. Rotate  to select **Speed dial**, then press .
 3. Rotate  to select a number, then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

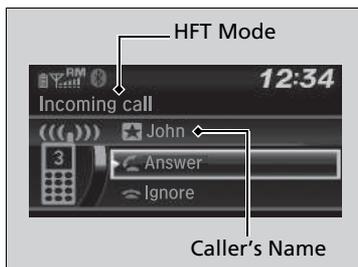
☒ To make a call using a speed dial entry

On the **Phone** screen, the first six speed dials on the list can be directly selected by pressing the corresponding audio preset buttons (1-6).

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus

Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons. Rotate  to select the icon, then press .

■ Options During a Call

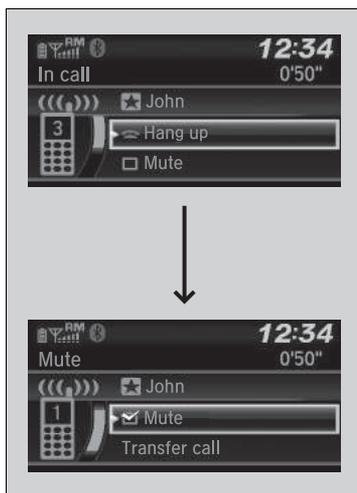
The following options are available during a call.

Swap call: Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Transfer call: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Dial tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



1. To view the available options, press the button.
2. Rotate to select the option, then press .
▶ The check box is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

☒ Options During a Call

Dial tones: Available on some phones.

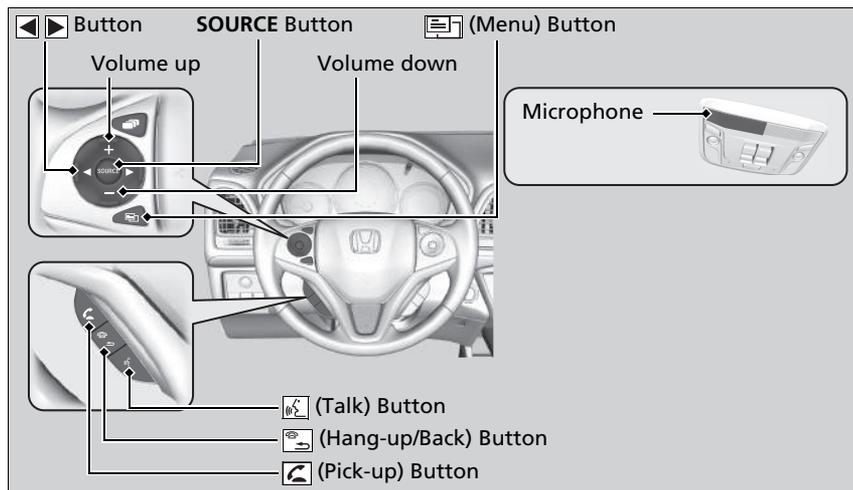
Hands-Free Telephone System

Models with display audio system

The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Using HFT

HFT Buttons



Features

Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 345

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

Up to five speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

➤ **Speed Dial** P. 394

Up to five call histories can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone screen, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

 **(Talk) button:** Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

 **(Menu) button:** Press to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Redial** on the phone screen.

 **button:** Press to select an item displayed on the phone screen.

SOURCE button: Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone screen.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Phone** to switch the display to the phone screen.
3. Select the  icon.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

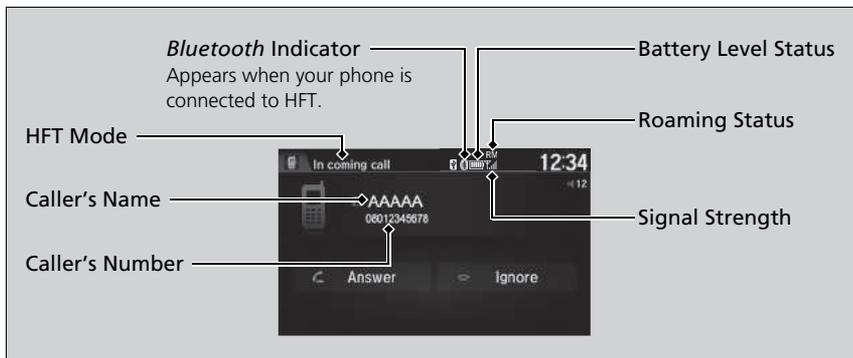
An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ Using HFT

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 394

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 345

HFT Menu

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II***1 to use the system.

■ Phone settings screen

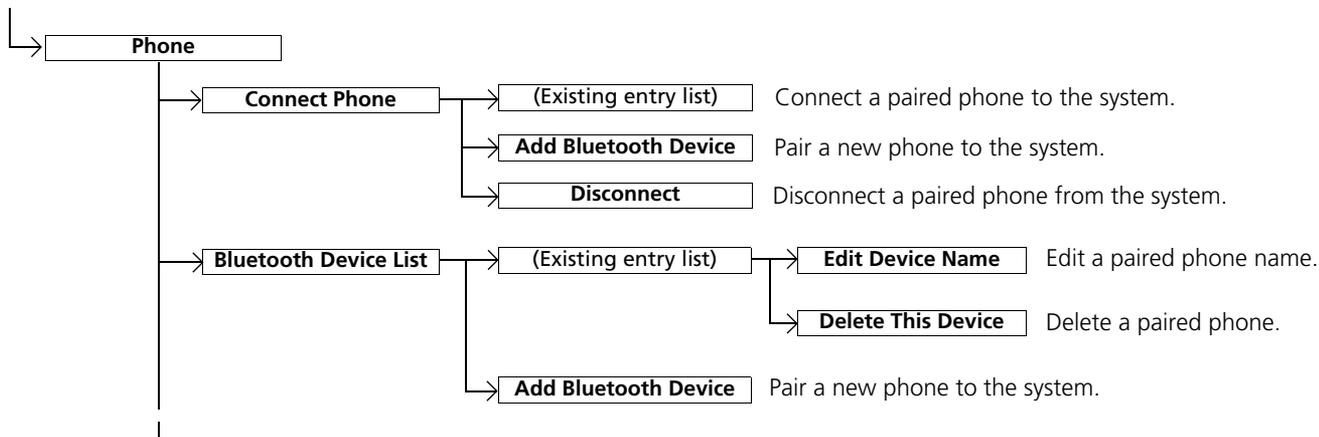


1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

☒ HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

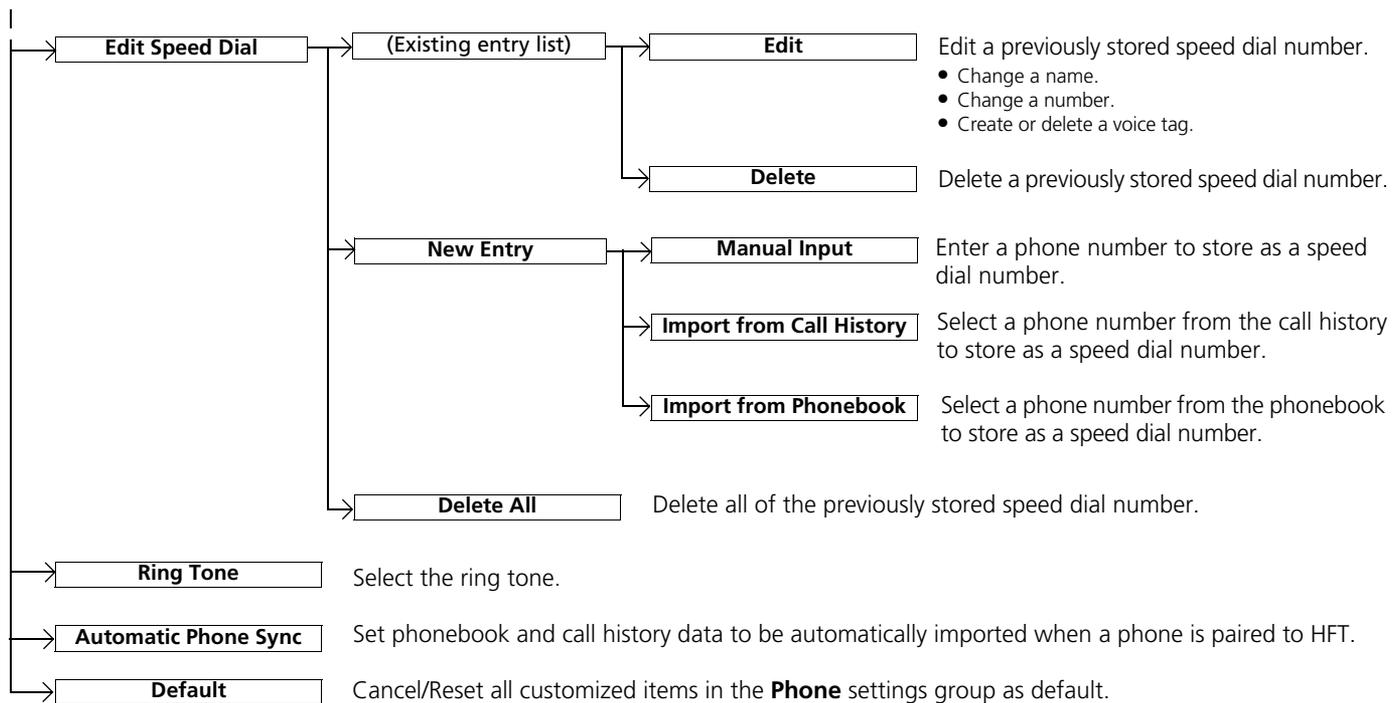
Some functions are limited while driving.



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

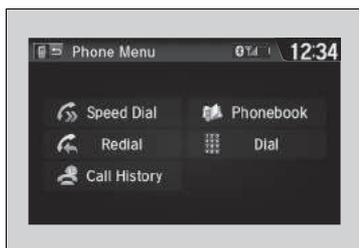
Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus

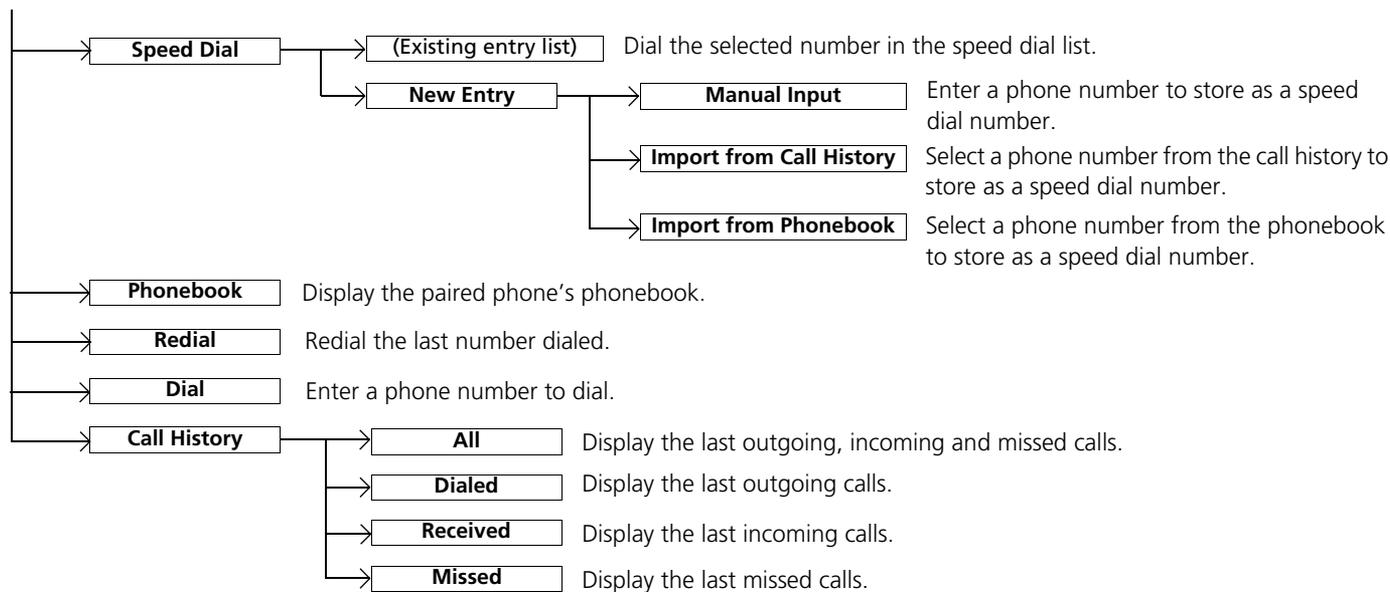


Features

■ Phone Menu screen



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select the  icon.



Features

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus

Phone Setup



■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is search or discoverable mode, then select **Continue**.
 - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
4. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
 - ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
 - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone not Found** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, search for **Honda HFT**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.

▶▶ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and returns to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

: The phone can be used with HFT.

: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.



■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
 - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 385
2. Select **Connect Phone**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
 - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.

■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
5. Select **Edit Pairing Code**.
6. Select **Random** or **Fixed**.

▶▶ To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Connect Phone** screen.

▶▶ To change the pairing code setting

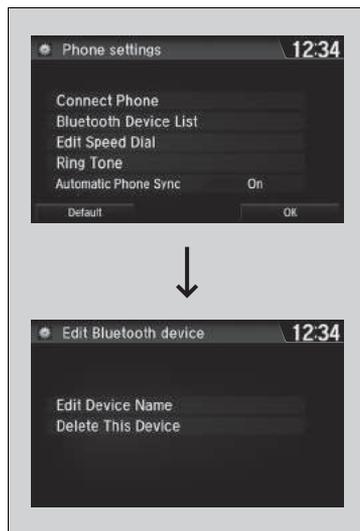
The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.

Continued

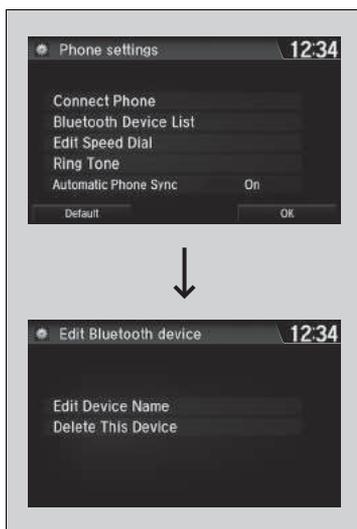
▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus



■ To edit an already-paired phone name

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 385
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a paired phone you want to edit.
4. Select **Edit Device Name**.
5. Edit the name and select **OK**.

Features



■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 385
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete This Device**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus

Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



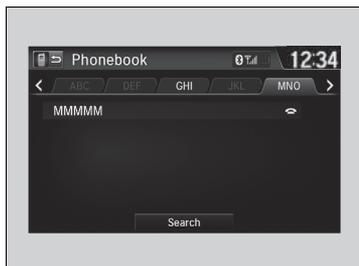
1. Go to the phone settings screen.
➤ **Phone settings screen** P. 385
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile phone**.

Ring Tone

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.
Mobile phone: For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.

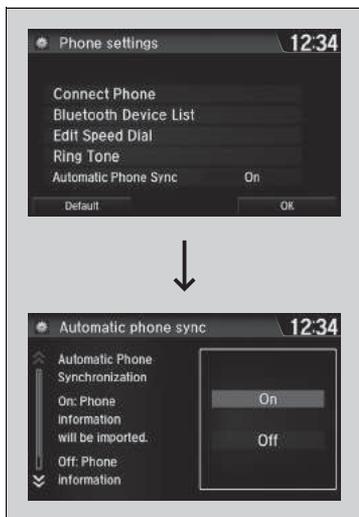
Features

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History



When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.



Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
 ▶ Phone settings screen P. 385
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.

3. Select **On** or **Off**.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus

Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

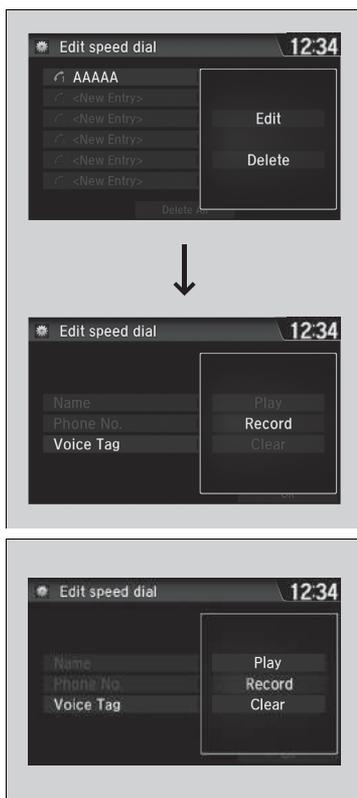


To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
 ▶ **Phone Menu** screen P. 387
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select **New Entry**.
4. Select a place to choose a number.
 - From **Import from Call History**:
 - ▶ Select a number from the call history.
 - From **Manual Input**:
 - ▶ Input the number manually.
 - From **Import from Phonebook**:
 - ▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.
5. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.
6. Select **Record** to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.
 - ▶ Using the  button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.



■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 385
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record** to store the voice tag.
6. Using the  button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

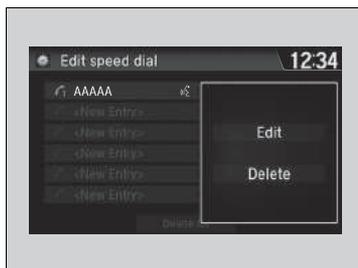
■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 385
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

☒ Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.
For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus



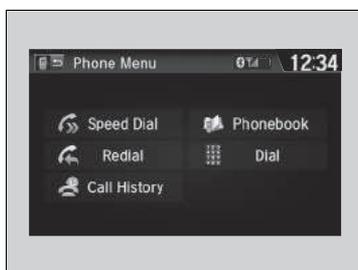
■ To edit a speed dial

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
▶ Phone settings screen P. 385
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

■ To delete a speed dial

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
▶ Phone settings screen P. 385
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

■ Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

▶▶ Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens. Press the  button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



■ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 387
2. Select **Phonebook**.
3. Select a name.
▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering letters.
4. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using a phone number**

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 387
2. Select **Dial**.
3. Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Done**.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

☒ To make a call using the imported phonebook

You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 394

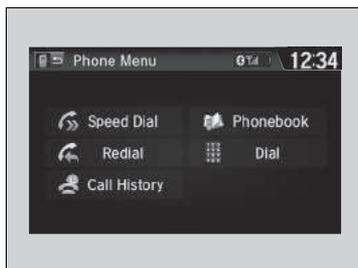
☒ To make a call using a phone number

You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 394

Continued

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ HFT Menus

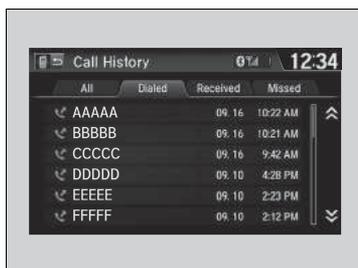


■ To make a call using redial

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 387
2. Select **Redial**.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶ To make a call using redial

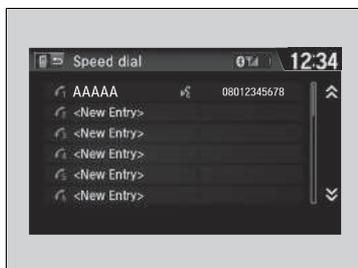
Press and hold the  button to redial the last number dialed.

■ To make a call using the Call History
Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 387
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.
4. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶ To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls.
(Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)



■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 387
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

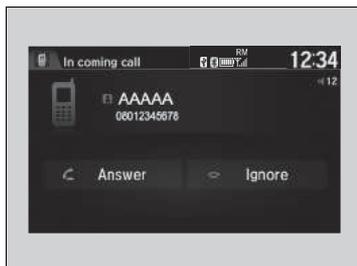
▶▶ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 394

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
Press the  button and follow the prompts.

Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Transfer: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.

▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

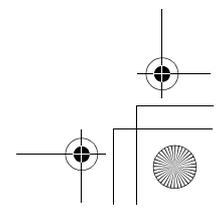
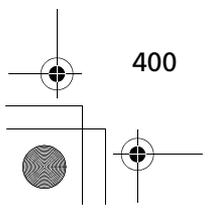
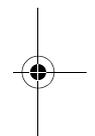
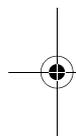
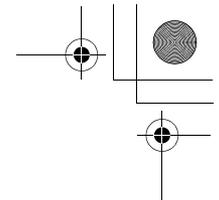
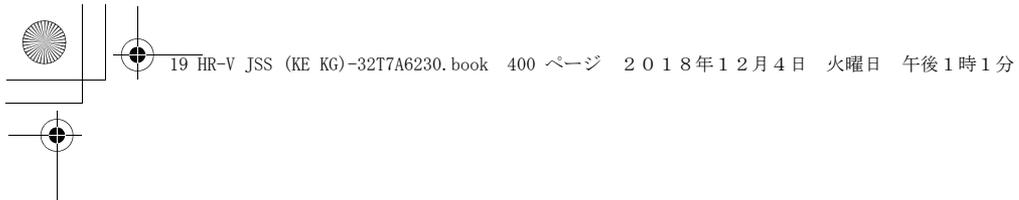
Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons.

Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.



Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving	402	Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	447	City-Brake Active system.....	483
Towing a Trailer	406	Forward Collision Warning*.....	454	Emergency Stop Signal.....	488
Off-road Guidelines	411	Lane Departure Warning*.....	458	Parking Your Vehicle	
When Driving		Traffic Sign Recognition System*.....	462	When Stopped.....	489
Starting the Engine.....	413, 416	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System.....	469	Parking Sensor System*.....	491
Precautions While Driving.....	419	Agile Handling Assist*.....	471	Multi-View Rear Camera*	
Continuously Variable Transmission*.....	420	Deflation Warning System.....	472	About Your Multi-View Rear Camera...495	
Shifting.....	421, 423, 428	Adjusting Headlight Distribution.....	474	Refueling	
ECON Mode.....	431	Braking		Fuel Information.....	497, 498
Auto Idle Stop*.....	432, 436	Brake System.....	475	How to Refuel.....	499, 500
Cruise Control.....	440	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	481	Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions	502
Adjustable Speed Limiter.....	443	Brake Assist System.....	482	Turbo Engine Vehicle*	503

* Not available on all models

Before Driving

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
 - ▶ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 569
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Driving

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
 - 📌 **Load Limit** P. 405
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
 - ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat*.
 - ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
 - ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
 - 📌 **Adjusting the Seats** P. 206
 - 📌 **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 209
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
 - ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - 📌 **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 203
 - 📌 **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 202

* Not available on all models

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

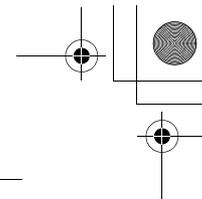
Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

📌 **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 191

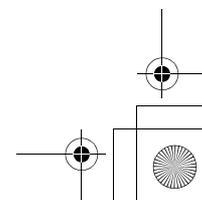
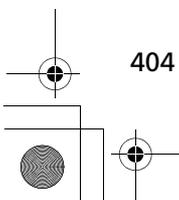
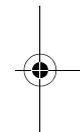
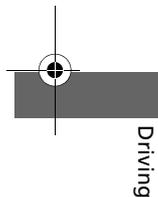
Models with LED type headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vehicle angle of the headlights.



▶▶ Before Driving ▶ Driving Preparation

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
 - ▶ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 46
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - ▶ **Indicators** P. 92



Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 650, 653, 656

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 650, 653, 656

Load Limit

⚠ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

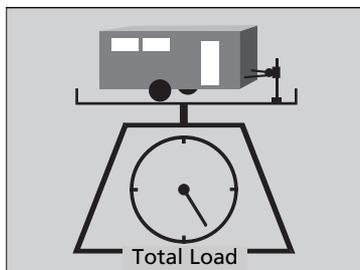
Driving

Towing a Trailer

Towing Preparation

Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it.

Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

Driving

Towing Load Limits

WARNING

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and the trailer nose load.

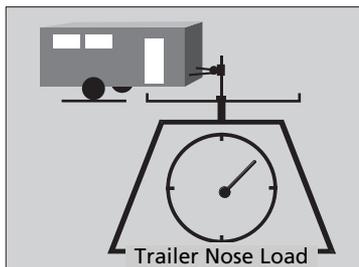
Break-in Period

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km (625 miles).

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle and trailer weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres of elevation.

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and specified load limit.

Specifications P. 652, 655, 658



■ Trailer nose load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 70 kg (154 lbs). This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 700 kg (1,543 lbs), the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load towards the front of the trailer and 40% towards the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

Driving

Continued



▶▶ Towing a Trailer ▶ Towing Preparation

■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

■ Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

■ Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

■ Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

▶▶ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment. Improper installation and setup can affect the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

Driving Safely with a Trailer

Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
 - ▣ **Towing Load Limits** P. 406
- Securely attach the towbar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressures of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

- Turn off the Auto Idle Stop system using the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button. The trailer weight can affect your vehicle's brake effectiveness if Auto Idle Stop is activated on a hill while towing a trailer.

Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.

Continuously variable transmission models

- Use the **[D]** position when towing a trailer on level roads.

Driving Safely with a Trailer

Operating speed when towing a trailer must not exceed 100 km/h (62 mph).

Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

We recommend you drive uphill of less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

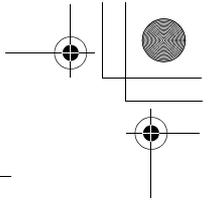
Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

Towing Speeds and Gears

When towing a fixed-sided trailer (e.g., camper), do not exceed 88 km/h (55 mph). At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling.

Continued



▶▶ Towing a Trailer ▶ Driving Safely with a Trailer

■ Turning and Braking

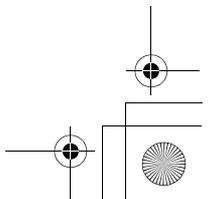
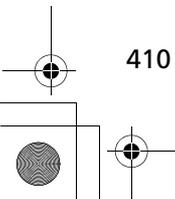
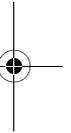
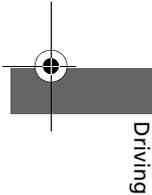
- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Closely watch your high temperature indicator. If the indicator remains on, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

Continuously variable transmission models

- Shift to the **[S]** position if the transmission shifts frequently.



Off-road Guidelines

General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement, however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store luggage properly and do not exceed your luggage load limits.
 ▣ **Load Limit** P. 405
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

Off-road Guidelines

⚠ WARNING

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off pavement can cause an accident or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

▣ **Precautions While Driving** P. 419

Driving

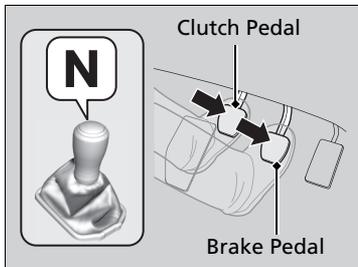
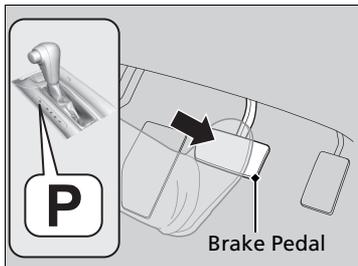
Avoiding Trouble

- **Check Out Your Vehicle** before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tyres, and check the tyre pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognize these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- **Accelerating and Braking** should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- **Avoiding Obstacles and Debris** in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increasing your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight up or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- **Crossing a Stream** - Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- **If You Get Stuck**, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tyres as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

When Driving

Models without keyless access system

Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
 - ▶ The electric parking brake indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in **N**. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
 - ▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres (8,000 feet).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

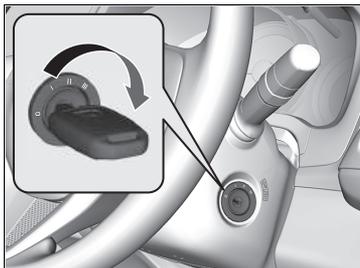
If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

▶ **Immobilizer System** P. 171

Continued

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Starting the Engine



All models

3. Turn the ignition switch to START  without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Diesel models

▶ If the glow plugs indicator comes on, keep the clutch pedal fully depressed and wait until the indicator goes off. The engine starts automatically.

▶▶ Starting the Engine

Do not hold the key in START  for more than 10 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

Diesel models

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, the engine peak power may be restricted at starting the engine. This is to help the fuel flow for the normal engine operation.

Diesel models

For proper lubrication, the engine must not be run above fast idle speed until the low oil pressure indicator goes off. Avoid harsh acceleration or labouring the engine before the normal operating temperature has been reached.

Starting to Drive

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the transmission into **[D]**. Select **[R]** when reversing.
2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
 - ▶ Make sure the electric parking brake indicator goes off.

▶ **Parking Brake** P. 475

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Continuously variable transmission models

Put the transmission into **[D]**, **[S]**, or **[L]*** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

* Not available on all models

Starting the Engine

Diesel models

When the engine malfunctions or stalls due to insufficient fuel, move the vehicle to a safe place immediately and refuel 10 Litres (2.2 Imp gal) or more. When fuel runs out, air enters the fuel system. This may cause slow starting of the engine. If the engine does not start on the first try, try again a few times. If the engine still does not start, ask a dealer.

Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Manual transmission models

If the engine stalls, fully depress the clutch pedal within three seconds. The engine may automatically restart under certain conditions. Otherwise, follow the standard procedure.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

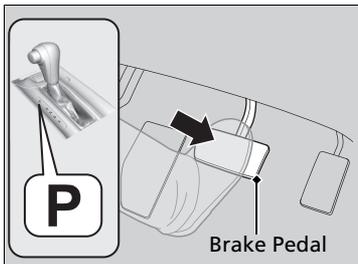
▶▶ When Driving ▶ Starting the Engine

Models with keyless access system

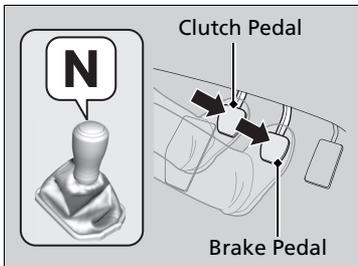
Starting the Engine



Electric Parking Brake Switch



Brake Pedal



Brake Pedal

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
 - ▶ The electric parking brake indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in **N**. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
 - ▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

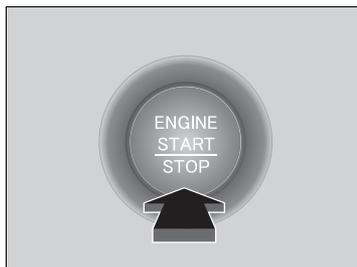
The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres (8,000 feet).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

Immobilizer System P. 171

**All models**

3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Diesel models

- ▶ If the glow plugs indicator comes on, keep the clutch pedal fully depressed and wait until the indicator goes off. The engine starts automatically.

■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

Diesel models

Idle the engine for 10 seconds before turning off the engine.

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Put the transmission into **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Manual transmission models

- If the shift lever is in **N**, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- If the shift lever is in any gear other than **N**, depress the clutch pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

▶▶ Starting the Engine

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

- ▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**
P. 619

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

Diesel models

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, the engine peak power may be restricted at starting the engine. This is to help the fuel flow for the normal engine operation.

Diesel models

For proper lubrication, the engine must not be run above fast idle speed until the low oil pressure indicator goes off.
Avoid harsh acceleration or labouring the engine before the normal operating temperature has been reached.

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Starting the Engine

Starting to Drive**Continuously variable transmission models**

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the transmission into **D**. Select **R** when reversing.
 2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
 - ▶ Make sure the electric parking brake indicator goes off.
- **Parking Brake** P. 475

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or **R** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Continuously variable transmission models

Put the transmission into **D** or **S** when facing uphill, or **R** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Driving

▶▶ Starting the Engine

Diesel models

When the engine malfunctions or stalls due to insufficient fuel, move the vehicle to a safe place immediately and refuel 10 Litres (2.2 Imp gal) or more. When fuel runs out, air enters the fuel system. This may cause slow starting of the engine. If the engine does not start on the first try, try again a few times. If the engine still does not start, ask a dealer.

▶▶ Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Manual transmission models

If the engine stalls, fully depress the clutch pedal within three seconds. The engine may automatically restart under certain conditions. Otherwise, follow the standard procedure.

▶▶ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Precautions While Driving

■ Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt manoeuvres whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the centre of gravity.
- Do not carry heavy luggage on the roof.

■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

⊠ Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY **I***1 while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in **N**, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

Continued

▶▶ When Driving ▶▶ Continuously Variable Transmission*

■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Continuously Variable Transmission*

■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

▶▶ Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km (625 miles) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km (200 miles). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

▶▶ Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

- ▶▶ **Important Handling Information** P. 38
- ▶▶ **Precautions While Driving** P. 419

▶▶ In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

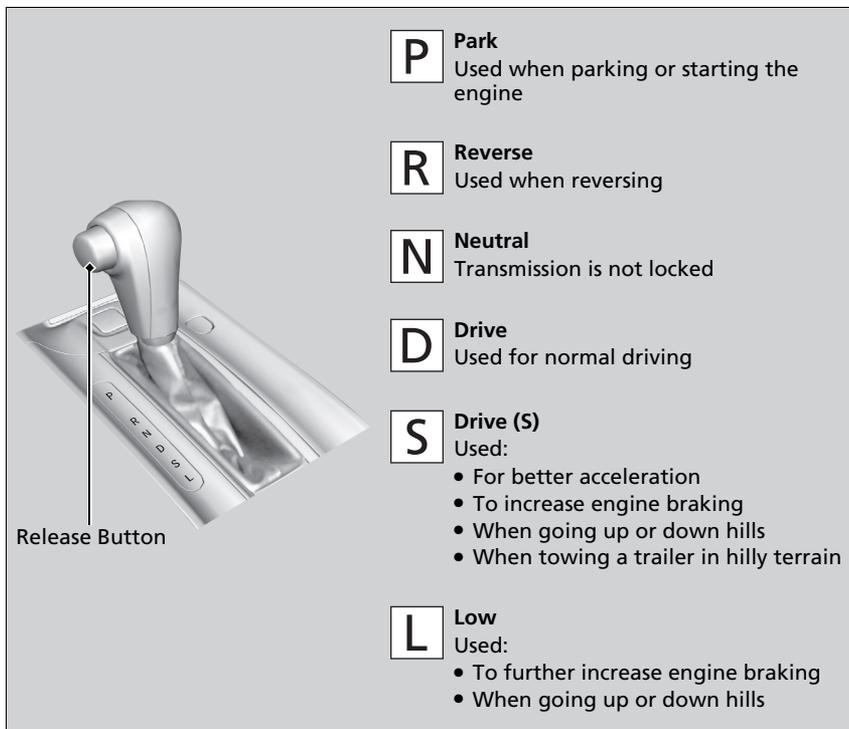
Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Continuously variable transmission models without paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



▶▶ Shifting

Models without keyless access system

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [O] and remove the key unless the shift lever is in [P].

Models with keyless access system

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in [P].

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

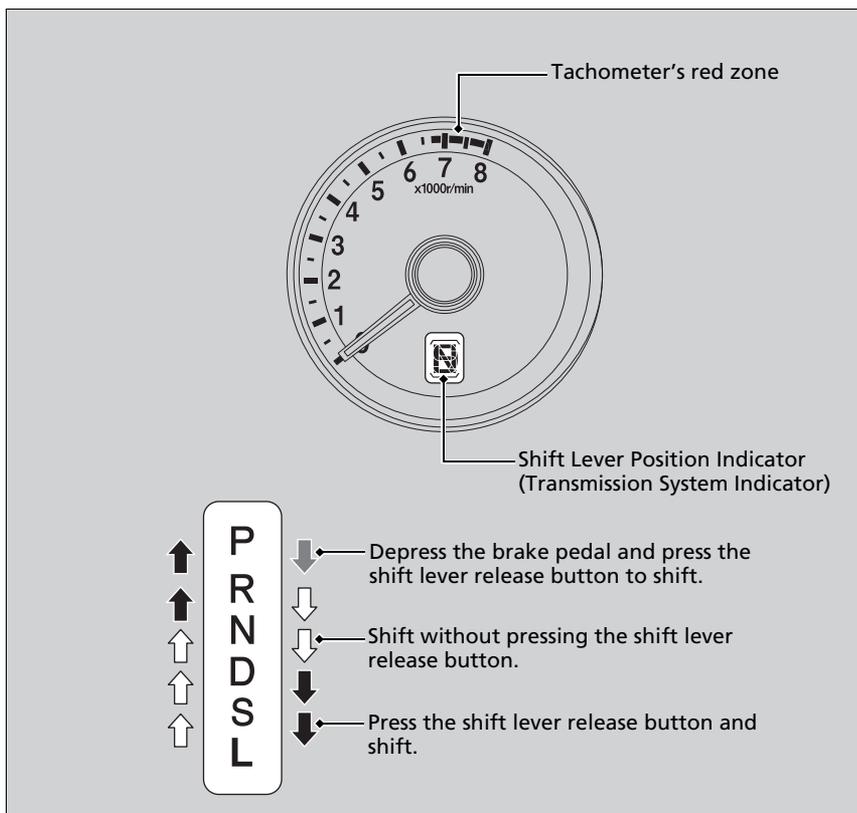
When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

Driving

Continued

▶▶When Driving▶Shifting

Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

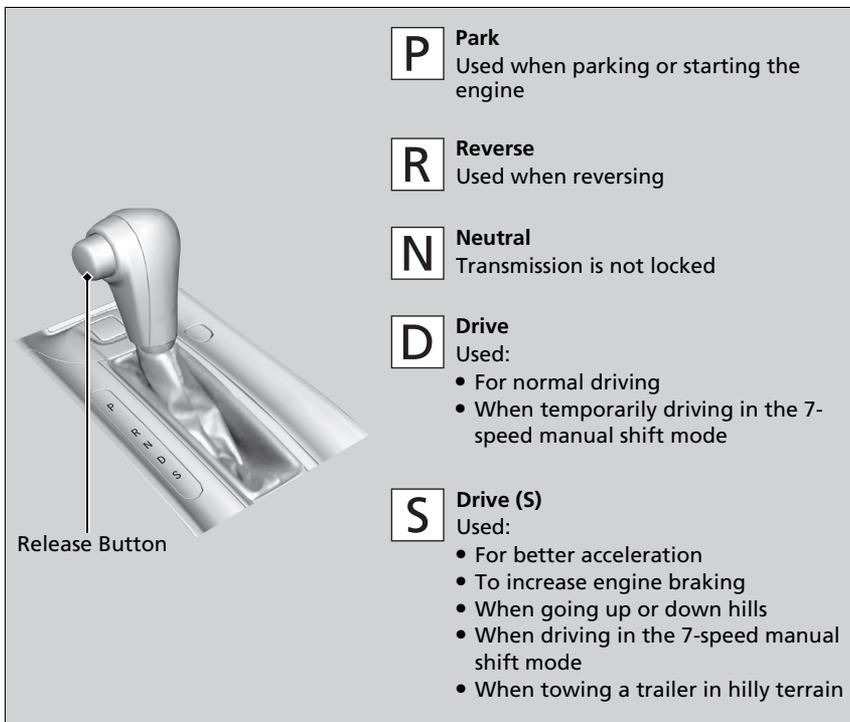
It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.

Continuously variable transmission models with paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



▶▶ Shifting

Models without keyless access system

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0] and remove the key unless the shift lever is in [P].

Models with keyless access system

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in [P].

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

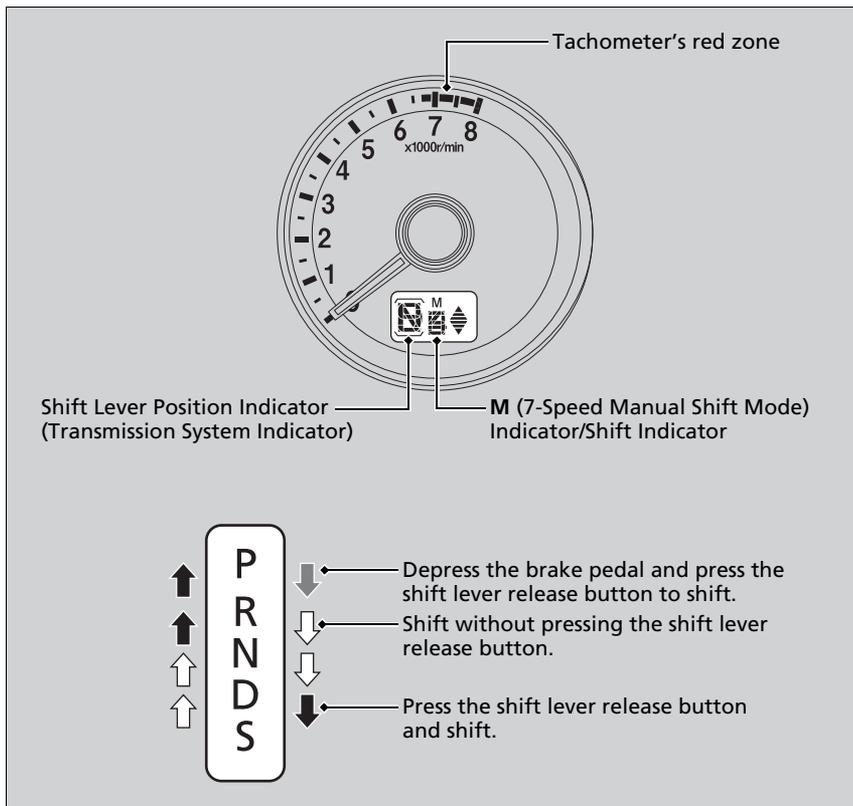
When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

Driving

Continued

▶▶When Driving▶Shifting

Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the shift lever is in **[D]**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.

You can cancel this mode by pulling the **[+]** paddle shifter for a few seconds.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the shift lever is in **[S]**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from **[S]** to **[D]**. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator go off.

☒ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:

Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.

Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.

When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal **[D]** driving mode.

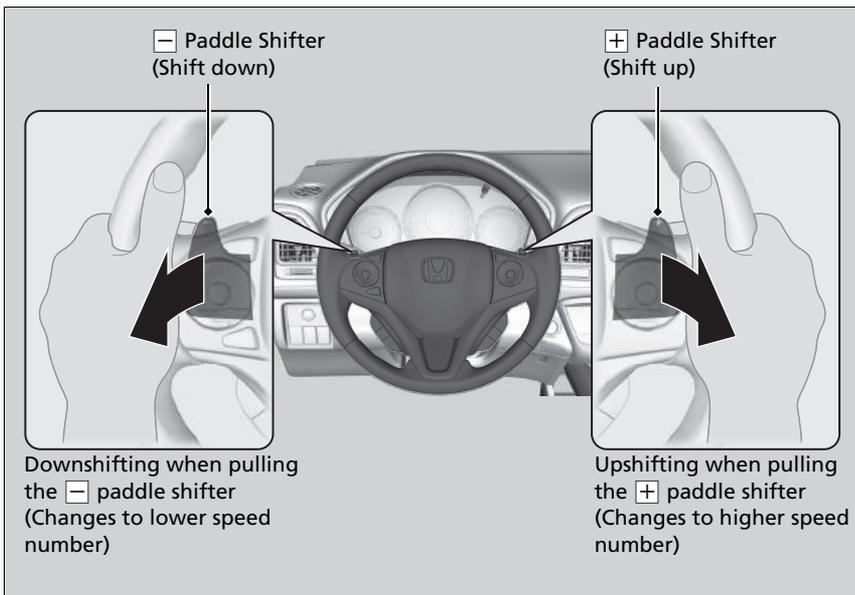
Driving

Continued

425

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Shifting

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



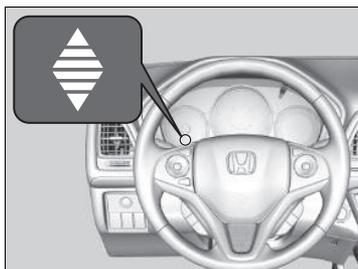
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change. To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range. Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

Driving

Shift Up/Down* Indicators



Come on while the vehicle is in the 7-speed manual shift mode to indicate when a speed change is appropriate to maintain the most fuel efficient driving style.

The shift up indicator: Comes on when shifting up is recommended.

Models without turbocharger

The shift down indicator: Comes on when shifting down is recommended.

Shift Up/Down* Indicators

⚠ WARNING

The shift indicator is only a guide to help you achieve better fuel economy. Never refer to the Shift Indicators when road and traffic conditions are unsuitable or when it may distract you.

Models without turbocharger

The shift down indicator will not prompt you to downshift to increase engine braking. It is up to you to downshift to increase engine braking when driving downhill.

Always shift down at the appropriate vehicle speed.

When the ECON mode is on, ambient meter colour may change if you do not change speed positions when a shift indicator illuminates. This can result in a change in fuel economy.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

Driving

* Not available on all models

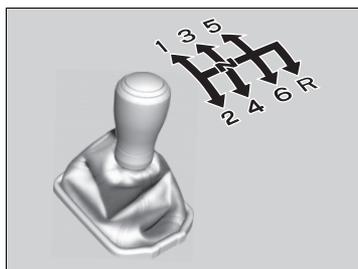
▶▶When Driving▶Shifting

Manual transmission models

Shifting**Shift Lever Operation**

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into **[R]**, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not “grind.”



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

▶▶Shifting

NOTICE

Do not shift to **[R]** before the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Shifting to **[R]** before stopping can damage the transmission.

NOTICE

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

Shift Up/Down Indicators



Come on to indicate when a gear change is appropriate to maintain the most fuel efficient driving style.

The shift up indicator: Comes on when shifting up is recommended.

The shift down indicator: Comes on when shifting down is recommended.

Shift Up/Down Indicators

⚠ WARNING

The shift indicator is only a guide to help you achieve better fuel economy. Never refer to the Shift Indicators when road and traffic conditions are unsuitable or when it may distract you.

The shift down indicator will not prompt you to downshift to increase engine braking. It is up to you to downshift to increase engine braking when driving downhill.

Always shift down at the appropriate vehicle speed.

The shift down indicator does not come on when downshifting from **2** to **1**.

When the ECON mode is on, ambient meter colour may change if you do not change gears when a shift indicator illuminates. This can result in a change in fuel economy.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

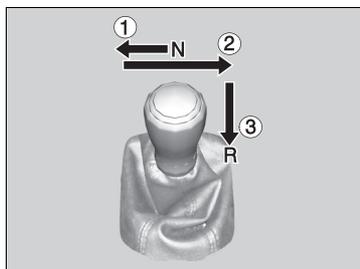
Continued

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Shifting

Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has a lockout mechanism that stops you from accidentally shifting into **R** from a forward gear while the vehicle is moving at a certain speed.

If you cannot shift to **R** when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:



1. Depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever all the way to the left, and shift to **R**.
2. If you still cannot shift into **R**, apply the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY **I** or LOCK **0***1.
3. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into **R**.
4. Keep depressing the clutch pedal and start the engine.

Have the vehicle checked by a dealer if you have to go through this procedure repeatedly.

Driving

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

ECON Mode



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.

Petrol models

The ECON mode helps you to improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the climate control system, engine*, and cruise control*.

Diesel models

The ECON mode helps you to improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the transmission, climate control system, and cruise control.

▶▶ ECON Mode

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Driving

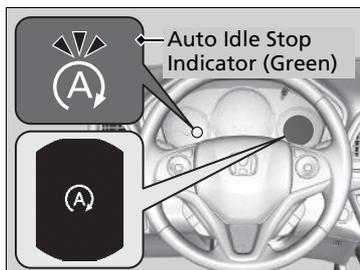
▶▶ When Driving ▶ Auto Idle Stop

Continuously variable transmission models

Models without turbocharger

Auto Idle Stop

To help to maximise fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on at this time.



The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, and the indicator (green) goes off.

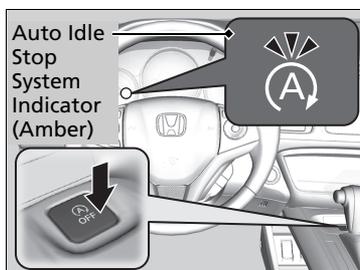
A message associated with Auto Idle Stop appears on the multi-information display.

▶ Indicators P. 92

▶ Customized Features P. 144

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator (green) is on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF



To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

▶ Auto Idle Stop system will stop and the indicator (amber) will come on.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

▶▶ Auto Idle Stop

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the 12-volt battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the 12-volt battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

▶ Specifications P. 650

The duration of the Auto Idle Stop operation:

- **Increase** in the ECON mode, compared to when the ECON mode is off, with climate control in use.

▶▶ Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

Pressing the Auto Idle Stop system **OFF** button restarts the engine during the Auto Idle Stop activated.

■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

The vehicle stops with the shift lever in **D** and the brake pedal depressed.

■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The engine coolant temperature is low or high.
- The engine is started with the bonnet open.
 - ▶ Turn off the engine. Close the bonnet before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
- The battery charge is low.
- The internal temperature of the battery is -10°C or less.
-  is on (indicator on).
- The climate control system is in use, and the temperature is set to **Hi** or **Lo**.
- The climate control system is in use, and the outside temperature is below -20°C or over 40°C.
- The transmission fluid temperature is low or high.
- The transmission is in a position other than **D**.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph) after the engine starts.
- Stopped on a steep incline.

▶ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated. If the bonnet is opened, the engine will not restart automatically.

In this case, restart the engine with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button* or turn the ignition switch* to START .

▶ **Starting the Engine** P. 413, 416

Models with keyless access system

Pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes the power mode to ACCESSORY even while Auto Idle Stop is in operation. Once in ACCESSORY, the engine no longer restarts automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.

▶ **Starting the Engine** P. 416

Models without keyless access system

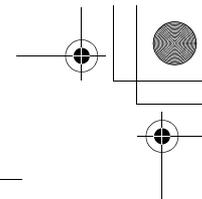
Even if you turn the ignition switch to START  during the Auto Idle Stop activated, the engine does not start.

* Not available on all models

Continued

433

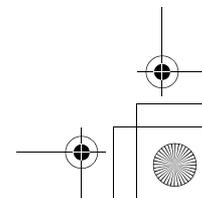
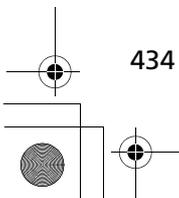
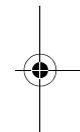
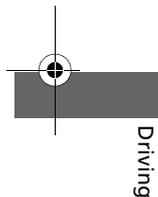
Driving



▶▶When Driving▶▶Auto Idle Stop

■ Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:

- The steering wheel is operated.
- Altitude is high.
- The vehicle is stopped by braking suddenly.
- The vehicle is repeatedly accelerated and decelerated at a low speed.
- The climate control system is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature.
- The climate control system is in use, and humidity in the interior is high.
- The fan speed is high.



■ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

- The brake pedal is released (without the automatic brake hold system activated).
- The accelerator pedal is depressed (with the automatic brake hold system activated).

☒ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 478

■ The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed*1 when:

- The Auto Idle Stop system **OFF** button is pressed.
- A steering wheel is operated.
- The transmission is put into **R**, **S**, and **L***, or when it is set from **N** and put into **D**.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is reduced and the vehicle starts moving while stopped on an incline.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is repeatedly applied and released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The driver's seat belt is unlatched.
-  is on (indicator on).
- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.
- The climate control system is being used to dehumidify the interior.

■ Starting Assist Brake Function

Briefly keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal to restart the engine. This can keep your vehicle from unexpectedly moving while on an incline.

* Not available on all models

☒ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

If you are using an electronic device during Auto Idle Stop, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.

☒ The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed*1 when:

*1: With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal during Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

If the automatic brake hold system has been turned off, or if there is a problem with the system, the engine will restart automatically when you release the brake pedal.

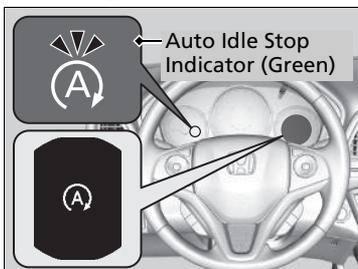
☒ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 478

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Auto Idle Stop

Manual transmission models

Auto Idle Stop

To help to maximise fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on at this time.



The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, depending on environmental and vehicle conditions, and the indicator (green) goes off.

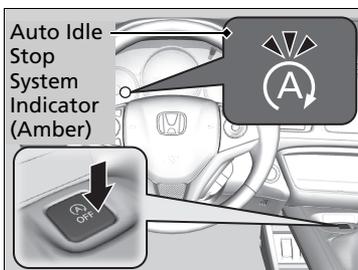
▶ **The Engine Automatically Restarts When:**
P. 438

A message associated with Auto Idle Stop appears on the multi-information display.

▶ **Indicators** P. 92

▶ **Customized Features** P. 144

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator (green) is on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

▶ Auto Idle Stop system will stop and the indicator (amber) will come on.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

▶▶ Auto Idle Stop

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the 12-volt battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the 12-volt battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

▶ **Specifications** P. 650, 653, 656

The duration of the Auto Idle Stop operation:

- **Increase** in the ECON mode, compared to when the ECON mode is off, with climate control in use.

▶▶ Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

Pressing the Auto Idle Stop system **OFF** button restarts the engine during the Auto Idle Stop activated.

■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

After the vehicle moves forward, stopping with the brake, the clutch pedal fully depressed, the shift lever in **[N]**, and then the clutch pedal is released.

▶ To restart the engine automatically, depress the clutch pedal.

■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The engine coolant temperature is low or high.
- The engine is started with the bonnet open.
 - ▶ Turn off the engine. Close the bonnet before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
- The battery charge is low.
- **FRONT VIEW** is on (indicator on).
- The climate control system is in use, and the temperature is set to **Hi** or **Lo**.
- The climate control system is in use, and the outside temperature is below -20°C or over 40°C.
- The shift lever is in any position except **[N]**.
- The engine restarts but the vehicle stops again before reaching 3 km/h (2 mph).

Petrol models with turbocharger

- The internal temperature of the battery is 5°C or less.

Except Petrol models with turbocharger

- The internal temperature of the battery is -10°C or less.

■ Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:

- The steering wheel is operated.
- Altitude is high.
- The climate control system is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature.
- The climate control system is in use, and humidity in the interior is high.
- The fan speed is high.

▶▶ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated. If the bonnet is opened, the engine will not restart automatically.

In this case, restart the engine with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button or turn the ignition switch to **START [III]**.

▶ **Starting the Engine** P. 413, 416

Models with keyless access system

Pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) even while Auto Idle Stop is in operation. Once in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), the engine no longer restarts automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.

▶ **Starting the Engine** P. 416

Models without keyless access system

Even if you turn the ignition switch to **START [III]** during the Auto Idle Stop activated, the engine does not start.

Continued

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Auto Idle Stop

■ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

The clutch pedal is depressed.

■ The engine automatically restarts even if the clutch pedal is not depressed with the shift lever in **[N] when:**

- The Auto Idle Stop system **OFF** button is pressed.
- Your vehicle is moved.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is repeatedly applied and released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The steering wheel is operated.

Driving

▶ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

If you are using an electronic device during Auto Idle Stop, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.

The engine does not restart automatically when there is a problem in the system. Follow the normal procedure to start the engine.

▶ Starting the Engine P. 413, 416

The engine does not restart automatically when:

- The driver's seat belt is unlatched.
Fasten the driver's seat belt to keep the Auto Idle Stop activated.
- The shift lever is moved from **[N]** to any other position.
Shift to **[N]**.

▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages P. 116

When the system stops operating, follow the normal procedure to start the engine.

▶ Starting the Engine P. 413, 416

■ When the Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green) Starts Blinking Rapidly

Fully depress the clutch pedal.

- ▶ The engine automatically restarts.

☒ When the Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green) Starts Blinking Rapidly

The indicator starts blinking rapidly under the following conditions:

-  (windscreen demister) is touched.
- When the climate control system is in use and moisture builds up inside the vehicle.
- When the climate control system is in use and the difference between the set temperature and the actual temperature inside the vehicle becomes significant.

Driving

▶▶When Driving▶Cruise Control

Cruise Control

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control: Desired speed in a range from about 30 km/h (18 mph) to about 200 km/h (125 mph)

Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.

Continuously variable transmission models

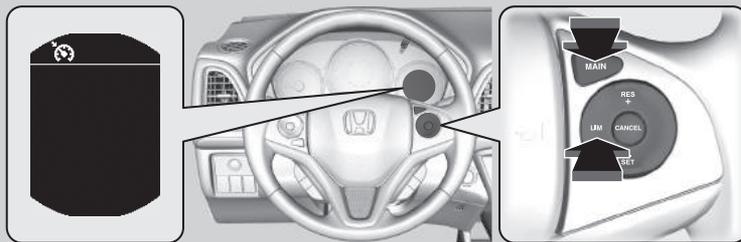
- Shift positions for cruise control:
In **D** or **S**



How to use

- The indicator is on in the instrument panel
Cruise control is ready to use.

- Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel



If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch the cruise control.

⌘Cruise Control

⚠WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

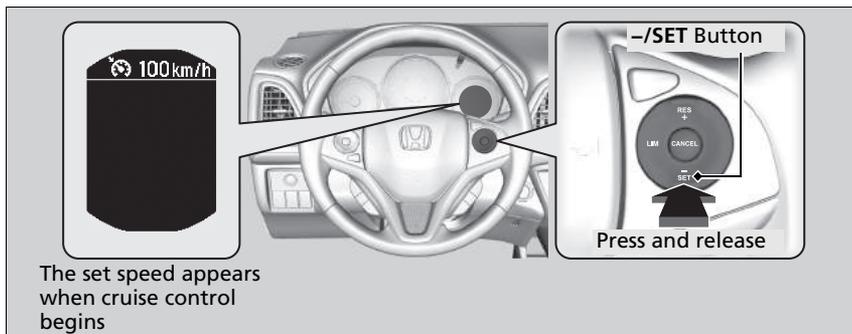
Manual transmission models

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift. You can maintain the set speed if you change gear within five seconds.

When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **MAIN** button.

You cannot use the cruise control and adjustable speed limiter or intelligent speed limiter* at the same time.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The set speed is displayed.

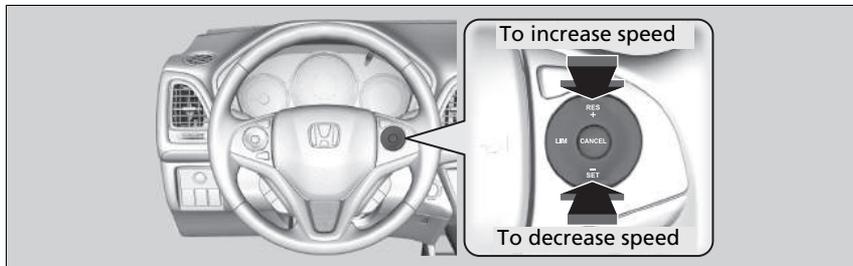
Driving

Continued

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Cruise Control

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

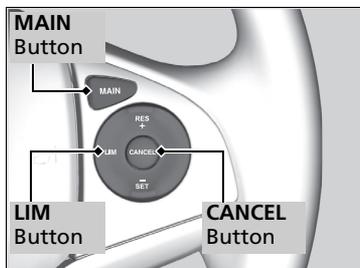
Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h or 10 mph accordingly.

Driving

■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal* for five seconds or more.

The displayed set speed goes off.

▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 30 km/h (18 mph) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (18 mph)
- When the **MAIN** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 25 km/h (16mph) or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

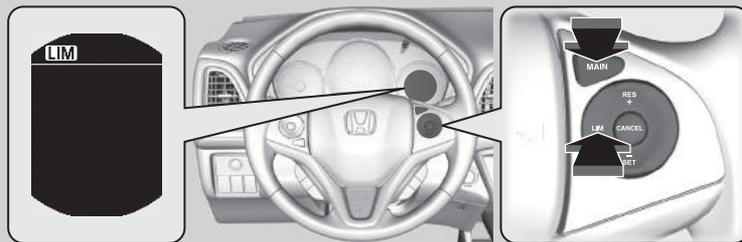
Adjustable Speed Limiter

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.
The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h (18 mph) to about 250 km/h (156 mph).

How to use

The indicator is on in the instrument panel
Adjustable speed limiter is ready to use.

Press the MAIN button
on the steering wheel



If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.

Adjustable Speed Limiter

⚠ WARNING

Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations. It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary. Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the adjustable speed limiter:
Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **MAIN** button.

You cannot use the adjustable speed limiter and cruise control or intelligent speed limiter* at the same time.

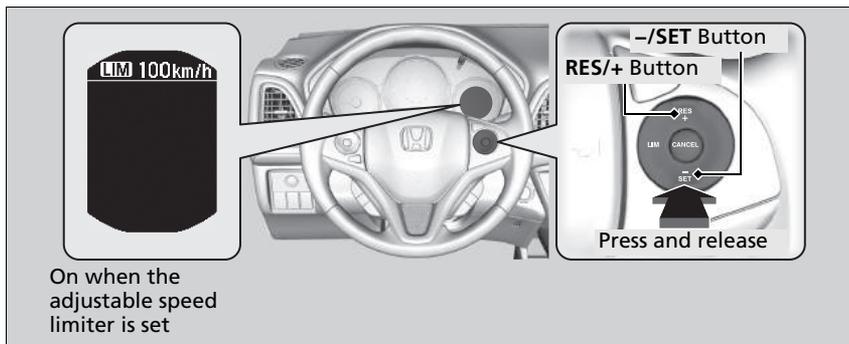
Manual transmission models

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

* Not available on all models

▶▶When Driving▶▶Adjustable Speed Limiter

■ To Set the Speed Limit



On when the adjustable speed limiter is set

- Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the speed limit is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The speed limit is displayed.
- You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+** button.

Driving

▶▶To Set the Speed Limit

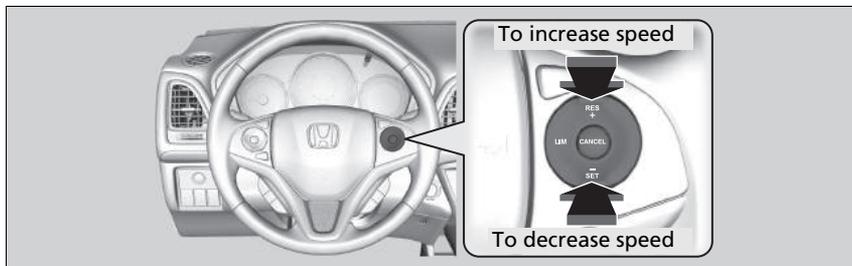
If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h (18 mph), the speed limit is set to 30 km/h (18 mph).

The beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h (2 mph) or more on a steep descent.

The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+** button.

■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h or 10 mph every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

- ▶ The displayed speed limit blinks.
The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

☒ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

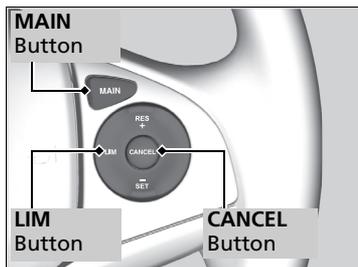
The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the acceleration pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

Continued

▶▶When Driving▶▶Adjustable Speed Limiter

To Cancel



To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To Cancel

The adjustable speed limiter changes into cruise control if the **LIM** button is pressed.

Models with intelligent speed limiter

The adjustable speed limiter changes into intelligent speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.



If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.

Models with traffic sign recognition system

Intelligent Speed Limiter

Automatically sets the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. And the speed limit cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal. If you fully depress the accelerator the speed limit can be exceeded.

➤ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 462

▶ Intelligent Speed Limiter

⚠ WARNING

Intelligent Speed Limiter has limitations. The Intelligent Speed Limiter may set itself to a speed above or below the actual speed limit, or may not work, particularly where the traffic sign recognition system does not operate correctly or where a road has no speed limit signs. It is always your responsibility to adjust the speed to obey the actual speed limit and to safely operate the vehicle.

Depending on the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will accelerate until it reaches the speed identified by the traffic sign recognition system.

Driving

* Not available on all models

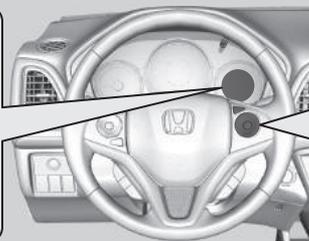
Continued

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Intelligent Speed Limiter

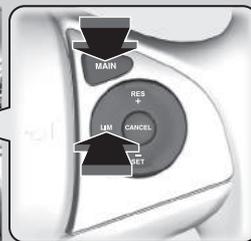
How to use

The indicator is on in the instrument panel

Intelligent speed limiter is ready to use.



■ Press the MAIN button on the steering wheel

If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to the intelligent speed limiter.

Driving

▶ Intelligent Speed Limiter

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be detected, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

▶ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 462

If the intelligent speed limiter is set to the wrong speed limit, try one of the following:

To cancel

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To exceed the speed limit temporarily

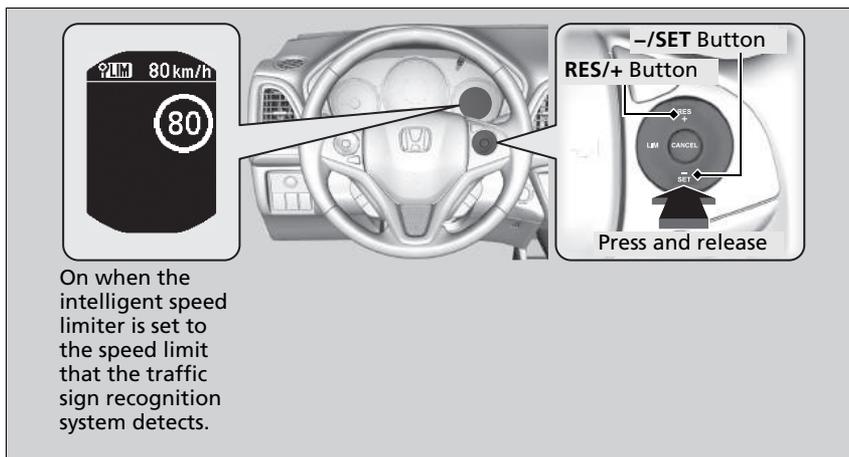
- Depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The intelligent speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the intelligent speed limiter, turn off the intelligent speed limiter by pressing the **MAIN** button.

You cannot use the intelligent speed limiter and cruise control or adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

■ To Set the Speed Limit



- The moment you release the **-/SET** button or **RES/+** button, the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. The speed limit is displayed.

▶ Intelligent Speed Limiter

Manual transmission models

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

Do not use the intelligent speed limiter in areas of different units from the display unit of the intelligent speed limiter.

Right-hand drive type except Cyprus models

Change the displayed measurement of the set vehicle speed to the same units as the driving areas.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 144

▶ To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the intelligent speed limiter when the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects is less than 30 km/h (20 mph), the speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause.

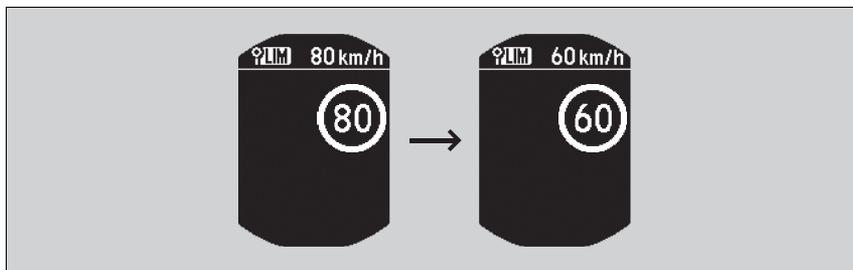
If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit or less. If necessary, slow down by depressing the brake pedal. And the beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h (2 mph) or more.

Continued

▶▶When Driving▶ Intelligent Speed Limiter

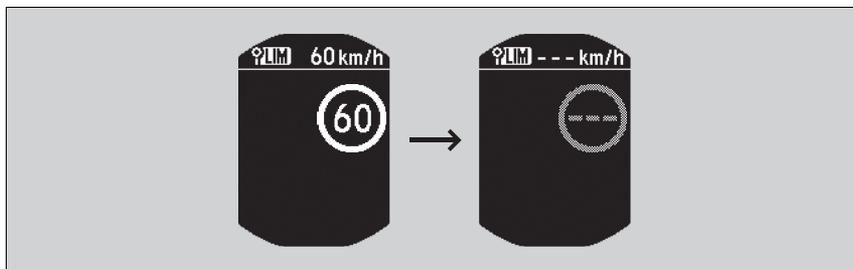
■ When the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign

The intelligent speed limiter is set to the new speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.



■ The speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause if there is no speed limit sign in the screen of the traffic sign recognition system when:

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal to change direction at an intersection.



▶▶To Set the Speed Limit

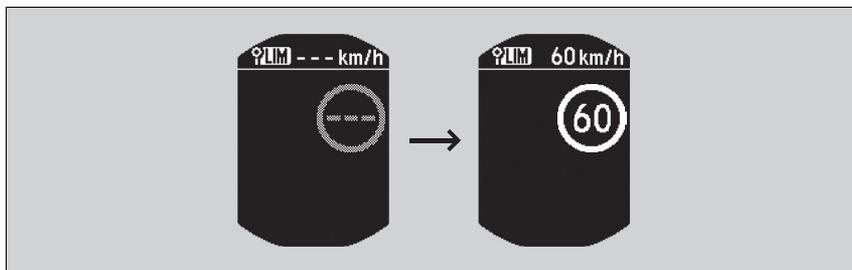
The intelligent speed limiter may also switch to pause when the traffic sign recognition system detects only additional speed limit signs.



Driving

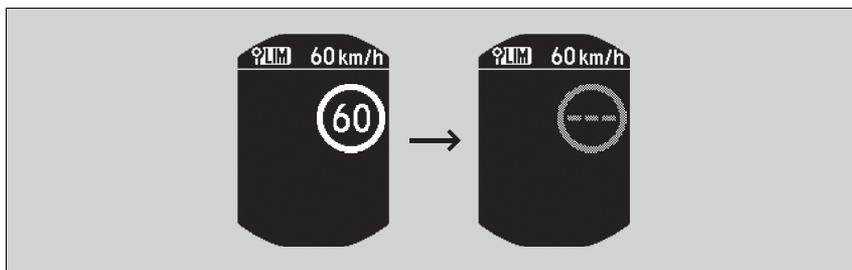
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system detects the speed limit sign while the intelligent speed limiter is paused**

The speed limitation function and warning function will be resumed automatically.



■ **When the traffic sign recognition system does not detect the speed limit sign for a time while the intelligent speed limiter is activated**

While driving, in addition to when the traffic sign recognition system detects no speed limit sign, the traffic sign recognition system may display no speed limit. But, intelligent speed limiter functions continue.

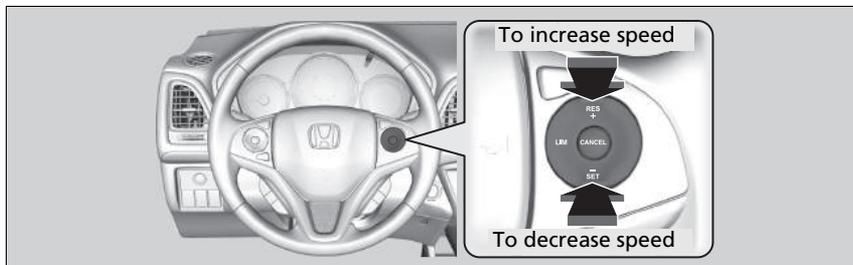


Continued

▶▶When Driving▶ Intelligent Speed Limiter

■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the speed limit is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- You can increase the speed limit until +10 km/h or +5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can decrease the speed limit until -10 km/h or -5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can accelerate until the set speed is reached. If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit.

■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

- ▶ The displayed speed limit blinks.
The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

▶▶To Adjust the Speed Limit

A negative or positive offset with respect to the speed limit will be reset automatically when the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign.

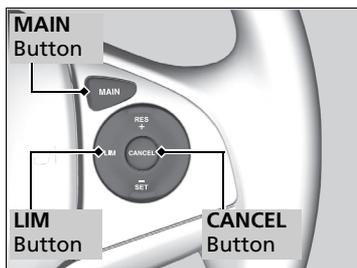
You cannot decrease the speed limit less than 30 km/h (18 mph).

▶▶Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the acceleration pedal depressed completely.

The intelligent speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel

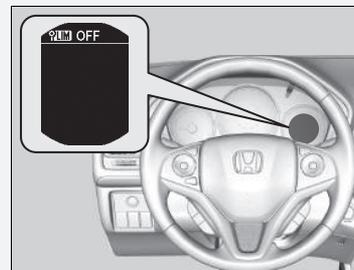


To cancel the intelligent speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To Cancel

The intelligent speed limiter changes into cruise control if the **LIM** button is pressed.



If there is a problem with the system or traffic sign recognition system when you are using the intelligent speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The intelligent speed limiter will be turned off.

▶ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** * P. 462

* Not available on all models

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Forward Collision Warning*

Forward Collision Warning*

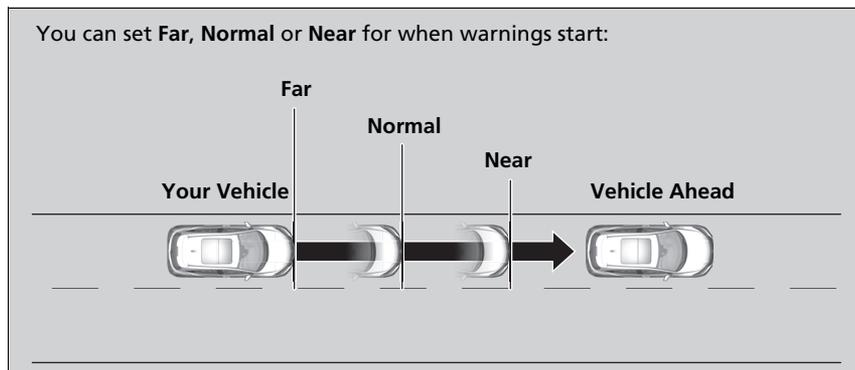
Alerts you when it detects the possibility of your vehicle colliding with the vehicle in front of yours.

If the system determines a collision is possible, it gives both visual and audible alerts.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).

■ How the system works

The system may give warnings of potential collisions when your vehicle speed is above 15 km/h (9 mph).



⚠ Forward Collision Warning*

Important Safety Reminder

Forward Collision Warning cannot detect all objects ahead and may not detect a given object; accuracy of the system will vary based on weather, speed and other factors. Forward Collision Warning does not include a braking function. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can change the Forward Collision Warning Distance setting or turn the system on and off.

📄 Customized Features P. 144

The camera is shared with Lane Departure Warning, Traffic Sign Recognition System* and auto high-beam*.

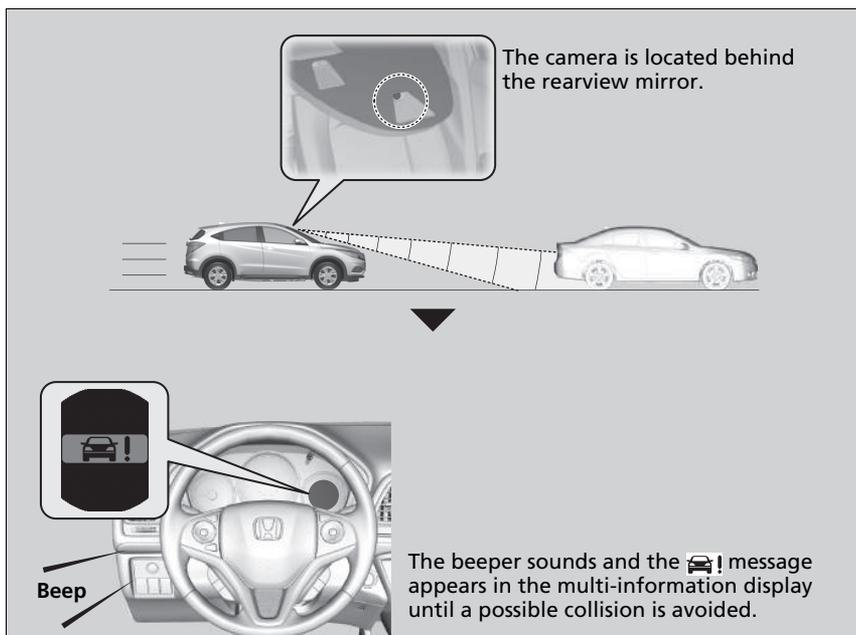
For the system's proper operation:

- Do not impact the camera or the area around the camera when you clean the windscreen.
- Keep the upper windscreen clean. Wipe away any debris including ice and frost.

Consult a dealer in the following cases.

- The camera or the area around the camera is severely impacted.
- The area around the windscreen needs repair.

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Forward Collision Warning*



⊠ Forward Collision Warning*

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield that could obstruct the Forward Collision Warning camera's field of vision. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the Forward Collision Warning camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the Forward Collision Warning camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Driving

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Forward Collision Warning*

■ Automatic shutoff

Forward Collision Warning may automatically shut itself off and the  indicator comes and stays on when:

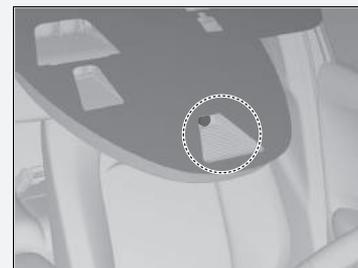
- The temperature inside the vehicle is high.
- The windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.

Once the conditions that caused Forward Collision Warning to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

▶▶ Automatic shutoff

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun.

If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on the camera.



If the  message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, the demister mode when windows are fogged.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the Forward Collision Warning camera.

If the  message appears:

Park your vehicle in a safe place. Wipe away debris blocking the windscreen, then start driving again. If the message remains on even after driving for a while with the clean windscreen, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Forward Collision Warning Limitations

Forward Collision Warning may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle, and may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead, under the following conditions.

Condition

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- When either your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you accelerates rapidly.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, a small vehicle, or a unique vehicle such as a tractor.
- When you drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period that makes it difficult for the camera to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- When there are pedestrians or animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive in bad weather (rain, fog, etc.).
- A heavy load in the rear or modifications to the suspension tilts your vehicle.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- When the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- When the temperature inside the system is high.
- A sudden change between light and dark such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- You drive into the sunlight (e.g. at dawn or dusk).
- When the windscreen is dirty or cloudy.
- When streetlights are perceived as the taillight of a vehicle in front of yours.
- When driving at night, the vehicle ahead of you is running with either taillight bulb burned out.
- When you drive in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer.

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Lane Departure Warning*

Lane Departure Warning*

Alerts you when the system determines a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings.

How the System Works



If your vehicle is getting too close to detected left or right side lane markings without a turn signal activated, Lane Departure Warning will give audible and visual alerts.

The beeper sounds and the  message appears on the multi-information display, letting you know that you need to take appropriate action.

How the System Activates

The system begins to search for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is travelling above about 72 km/h (45 mph).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

ⓘ Lane Departure Warning*

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, Lane Departure Warning has limitations.

Over-reliance on Lane Departure Warning may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

Lane Departure Warning only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. Lane Departure Warning may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The Lane Departure Warning may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

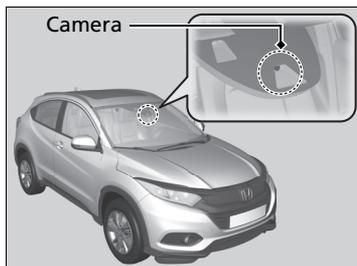
- ▶ **Lane Departure Warning Conditions and Limitations** P. 460

ⓘ How the System Activates

Lane Departure Warning may automatically shut off and the  indicator comes and stays on.

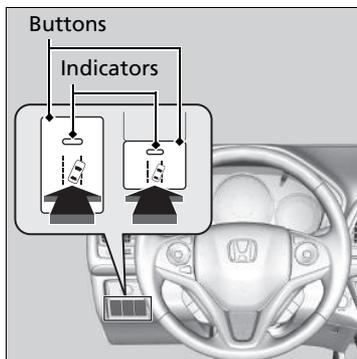
- ▶ **Indicators** P. 113

■ Lane Departure Warning Camera



The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

■ Lane Departure Warning On and Off



Press the Lane Departure Warning button to turn the system on and off.

- ▶ The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

☒ Lane Departure Warning Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield that could obstruct the Lane Departure Warning camera's field of vision. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the Lane Departure Warning camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the Lane Departure Warning camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on the camera.

Continued

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Lane Departure Warning*

Lane Departure Warning Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

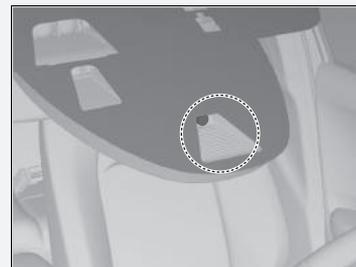
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windscreen.

Driving

▶ Lane Departure Warning Camera

If the  message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, the demister mode when windows are fogged.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the Lane Departure Warning camera.



If the  message appears:

Park your vehicle in a safe place. Wipe away debris blocking the windscreen, then start driving again. If the message remains on even after driving for a while with the clean windscreen, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- When driving on roads with double lines.

■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too hot.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.

* Not available on all models

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Traffic Sign Recognition System *

Traffic Sign Recognition System *

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the multi-information display.

How the System Works

When the camera located behind the rearview mirror captures traffic signs while driving, the system displays the ones that are recognised as designated for your vehicle. The sign icon will be displayed until the vehicle reaches a predetermined time and distance.



The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

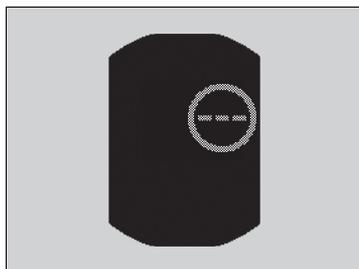
Traffic Sign Recognition System *

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the image below may appear.



☒ Traffic Sign Recognition System *

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

If appears, the traffic sign recognition system does not work, and will be displayed.

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If appears, the traffic sign recognition system does not work, and will be displayed. Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Driving

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Traffic Sign Recognition System *

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The traffic sign recognition system may not be able to recognize the traffic sign in the following cases.

Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- There are portions remaining to be wiped.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- When you drive in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- A vehicle in front of you is travelling flying up spray or snow.

Driving

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

When the traffic sign recognition system malfunctions,  appears on the multi-information display. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



■ **The position or the condition of the traffic sign**

- A sign is hard to be found since it is in a complicated area.
- A sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- A sign is located where the beam of the headlight is hard to reach.
- A sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- Faded or bent signs.
- Rotated or damaged signs.
- A sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- A part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or the sign itself is hidden by a vehicle and others.
- Light (a streetlight) or a shadow is reflected on the surface of the sign.
- A sign is too bright or too dark (an electric sign).
- A sign of a small size.

■ **Other conditions**

- When you are driving at a high speed.

Continued

▶▶When Driving▶▶Traffic Sign Recognition System*

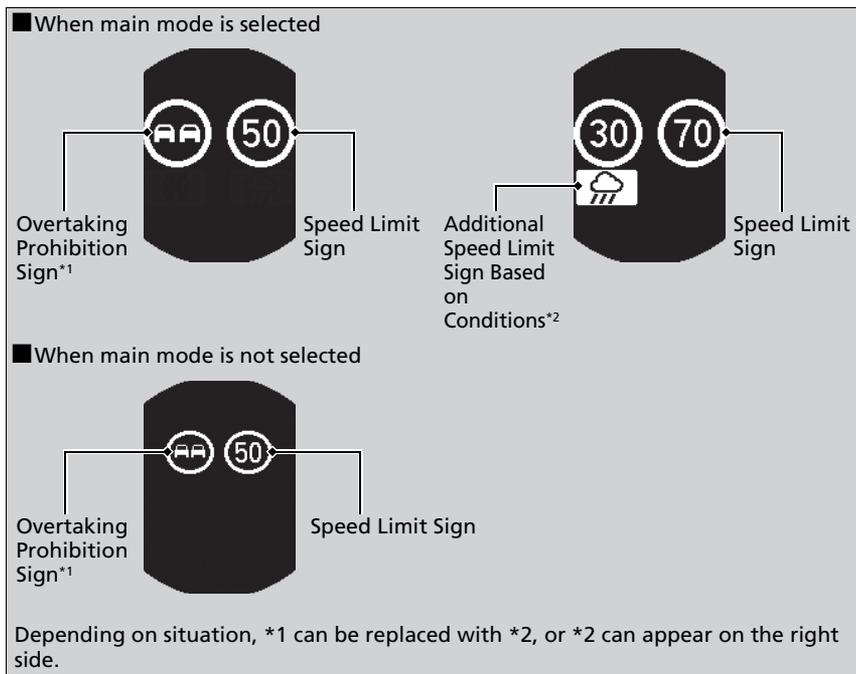
The traffic sign recognition system may not operate correctly, such as displaying a sign that does not follow the actual regulation for the roadway or does not exist at all in the following cases.

- ▶ A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.
- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the sign are blurred, etc.).
- A sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving even though it is not for the lane (speed limit sign situated at the junction between the side road and the main road, etc.).
- There are things that look similar to the colour or shape of the recognition object (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).
- A lorry or another larger vehicle with a sticker of the speed limit sign on the back are travelling in front of you.

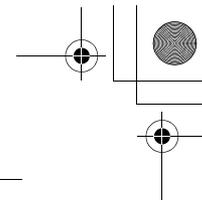
Driving

■ Signs Displayed on the Multi-Information Display

Two traffic signs can be simultaneously displayed next to each other when detected. The speed limit sign icon is displayed on the right half of the screen. The overtaking prohibition sign icon appears on the left. Any additional sign that indicates speed limit based on weather (rain, snow, etc.) or specific period of time can appear on either side.



Continued

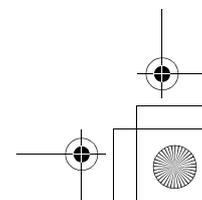
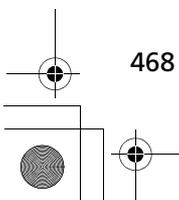
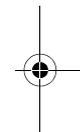
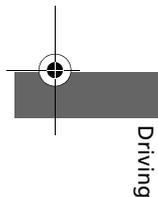


▶▶ When Driving ▶ Traffic Sign Recognition System *

■ Selecting to display traffic signs when main mode is off

You can continue displaying reduced-size traffic sign icon on the multi-information display even while the main mode is not selected.

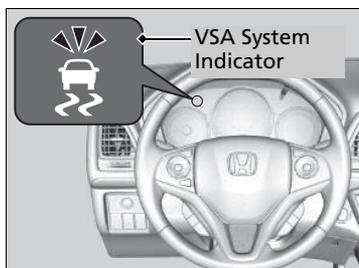
☑ Customized Features P. 144



Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA may not function properly if tyre types and sizes are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures are as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

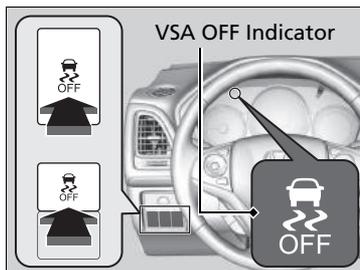
The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

Continued

Driving

▶▶When Driving▶▶Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

■ VSA On and OFF



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

▶▶Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Driving

Agile Handling Assist *

Lightly brakes each of the front and rear wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps to support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

ⓘ Agile Handling Assist *

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

* Not available on all models

▶▶ When Driving ▶ Deflation Warning System

Deflation Warning System

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the multi-information display.

Deflation Warning System Initialisation

You must start deflation warning system initialisation every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before initialising the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.

Manual transmission models

- The parking brake is applied.

Continuously variable transmission models

- The shift lever is in **P**.

All models

- The ignition switch is in ON **II***1.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

472 * Not available on all models

Deflation Warning System

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre types and sizes are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

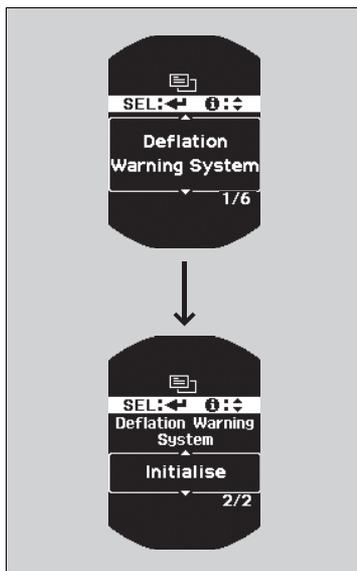
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 569

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre* is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at initialisation.
- Snow chains are used.



You can initialise the system from the customized features on the multi-information display.

1. Press the button until (customize settings) appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
2. Press the button until **Deflation Warning System** appears on the display.
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.
4. Press the button and select **Initialise**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ **Completed** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

☒ Deflation Warning System Initialisation

- Deflation Warning System cannot be initialised if a compact spare tyre* is installed.
- The initialisation process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40–100 km/h (25–62 mph).
- During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the initialisation process is not yet complete.

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before initialising the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

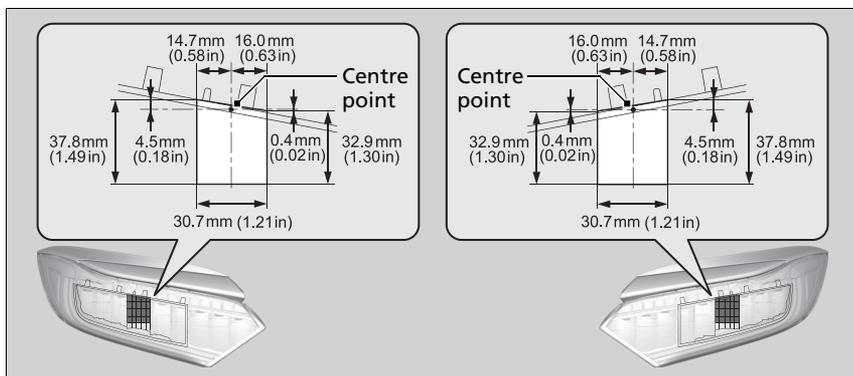
* Not available on all models

▶▶When Driving▶▶Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.

Models with LED headlights



1. Prepare for two pieces of masking tape as shown.
 - ▶ Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

▶▶Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask a dealer for details.

Driving

Braking

Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the ignition switch*1 is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The electric parking brake indicator comes on.



■ To release

The ignition switch must be in ON *1 in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
 - ▶ The electric parking brake indicator goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

▣ Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

▣ **Jump Starting** P. 621

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and automatic brake hold is applied.
- When the engine is turned off, except by Auto Idle Stop system*, while the brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with automatic brake hold system while the brake hold is applied.

Continued

▶▶ Braking ▶ Brake System

■ To release automatically

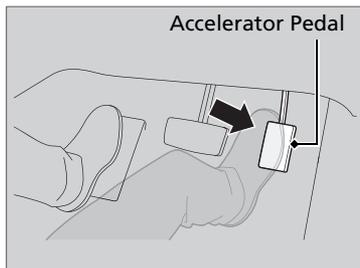
Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

Continuously variable transmission models

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Manual transmission models

Depressing the accelerator pedal while releasing the clutch pedal releases the parking brake.



Continuously variable transmission models

Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

- ▶ The electric parking brake indicator goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

▶▶ Parking Brake

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

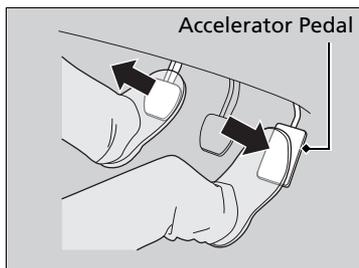
When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Electric parking brake system indicator
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator



Manual transmission models

Gently depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

- ▶ The electric parking brake indicator goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in **N**.

Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 482

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 481

▶▶ Parking Brake

The clutch pedal is fully depressed, and the clutch pedal is released after the accelerator pedal is gently depressed.

▶▶ Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear/speed position. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Continued

▶▶ Braking ▶ Brake System

Automatic Brake Hold**Continuously variable transmission models**

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

Turning on the system

Automatic Brake Hold Button

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

Activating the system

Brake Pedal

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must be in other than **P** or **R**.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

 Cancelling the system

Accelerator Pedal

Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in other than **P** or **N**. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

▶▶ Automatic Brake Hold

WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.

Manual transmission models

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until you shift into one of the gears other than **N** and:

- Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill.
- Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.

You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, such as when you stop at a traffic light.

■ Turning on the system	■ Activating the system	■ Cancelling the system
 <p>Automatic Brake Hold Button</p> <p>Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on. 	 <p>Brake Pedal</p> <p>Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes. • Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on. 	 <p>Accelerator Pedal</p> <p>Shift into one of the gears other than N and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill. • Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill. <p>The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

Continued

▶▶ Braking ▶ Brake System

■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

- You depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever to **P** or **R**.

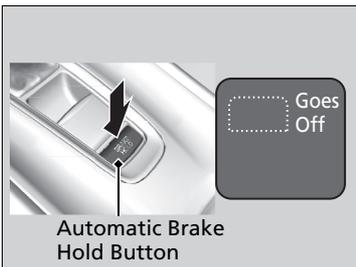
■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

Manual transmission models

- The engine stalls while the automatic brake hold is active except during the Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

- ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

▶▶ Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

- ▶ **When Stopped** P. 489

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

Manual transmission models

The system turns off if the engine stalls while automatic brake hold is active or the system is on. The system turns on again once the engine automatically restarts.

- ▶ **Starting to Drive** P. 415, 418

▶▶ Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h (6 mph), the ABS stops.

▶▶ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use an incorrect tyre type and size.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

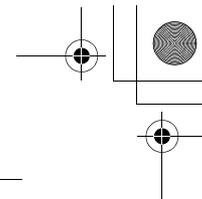
In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.



▶▶Braking▶▶ Brake Assist System

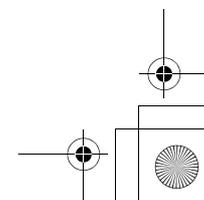
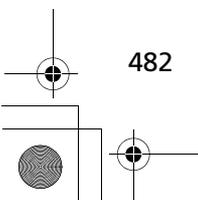
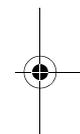
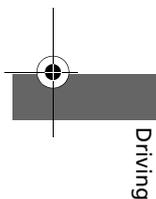
Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Depress the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

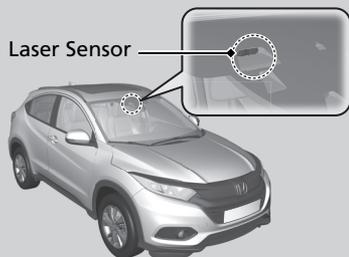
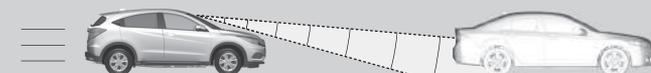


City-Brake Active system

Can assist you when driving at a low speed, and there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle detected right in front of yours. The City-Brake Active system is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed when a collision is deemed unavoidable to help to minimise collision severity.

How the System Works

A laser sensor starts to monitor if there is a vehicle in front of you when your vehicle speed is between about 5 km/h (3 mph) and about 32 km/h (20 mph).



Laser Sensor

The laser sensor is behind the rearview mirror.

The system activates when the speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle detected in front of you is about 5 km/h (3 mph) to 32 km/h (20 mph) with a high chance of collision.

The system don't activate when shift position is **R**.

City-Brake Active system

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely on the city-brake active system to avoid every possible frontal collision.

Failure to pay close attention to a vehicle ahead of you, and to operate the brake pedal appropriately according to the situation can cause serious injury or death.

For the system to work properly:

- Always keep the upper part of the windscreen clean. Wipe away any dirt, ice, frost, etc.
- Do not impact the area around the laser sensor when cleaning the windscreen.
- Do not remove the laser sensor from the unit.

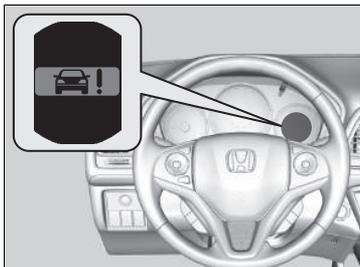
Manual transmission models

When the vehicle comes to a stop with the system's automatic braking, the engine may stop. To start the engine again, follow the standard procedure.

▶ Starting the Engine P. 413, 416

Continued

Collision Alert Stages



The beeper sounds, and a  blinks on the multi-information display, and hard braking is applied when a possible collision becomes likely unavoidable.

This automatic braking with the system activated is cancelled after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Apply the brakes accordingly.

A message indicating that the system has activated appears on the multi-information display after the vehicle is stopped.

Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages P. 116

The system may be cancelled if you operate the brake pedal, the accelerator pedal, or the steering wheel to avoid the collision.

City-Brake Active system

The system may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under the following conditions:

- A vehicle in front of you is diagonally, horizontally, or frontally positioned.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle ahead of you is large.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you, and brakes suddenly.
- You rapidly accelerate your vehicle, getting closer to a vehicle ahead.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly drifts in front of you.
- Your vehicle suddenly drifts into the oncoming lane.
- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you at intersections.
- When driving in bad weather (heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- When driving on a curved or winding road.
- A vehicle in front of you is extremely dirty, making it difficult to reflect radio waves well.
- You depress the brake pedal or turn the steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- A vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle or other small vehicle the sensor cannot detect properly.
- The upper part of the windscreen around the laser sensor is covered with dirt, ice frost, etc.

The system may not activate while you are fully depressing the accelerator pedal.

■ The System On and Off



You can turn the system on and off using the multi-information display.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 144

When the system is off, the **CTBA** indicator in the instrument panel comes on.

City-Brake Active system is turned on every time you turn the ignition switch to ON **II***1, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

▶ City-Brake Active system

The system may automatically shut off, and the **CTBA** indicator can come on and the message can appear on the multi-information display when:

- The temperature around the laser sensor on the upper part of the windscreen becomes high.
- The area around the laser sensor, which is located in the upper part of the windscreen, is covered with obstacles, such as dirt, ice and frost.
- The bonnet is covered with obstacles such as snow.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and

- Use the air conditioning system to cool down the interior if the laser sensor temperature is high.
- Remove any obstacles such as dirt and snow from the windscreen and bonnet.

▶ **Indicators** P. 114

Once the conditions that caused the system to shut off improve, the system comes back on.

Turn off the system when:

- You use a dynamometer or put the wheels on a roller.
- Driving off road or on a mountainous road obstructed with branches and leaves.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

▶▶ Braking ▶ City-Brake Active system

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The system may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

■ When passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

■ Through a low bridge

You drive under a low or narrow bridge.

■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects, such as a traffic sign and guard rail, on a curve.

■ When parking

Your vehicle approaches a stationary vehicle or wall.

☒ City-Brake Active system

Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the laser sensor or area around it to be repaired, or removed, or the area around the laser sensor is strongly impacted.

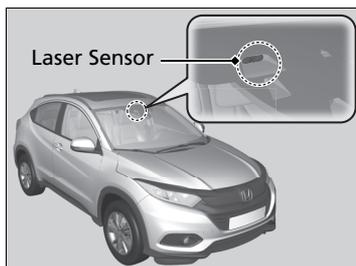
Do not alter your vehicle's suspension. Changing the vehicle height prevents the system to work properly.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre for all four wheels. Use the tyres that are all in about the same condition with adequate tread. If not, the system may operate abnormally.

The system may not work properly if:

- Your vehicle has heavy load in the rear.
- Tyres are over- or underinflated.

About the Laser Equipped in the System



The City-Brake Active system unit, including the laser sensor, is located behind the rearview mirror.

Following lists the classified specifications of the laser used in this system according to the IEC requirements. The same information can be found in the IEC60825-1 standard labels.

Laser classification	
Max average power:	45 mW
Pulse duration:	33 ns
Wavelength:	905 nm
Average power angle (horizontal x vertical)	28 x 12

Laser Classification Label

INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION
DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH
OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS (MAGNIFIERS)
CLASS 1M LASER PRODUCT

Laser Explanation Label

Max average power: 45 mW
Pulse duration: 33 ns
Wavelength: 905 nm

IEC 60825-1:2007
Complies with FDA performance standards for laser products
except for deviations pursuant to Laser Notice No. 50, dated
July 26th, 2001

City-Brake Active system

⚠WARNING

Handling the laser sensor improperly can lead to eye injury.

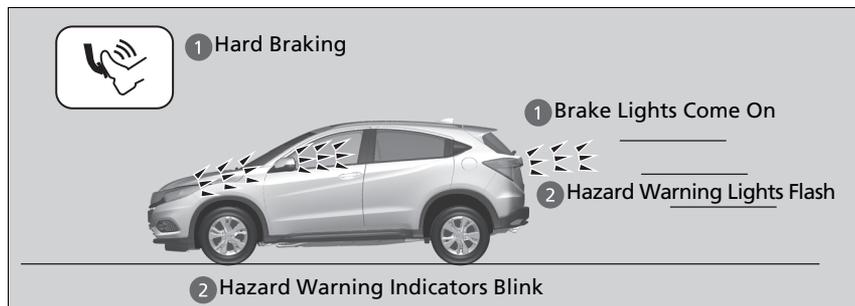
To avoid eye injury, Keep the following:

- Do not take the sensor apart from the unit.
- Never look at the sensor within a 100 mm distance using an optical device, such as a magnified glass, microscopes, and an object lens.

▶▶ Braking ▶ Emergency Stop Signal

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h (37 mph) or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

▶ Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period of the during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.

Continuously variable transmission models

3. Change the shift position to **P**.

Manual transmission models

3. Move the shift lever to **R** or **1**.

Diesel models

4. Keep idling the engine for about 10 seconds.

All models

5. Turn off the engine.
 - ▶ The electric parking brake indicator goes off in about 15 seconds.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

▶ Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

▶ When Stopped

Continuously variable transmission models

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

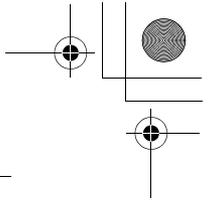
NOTICE

Continuously variable transmission models

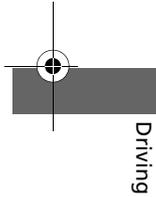
The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

Continued



▶▶ Parking Your Vehicle ▶ When Stopped

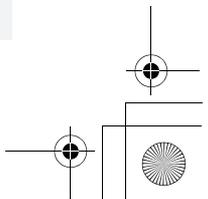
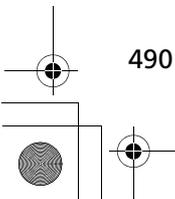
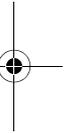


▶▶ When Stopped

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Diesel models

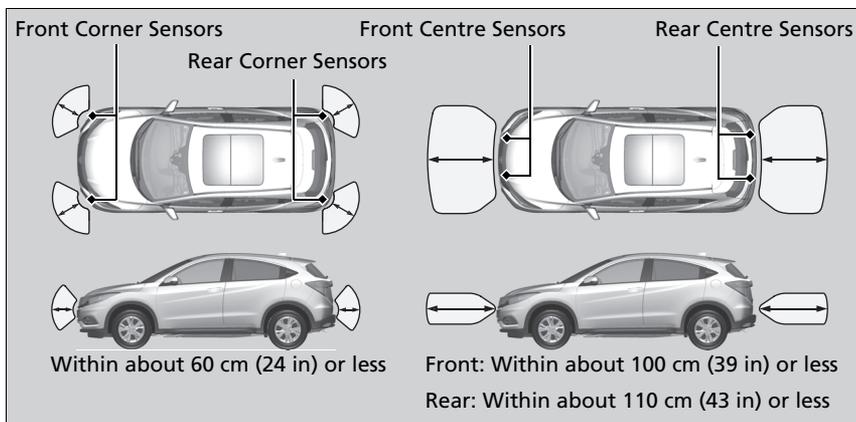
Keep idling the engine for a few minutes if your vehicle has towed a trailer.
The engine idling may be prohibited in some countries. Check and follow your local legal requirements.



Parking Sensor System*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles near your vehicle, and the beeper, audio/information screen and multi-information display let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



☒ Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

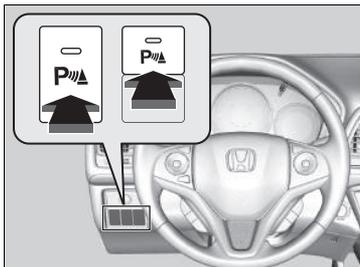
Driving

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Parking Your Vehicle ▶▶ Parking Sensor System*

■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the ignition switch in ON **II***1, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in any position other than **P** or **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The front corner, rear corner and rear centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

Manual transmission models

You also need to release the parking brake.

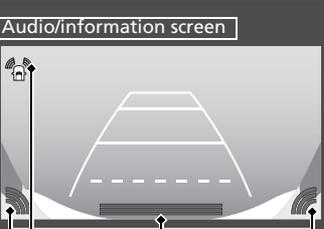
▶▶ Parking sensor system on and off

When you turn the ignition switch to ON **II***1, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

Driving

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the bumper and obstacle		Indicator	Audio/information screen Multi-information display
	Corner sensors	Centre sensors		
Moderate	—	Front: About 100-60 cm (39-24 inches) Rear: About 110-60 cm (43-24 inches)	Blinks in yellow*1	 <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>
Short	About 60-45 cm (24-18 inches)	About 60-45 cm (24-18 inches)	Blinks in amber	
Very short	About 45-35 cm (18-14 inches)	About 45-35 cm (18-14 inches)		
Continuous	About 35 cm (14 inches) or less	About 35 cm (14 inches) or less	Blinks in red	 <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>

*1: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

Driving

▶▶ Parking Your Vehicle ▶ Parking Sensor System *

■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***1.
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and turn the ignition switch to ON **II***1.
3. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button blinks.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
 - ▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

Driving

▶▶ Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you put the transmission into **R**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

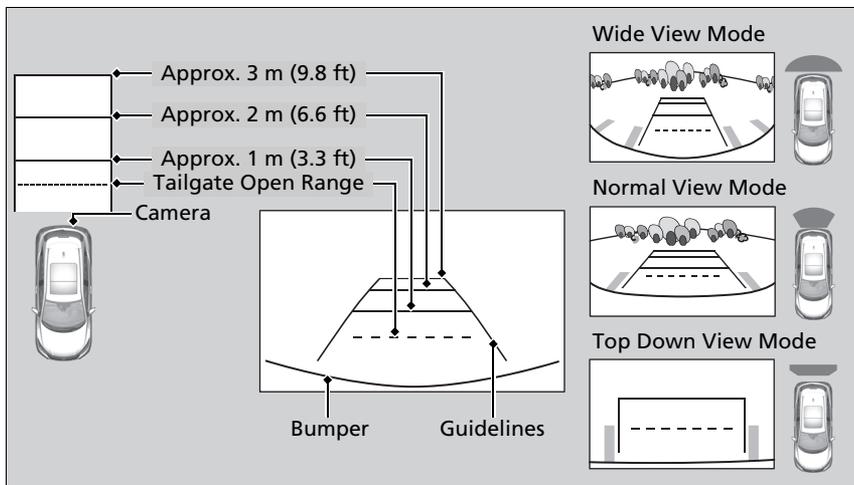
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Multi-View Rear Camera *

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into **R**.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Multi-View Rear Camera* ▶▶ About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.

- : Wide view mode
- : Normal view mode
- : Top down view mode

- If the last used viewing mode was Wide or Normal view mode, the same mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If Top down view mode was last used before you turned off the engine, Wide view mode is selected next time you turn the ignition switch to ON **II***1 and put the transmission into **R**.

Driving

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

When you select the  icon while the multi-view rear camera is displayed, you can customize the following items:

- **Fixed Guideline**

On: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into **R**.

Off: Guidelines do not appear.

- **Dynamic Guideline**

On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

Off: Guidelines do not move.

- **Display**

You can change the **Brightness, Contrast, Black Level, Colour, and Tint** settings for the multi-view rear camera display.

You can also change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings with the customized features.

 **Customized Features** P. 345

Refueling

Petrol models

Fuel Information

Fuel recommendation

EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel
Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded petrol with a research octane of 95 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher may be used temporarily.

Use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 50 L (11.0 Imp gal)**

Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems



Oxygenated Fuels

Oxygenated fuels are blended with petrol and ethanol or ether compound. Your vehicle is also designed to operate on oxygenated fuels containing up to 10% ethanol by volume and up to 22% ETBE by volume, based on the EN 228 standards. For more information, ask your dealer.

▶▶ Refueling ▶ Fuel Information

Diesel models

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

EN 590 standard diesel fuel

Select the proper fuel of clean and good quality according to the regional and climate condition. Use of improper fuel can reduce engine power.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 50 L (11.0 Imp gal)

Driving

▶ Fuel Information

NOTICE

Serious damage may occur if petrol is used in diesel engines.

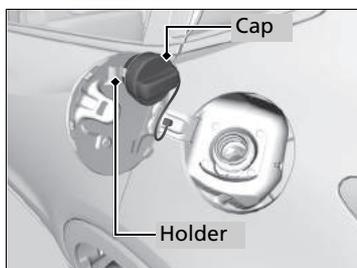
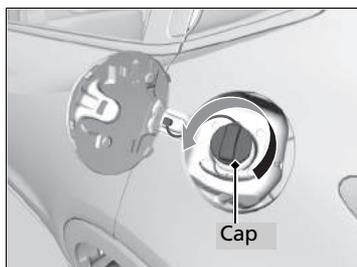
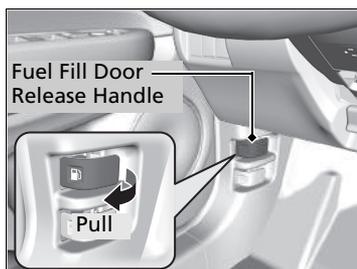
Your vehicle is not designed to use Biodiesel (pure or high concentration more than specified by EN590). Consult a dealer for more information.

Never use the heating oil and marine diesel fuel.

We recommend to replace the fuel filter before starting to drive if you have parked your vehicle for an extended period. The fuel filter may become clogged earlier than usual.



Petrol models

How to Refuel

1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
 - ▶ The fuel fill door opens.
4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the filler nozzle fully.
 - ▶ When the tank is full, the fuel nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
 - ▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

⚠ WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

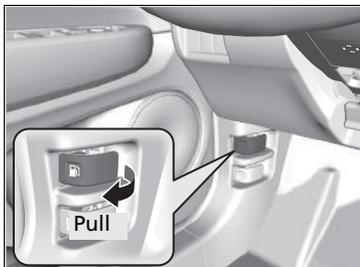
Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

▶▶ Refueling ▶ How to Refuel

Diesel models

How to Refuel

Your fuel tank is not equipped with a fuel filler cap. You can insert the diesel fuel filler nozzle directly into the fuel filler neck. The tank seals itself again when you pull out the filler nozzle.



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
 - ▶ The fuel fill door opens.

Driving

▶▶ How to Refuel

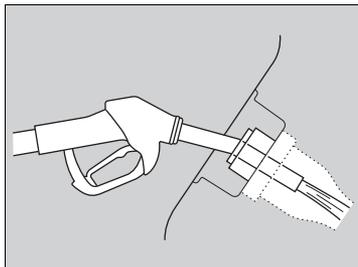
WARNING

Fuel is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The fuel filler opening is designed to accept only service station filler nozzles for refueling. Use of smaller diameter tubes (e.g., those used to siphon fuel for other uses) or other non-service station devices can damage the area in and around the filler opening.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.



4. Place the end of the filler nozzle on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
 - ▶ Make sure that the end of the filler nozzle goes down along with the filler pipe.
 - ▶ Keep the filler nozzle level.
 - ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically.
 - ▶ After filling, wait about 10 seconds before removing the filler nozzle.
5. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

If you have to refuel your vehicle from a portable container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container P. 648

Check if you have picked up the right nozzle. When you cannot insert the filler nozzle even though it is for diesel fuel, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO₂ emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet. On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the Maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 519

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

Recommended Engine Oil P. 534

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Driving

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Miles driven	÷	Gallons of fuel	=	Miles per Gallon		

Turbo Engine Vehicle*

Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.
- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the maintenance schedule. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 700°C. It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

* Not available on all models

☒ Turbo Engine Vehicle*

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the engine oil and filter is indicated on the multi-information display. Follow the information of when to replace them.

☒ **Service Reminder System*** P. 509

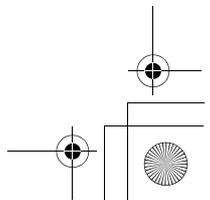
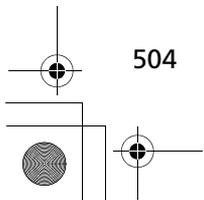
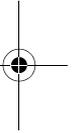
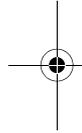
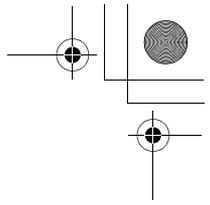
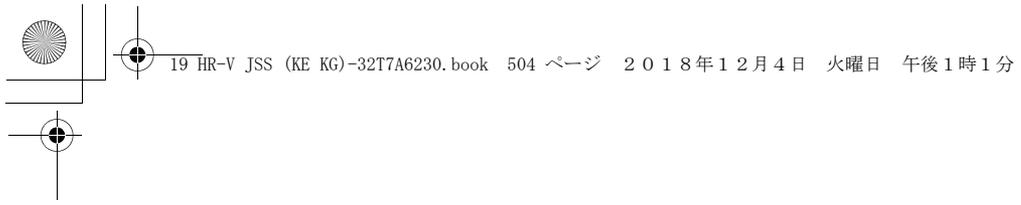
☒ **Oil Monitor System*** P. 514

☒ **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 519

☒ **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 534

The high temperature indicator may come on when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The indicator goes off after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

Driving



Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance	506
Safety When Performing Maintenance	507
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service	508
About Your Maintenance Service	508
Service Reminder System*	509
Oil Monitor System*	514
Maintenance Schedule*	519
Maintenance Under the Bonnet	
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet..	530
Opening the Bonnet	533
Recommended Engine Oil	534, 538

Oil Check.....	540
Adding Engine Oil.....	542
Engine Coolant.....	543, 545, 547
Transmission Fluid.....	549
Brake/Clutch* Fluid	550
Refilling Window Washer Fluid.....	551
Fuel Filter	552
Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)	
Regeneration*	553
Replacing Light Bulbs	555
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades	565
Checking and Maintaining Tyres	
Checking Tyres	569

Wear Indicators	570
Tyre Service Life	570
Tyre and Wheel Replacement.....	571
Tyre Rotation	572
Snow Traction Devices	573
Battery	575
Remote Transmitter Care	
Replacing the Button Battery	580
Climate Control System Maintenance ...	582
Cleaning	
Interior Care	585
Exterior Care.....	587
Accessories and Modifications	590

* Not available on all models

Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 519

Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake/clutch* fluid level monthly.
 - **Brake/Clutch* Fluid** P. 550
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 569
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
 - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 555
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 565

Maintenance

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
 - ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
 - ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
 - ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
 - ▶ Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function* is activated.

* Not available on all models

⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

▶▶ Before Performing Maintenance ▶▶ Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

About Your Maintenance Service

If the service reminder system is available in your vehicle, you are informed by the multi-information display when your vehicle's maintenance services are due. Refer to the service book that came with your vehicle for an explanation of the service item codes that appear on the display.

📖 **Service Reminder System*** P. 509

If the service reminder system is not available, follow the maintenance schedules in the service book that came with your vehicle.

If your vehicle is without the service book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

📖 **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 519

Maintenance

▶▶ Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

Petrol models with turbocharger

Diesel models

NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

▶▶ About Your Maintenance Service

Models with service reminder system

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer for how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

Service Reminder System*

Provides information of which service items are to be performed. Service items are represented by a code and icon. The system tells you when to take your vehicle to a dealer by days remaining.

When the next maintenance service timing is near, coming or passed, a warning icon will also appear on the multi-information display every time you turn the ignition switch to ON *1.

Service Reminder System*

You can choose to have a corresponding warning message displayed with the warning icon on the multi-information display.

The maintenance schedule may not display correct information if you disconnect or remove the battery for an extended period. If this occurs, see a dealer.

Maintenance

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

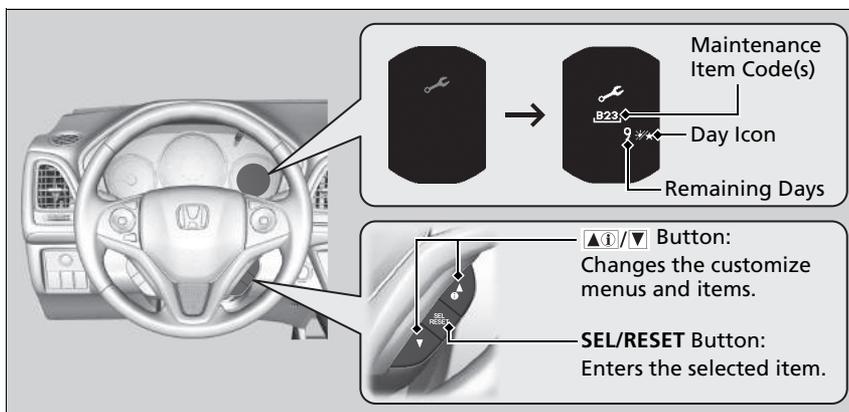
* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Service Reminder System* ▶▶

■ Displaying the Service Reminder Information

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
2. Press the /▼ (information) button repeatedly until the maintenance item(s) appears on the multi-information display.



The system message indicator (i) comes on along with the service reminder Information.

▶▶ Displaying the Service Reminder Information

Based on engine operating conditions and engine oil conditions, the system calculates the remaining days before the next service is to be performed.

Maintenance

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Warning Icons and Service Reminder Information on the Multi-Information Display

Warning Icon (Amber)	Service Reminder Information	Explanation	Information
<p>SERVICE DUE SOON</p> 		<p>One or more of the service items are required in less than 30 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.</p>	<p>The remaining days will be counted down per day.</p>
<p>SERVICE DUE NOW</p> 		<p>One or more of the service items are required in less than 10 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.</p>	<p>Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible.</p>
<p>SERVICE OVER DUE</p> 		<p>The indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining days reach 0.</p>	<p>Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder.</p>

Maintenance

▶▶ Service Reminder System* ▶

■ Service Reminder Items

Service items displayed on the multi-information display are in code and icon.
For an explanation of the service reminder codes and icons, refer to the service book that came with your vehicle.

■ Availability of the Service Reminder System

Even if the service reminder information appears on the multi-information display while pressing the /▼ (information) button, this system is not available in some countries. Refer to the service book that came with your vehicle, or ask a dealer if you can use the service reminder system.

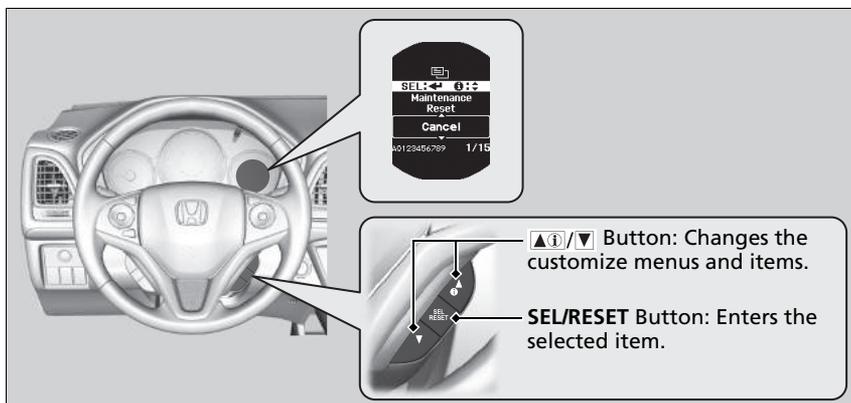
▶▶ Availability of the Service Reminder System

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer on how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

Maintenance

Resetting the Display

Reset the service reminder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
2. Go to the **Maintenance info.** screen.
 **Customized Features** P. 144
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ The service reminder information reset mode is displayed on the multi-information display.
4. Select a service code you want to reset with the  button, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ The service code will disappear.

To cancel the service reminder information reset mode, select **Cancel**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the service reminder information after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the service reminder information display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the service reminder information display yourself.

Oil Monitor System*

Models without service reminder system

Petrol models with turbocharger

The oil monitor system indicator notifies you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

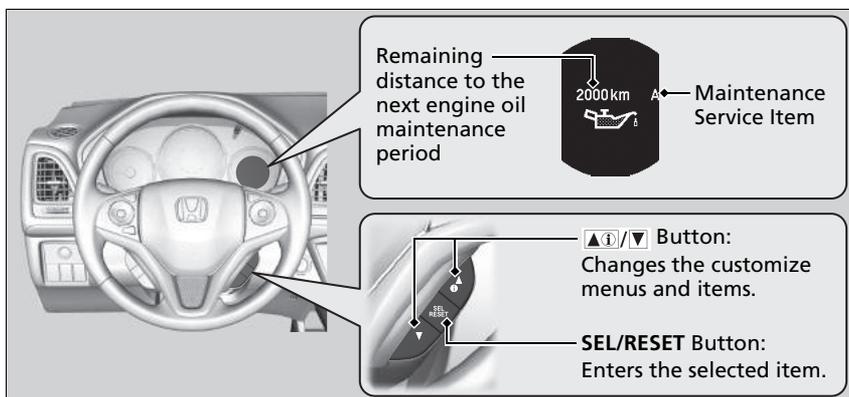
Maintenance

514 * Not available on all models

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the multi-information display.

You can view them on the oil monitor system information screen at any time.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
2. Press the (information) button repeatedly until the maintenance item(s) appears on the multi-information display.

The system message indicator () stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

The type and content of the maintenance service items are as follows:

- A. Replace engine oil
- B. Replace engine oil and oil filter

Independent of the oil monitor system information, perform maintenance after 1 year has elapsed since the last oil change.

Maintenance

Continued

▶▶ Oil Monitor System ▶▶ Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Oil Monitor System Information on the Multi-Information Display

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
<p>NORMAL</p>		<p>When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change, or the next oil and filter change.</p>
		<p>When you select the oil monitor system information screen, the remaining engine oil life, or the remaining engine oil and oil filter life is displayed.</p>

Maintenance

▶▶ Oil Monitor System* ▶ Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

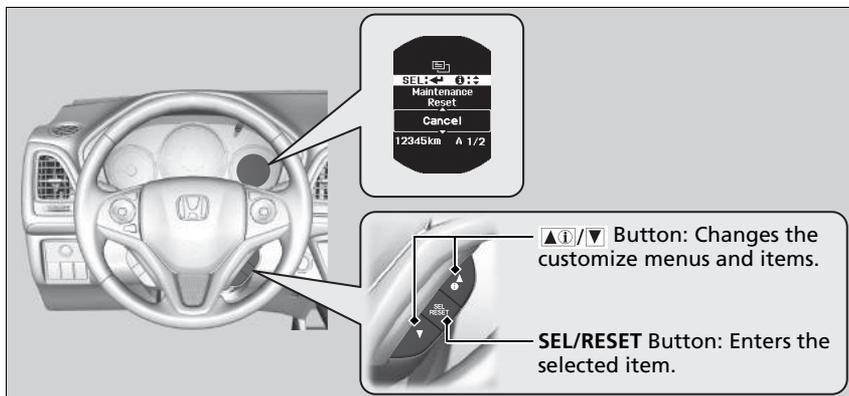
Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
<p>SERVICE DUE SOON</p> 		<p>The engine oil, or the oil filter and engine oil are approaching the end of their life.</p>
<p>SERVICE DUE NOW</p> 		<p>The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have almost reached the end of their service life, and the maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.</p>
<p>SERVICE OVER DUE</p> 		<p>The engine oil, or the oil filter and engine oil have passed their service life. The maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced immediately.</p>

Maintenance

▶▶Oil Monitor System▶▶Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
 2. Go to the **Maintenance info.** screen.
Customized Features P. 144
 3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ The reset mode is displayed on the multi-information display.
 4. Select **Reset** with the button, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ The service code will disappear.
- To cancel the reset mode, select **Cancel**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

Maintenance Schedule*

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule*▶▶

Petrol models

Except European and Ukrainian models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		miles X 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil*1	Models without turbocharger	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
		Severe	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months									
	Models with turbocharger	When indicator comes on or 1 year										
Replace engine oil filter*1	Models without turbocharger	Normal	Every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 2 years									
		Severe	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
	Models with turbocharger	When indicator comes on or 2 years										
Add genuine injector cleaner agent*2	Direct injection models	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year										
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km (18,500 miles)										
Inspect valve clearance		Every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)*3										
Replace fuel filter	Normal				•					•		
	Severe	Every 40,000 km (25,000 miles) or 2 years*4										
Replace spark plugs	Iridium type	Every 100,000 km (62,500 miles)										
Inspect drive belts			•		•		•		•			•
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km (125,000 miles) or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km (62,500 miles) or 5 years										

*1: Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to the local warranty booklet.

*2: Regular use of injector cleaner may be required for models designated for the following countries, it will depend on the quality of the fuel used. Consult your dealer for details: Reunion and Canary Islands.

*3: Sensory Method

Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km (75,000 miles) if they are noisy.

*4: It is recommended to replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule ▶▶

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles X 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid	MT Normal	Every 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 6 years									
	Severe			•			•			•	
	CVT		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years										
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Check expiry date for Tyre Repair Kit bottle*	Every year										
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)										
Visually inspect the following items:											
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots											
Suspension components	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Driveshaft boots											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Fuel lines and connections		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Maintenance

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule* ▶▶

Petrol models

Ukrainian models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000 months	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180	195
		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144	156
Replace engine oil	Models without turbocharger	Normal	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
	Severe	Every 7,500 km or 6 months												
	Models with turbocharger	When indicator comes on or 1 year												
Replace engine oil filter	Models without turbocharger	Normal	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
	Severe	Every 7,500 km or 6 months												
	Models with turbocharger	When indicator comes on or 2 years												
Replace air cleaner element	Every 30,000 km													
Inspect valve clearance*1	Every 120,000 km													
Replace fuel filter	Normal						•						•	
	Severe*2			•			•			•			•	
Replace spark plugs	Every 120,000 km (Inspect: 15,000 km)													
Inspect drive belts	• • • • • • • • • • • • • •													
Replace engine coolant	At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years													

*1: Sensory method

Adjust the valves during services 120,000 km if they are noisy.

*2: It is recommended to replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Maintenance

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule ▶▶

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180	195	
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144	156	
Replace transmission fluid	MT	Every 60,000 km or 4 years													
	CVT			•			•			•			•		
Inspect front and rear brakes		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years													
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Check lights alignment		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Test drive (noise, stability, dashboard operation)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Check expiry date for Tyre Repair Kit bottle*		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 15,000 km													
Visually inspect the following items:															
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots															
Suspension components															
Driveshaft boots															
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
All fluid levels and condition of fluid															
Exhaust system															
Fuel lines and connections															

Maintenance

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule* ▶▶

Petrol models

Except European models

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid*1	MT B and D

*1:Except Ukrainian models

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule*

Petrol models

Except European models

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

- A. Less than 8 km (5 miles), or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. With a trailer towing, or loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

Maintenance

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule ▶▶

Diesel models

Except European models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles X 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace air cleaner element	Every 30,000 km (18,500 miles)										
Replace fuel filter	Every 30,000 km (18,500 miles)										
Inspect drive belts			•		•	•			•		•
Replace engine coolant						•			•		

Maintenance

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule* ▶▶

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000		20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles X 1,000		12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid	MT	Normal						•				
		Severe			•			•			•	
Inspect front and rear brakes			Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Replace dust and pollen filter			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Check expiry date for Tyre Repair Kit bottle*			Every year									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)									
Visually inspect the following items:												
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots			Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months									
Suspension components			Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months									
Driveshaft boots			Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Fuel lines and connections			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Maintenance

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule* ▶

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E
Manual transmission fluid	B and D

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule*

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

- A. Less than 8 km (5 miles), or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. With a trailer towing, or loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

Maintenance

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule ▶▶ Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Except European and Ukrainian models

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

Km (Mi.) or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km 12,500 Mi. (or 12 Mo.)		
40,000 km 25,000 Mi. (or 24 Mo.)		
60,000 km 37,500 Mi. (or 36 Mo.)		
80,000 km 50,000 Mi. (or 48 Mo.)		
100,000 km 62,500 Mi. (or 60 Mo.)		
120,000 km 75,000 Mi. (or 72 Mo.)		
140,000 km 87,500 Mi. (or 84 Mo.)		
160,000 km 100,000 Mi. (or 96 Mo.)		
180,000 km 112,500 Mi. (or 108 Mo.)		
200,000 km 125,000 Mi. (or 120 Mo.)		

Maintenance

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule* ▶▶ Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Ukrainian models

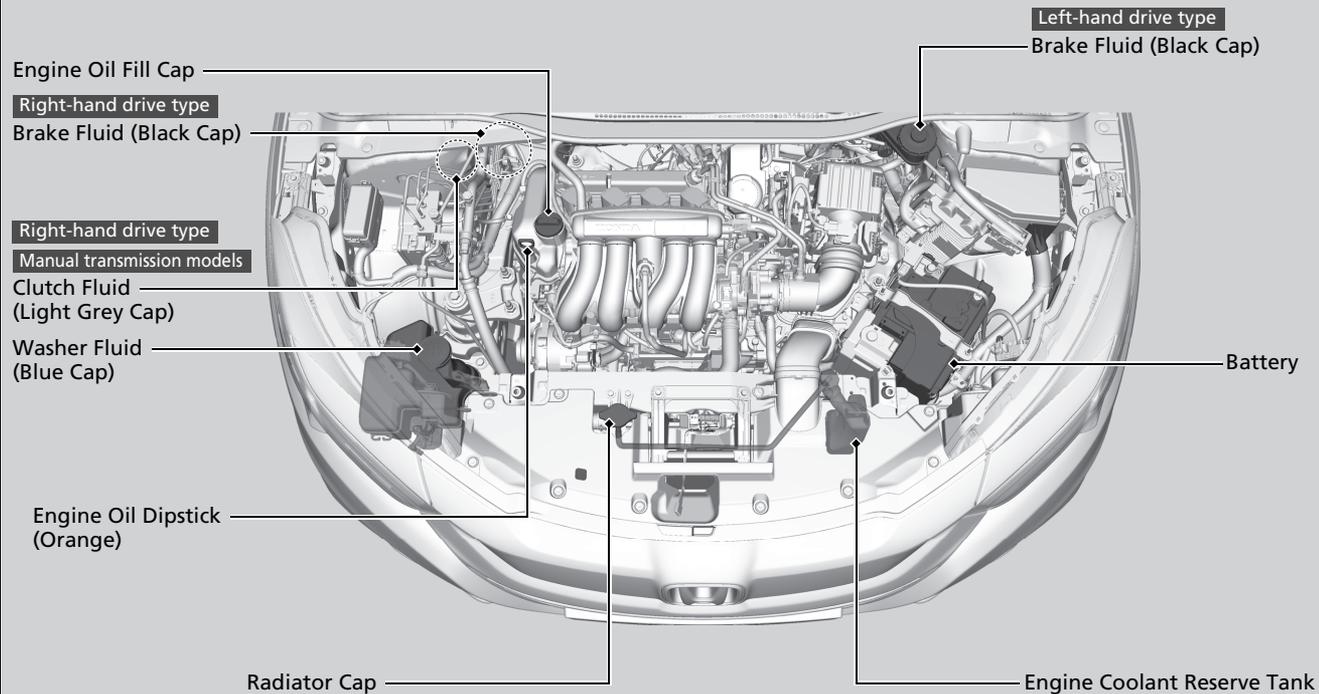
Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
15,000 km (or 12 Mo.)		
30,000 km (or 24 Mo.)		
45,000 km (or 36 Mo.)		
60,000 km (or 48 Mo.)		
75,000 km (or 60 Mo.)		
90,000 km (or 72 Mo.)		
105,000 km (or 84 Mo.)		
120,000 km (or 96 Mo.)		
135,000 km (or 108 Mo.)		
150,000 km (or 120 Mo.)		
165,000 km (or 132 Mo.)		
180,000 km (or 144 Mo.)		
195,000 km (or 156 Mo.)		

Maintenance

Maintenance Under the Bonnet

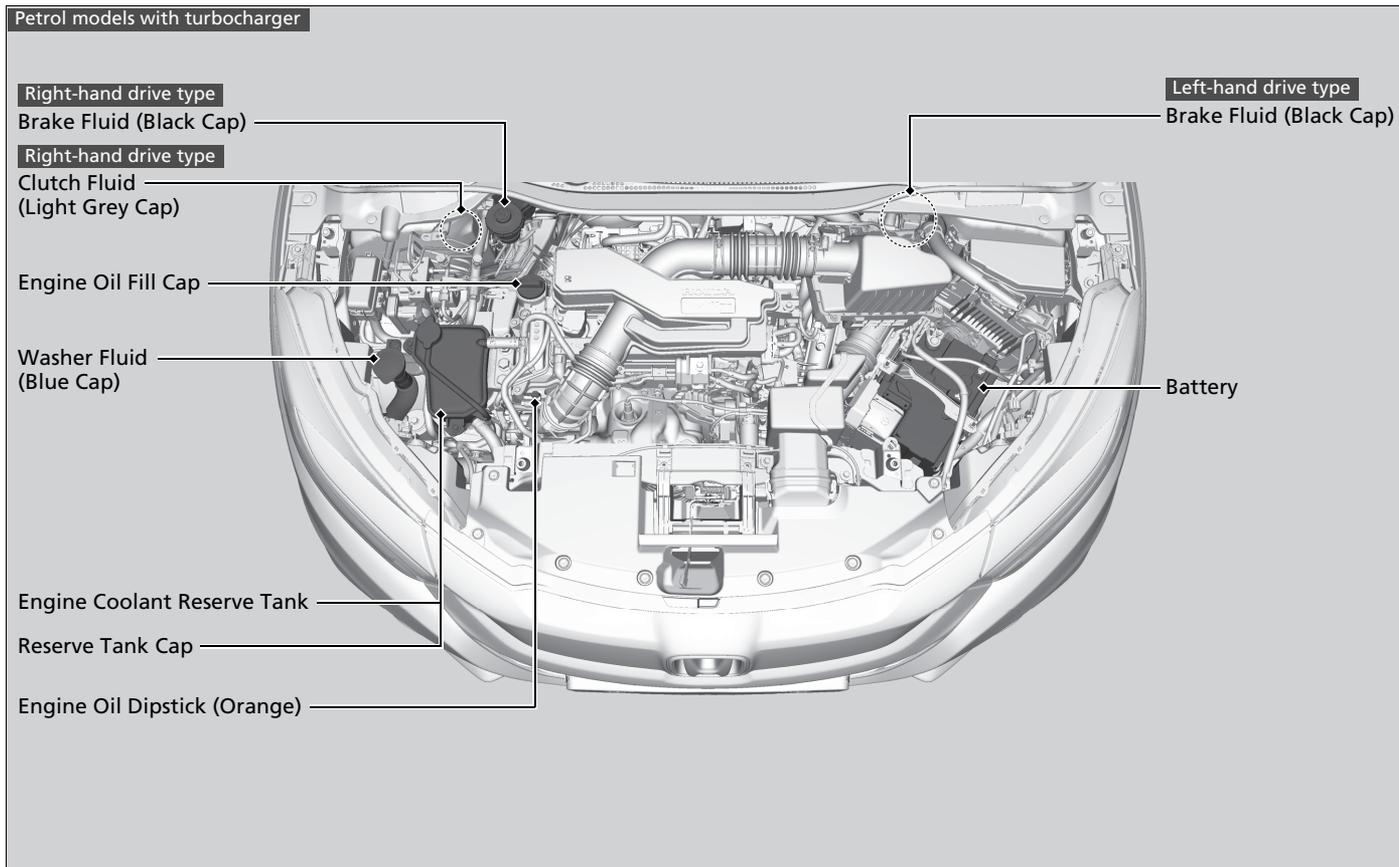
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

Petrol models without turbocharger



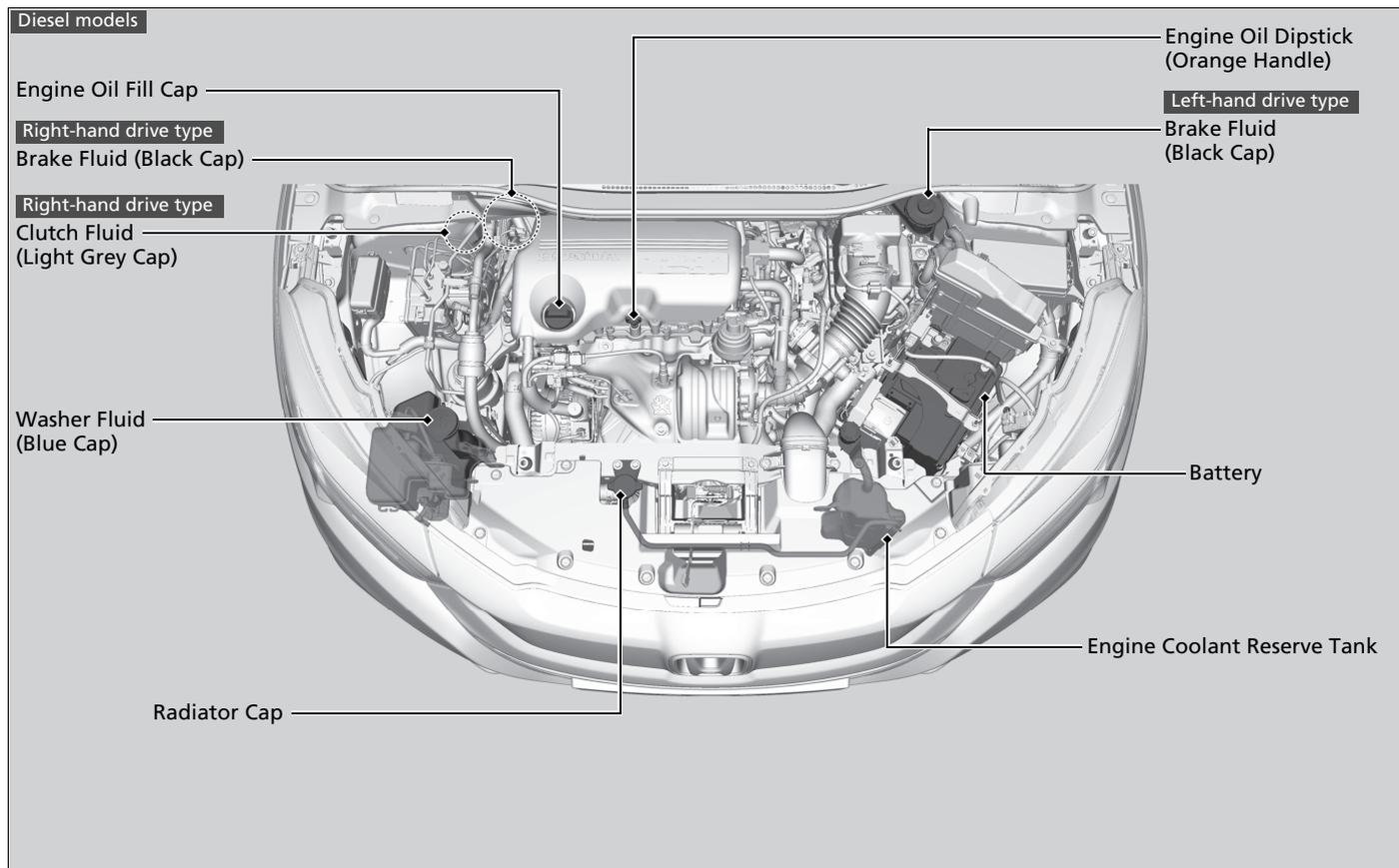
Maintenance

▶▶ Maintenance Under the Bonnet ▶▶ Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



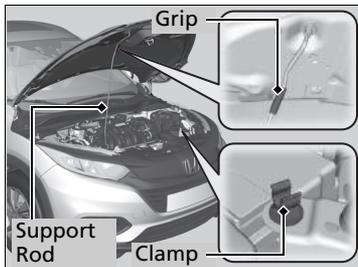
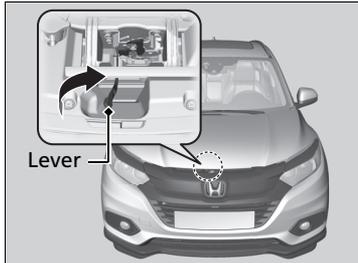
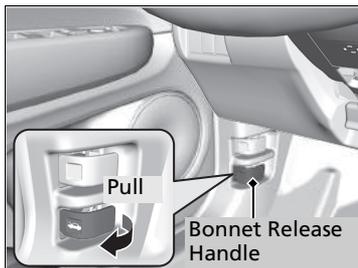
Maintenance

▶▶ Maintenance Under the Bonnet ▶▶ Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



Maintenance

Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.

3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm (12 inches) and let the bonnet close.

▶▶ Opening the Bonnet

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

Petrol models with turbocharger

Diesel models

NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

▶▶ Maintenance Under the Bonnet ▶ Recommended Engine Oil

Petrol models

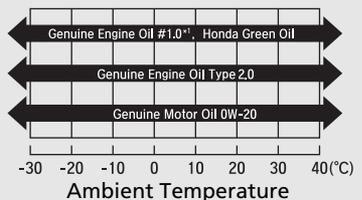
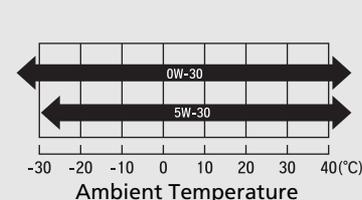
Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Models without turbocharger

European and Ukrainian models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Honda Engine Oil #1.0*1 • Honda Green Oil • Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0 • Honda Genuine Motor Oil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ACEA C2/C3
	

*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

▶ Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

Models without turbocharger

Except European and Ukrainian models

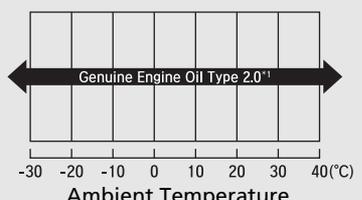
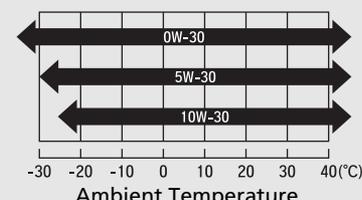
Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Honda Engine Oil #1.0*1 • Honda Green Oil • Honda Genuine Motor Oil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ACEA C2/C3

*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

▶▶ Maintenance Under the Bonnet ▶▶ Recommended Engine Oil

Models with turbocharger

European and Ukrainian models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Genuine Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0*1	<ul style="list-style-type: none">ACEA C2/C3
	

*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Maintenance

Models with turbocharger

Except European and Ukrainian models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Genuine Honda Motor Oil*1 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACEA C2/C3
<p style="text-align: center;">Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20*1</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Ambient Temperature</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">0W-30</p> <p style="text-align: center;">5W-30</p> <p style="text-align: center;">10W-30</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Ambient Temperature</p>

*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

▶▶ Maintenance Under the Bonnet ▶ Recommended Engine Oil

Diesel models

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

European models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Honda DIESEL Oil #1.0*1 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ACEA C2/C3
<p style="text-align: center;">-30 -20 -10 0 10 20 30 40(°C) Ambient Temperature</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">-30 -20 -10 0 10 20 30 40(°C) Ambient Temperature</p>

*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

▶ Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Except European models

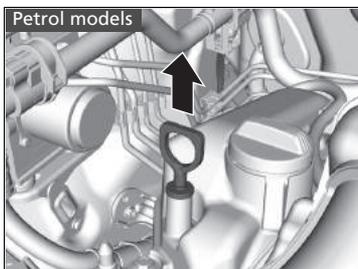
Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Honda DIESEL Oil #1.0*1 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ACEA C2/C3
<p>Ambient Temperature</p>	<p>Ambient Temperature</p>

*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

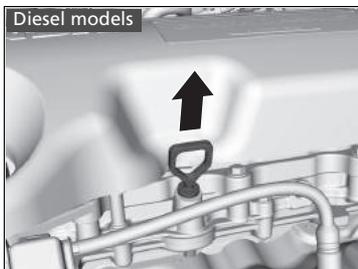
▶▶ Maintenance Under the Bonnet ▶▶ Oil Check

Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel. Park the vehicle on level ground. Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



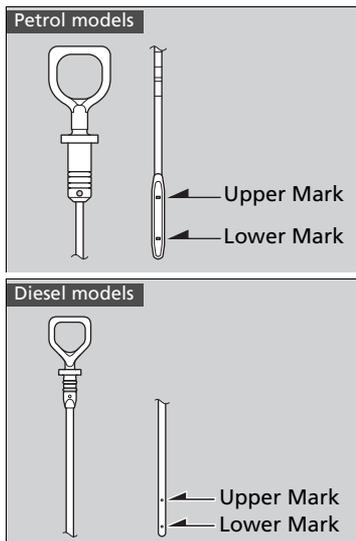
1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

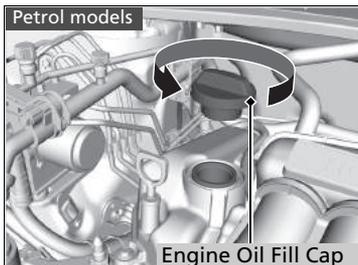
The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km/625 miles. Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

▶▶ Maintenance Under the Bonnet ▶ Adding Engine Oil

Adding Engine Oil



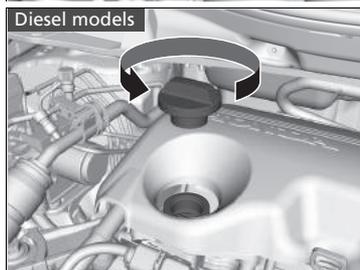
1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

▶▶ Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.



Petrol models without turbocharger

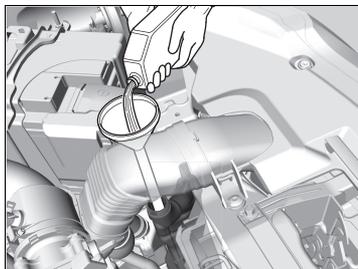
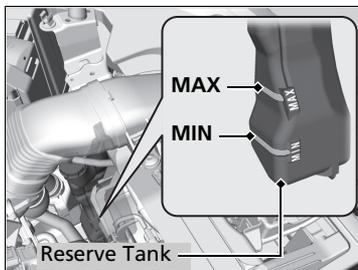
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
 - ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

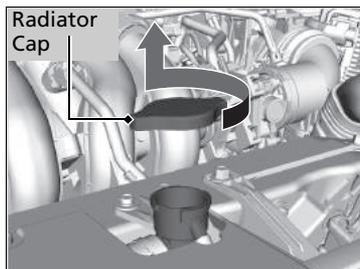
If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued

►► Maintenance Under the Bonnet ► Engine Coolant

Radiator



- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anti-clockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anti-clockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

►► Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Petrol models with turbocharger

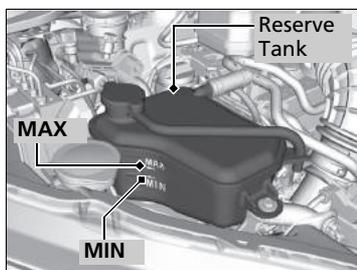
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Checking the Coolant



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
 - ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠ WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

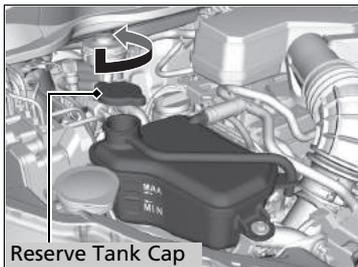
If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued

▶▶ Maintenance Under the Bonnet ▶ Engine Coolant

■ Adding the Coolant



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8 turn anti-clockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the reserve tank cap anti-clockwise to remove it.
4. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
5. Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

▶▶ Adding the Coolant

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Diesel models

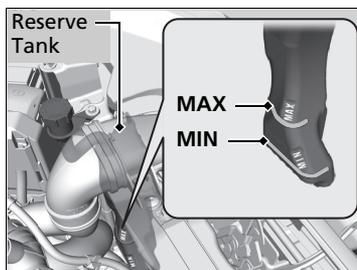
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



1. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
2. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

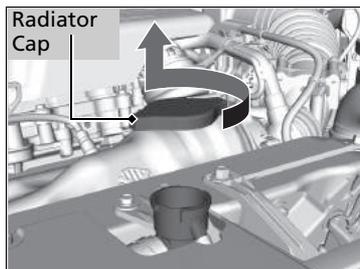
Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's coolant system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Maintenance

Continued

▶▶ Maintenance Under the Bonnet ▶ Engine Coolant

Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anti-clockwise and relieve any pressure in the coolant system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anti-clockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.
6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

▶▶ Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

Continuously variable transmission models

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary. Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 519

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

Manual transmission models

Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda MTF

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary. Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change manual transmission fluid.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 519

Do not attempt to check or change the manual transmission fluid yourself.

* Not available on all models

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Manual Transmission Fluid

If Honda MTF is not available, you may use the API certified SAE 0W-20 or 5W-20 viscosity motor oil as a temporary measure.

Replace with MTF as soon as possible. Motor oil does not contain the proper additives for the transmission and continued use can cause decreased shifting performance and lead to transmission damage.

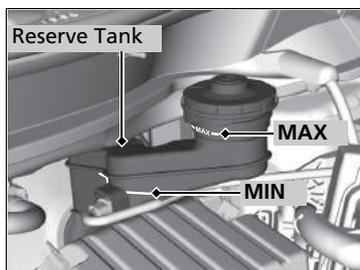
▶▶ Maintenance Under the Bonnet ▶▶ Brake/Clutch* Fluid

Brake/Clutch* Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

Use the same fluid for both the brakes and clutch.

Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Left-hand drive type

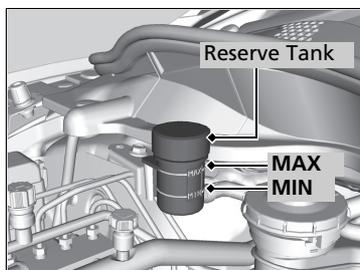
Manual transmission models

The brake fluid reserve tank is also used for your vehicle's clutch fluid. As long as you keep the brake fluid level as instructed above, there is no need for checking the clutch fluid level.

Right-hand drive type

Manual transmission models

Checking the Clutch Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

550 * Not available on all models

▶▶ Brake/Clutch* Fluid

NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

▶▶ Checking the Clutch Fluid

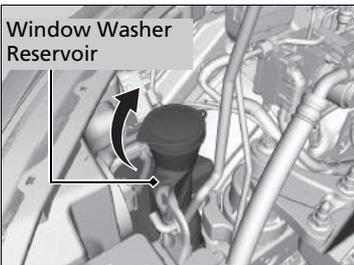
If the clutch fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or an excessively worn clutch plate as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Petrol models without turbocharger

Diesel models

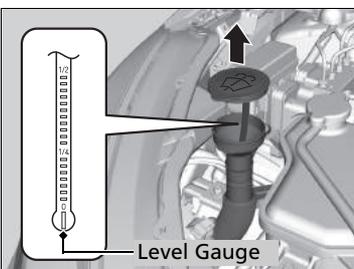
Window Washer Reservoir



Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Petrol models with turbocharger



Check the amount of window washer fluid using the washer fluid level gauge on the cap.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

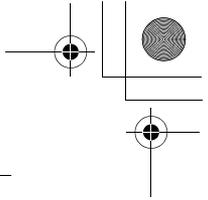
All models

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

▶▶ Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump. Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid. Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.



▶▶ Maintenance Under the Bonnet ▶ Fuel Filter

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

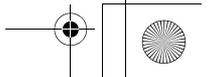
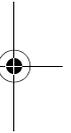
Fuel Filter

Models with service reminder system

The fuel filter should be replaced according to the service reminder indication.



Maintenance



Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Regeneration*

Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

Collects PM (particulate matter) from the exhaust gas. The DPF is installed in the catalytic converter.

How the DPF Works

The DPF periodically burns off the collected PM while driving at a high temperature of catalytic converter.

When PM is burned off, you may notice white smoke in the exhaust gas, and the increase in the average fuel consumption. This is temporary, and normal.

ⓧ Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

The DPF must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. It can set on fire any combustible materials that come near it. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.

* Not available on all models

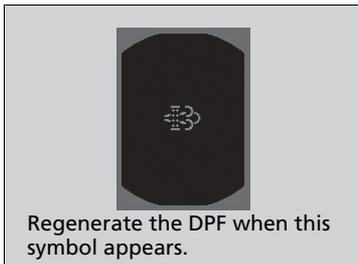
Continued

Maintenance

553

▶▶ Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Regeneration* ▶ Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

Regenerating DPF



If you see  on the multi-information display, you need to regenerate the DPF:

- Drive your vehicle at a speed of 60 km/h (37 mph) or over until the symbol disappears.
 - ▶ It takes about 20 minutes to increase the catalytic converter temperature to burn out and remove PM.



Maintenance

Regenerating DPF

NOTICE

If you ignore the symbol and do not regenerate the DPF, the multi-information display changes to the DPF warning symbol. If this happens, take your vehicle to a dealer as soon as possible. Continuously ignoring the multi-information display warning symbol causes the DPF to be clogged with PM, seriously damaging the DPF and emission control systems.

To minimize the accumulation of PM, always use the recommended diesel fuel.

➤ **Fuel recommendation** P. 498

PM is accumulated in the catalytic converter when you drive at a low speed for a long period of time or by frequent short journeys.

Replacing Light Bulbs

Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Models with halogen headlights

High beam headlight: 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)

Low beam headlight: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)

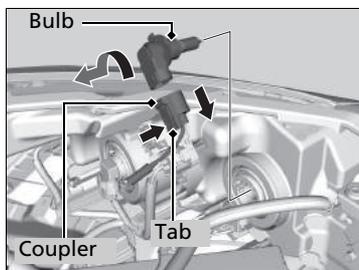
Models with LED headlights

High beam headlight: LED type

Low beam headlight: LED type

High Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights



1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Continued

Headlight Bulbs

Models with halogen headlights

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

All models

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with halogen headlights

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

High Beam Headlights

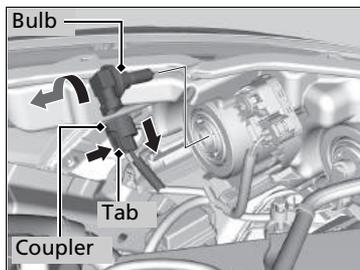
Models with LED headlights

High beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

▶▶ Replacing Light Bulbs ▶ Headlight Bulbs

Low Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights



1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Low Beam Headlights

Models with LED headlights

Low beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

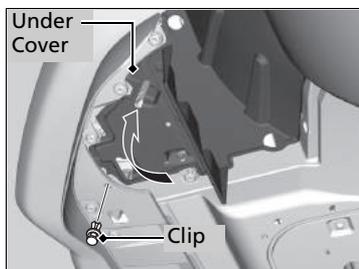
Front Fog Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Fog Light: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)*

Front Fog Light: LED type*

Models with halogen front fog lights



1. Remove the clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, and push up the under cover.

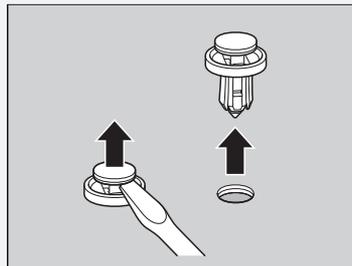
▶▶ Front Fog Light Bulbs*

Models with LED front fog lights

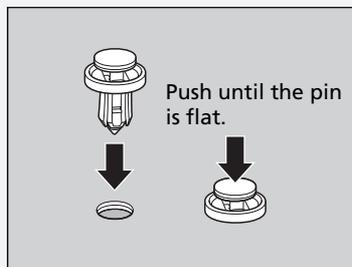
Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Models with halogen front fog lights

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.



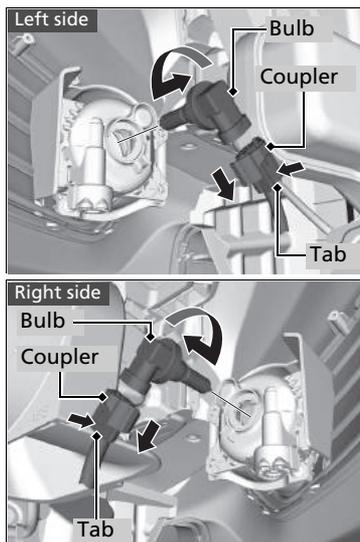
Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.



* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Replacing Light Bulbs ▶ Front Fog Light Bulbs*



2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb to the left on left side and to the right on right side to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it to the right on left side and to the left on right side.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

▶▶ Front Fog Light Bulbs*

Models with halogen front fog lights

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

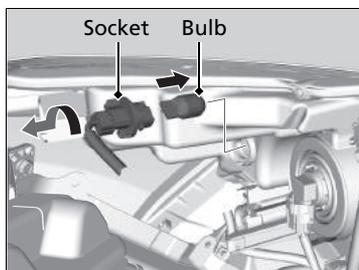
Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)*

Front Turn Signal Light: LED type*

Models with halogen headlights



1. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
2. Pull the bulb straight out of its holder.
3. Insert a new bulb.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Models with LED headlights

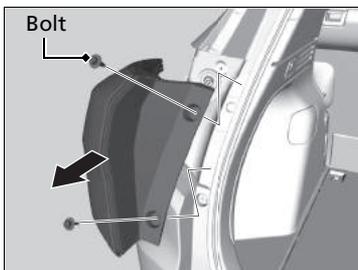
Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

▶▶ Replacing Light Bulbs ▶ Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

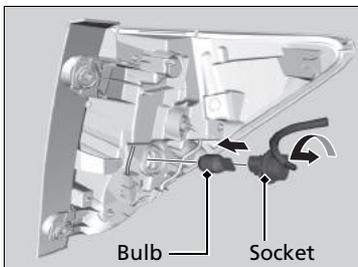
Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the bolts.
2. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



3. Turn the socket to the left and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.
5. Slide the light assembly onto the guide on the body.

Maintenance

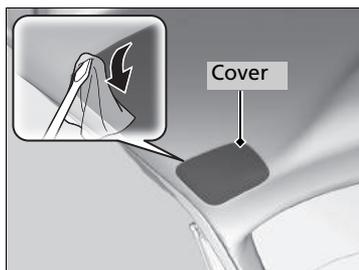
Brake Lights*, Taillights* and Brake/Taillights*

Brake lights, taillights and brake/taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Taillights* and Back-Up Light Bulbs

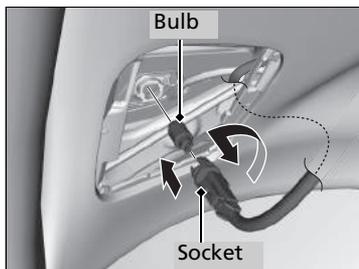
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight*: LED
Back-Up Light: 16 W



1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.

▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



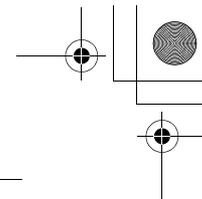
2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.

3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

▶▶ Taillights* and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models



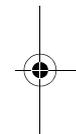
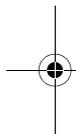
▶▶ Replacing Light Bulbs ▶ High-Mount Brake Light

High-Mount Brake Light

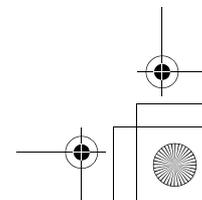
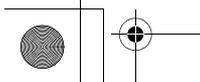
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Lights

Rear licence plate lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



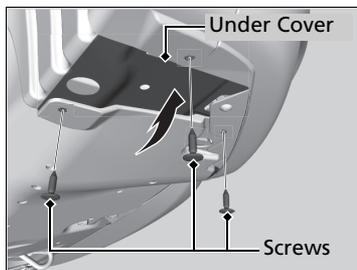
Maintenance



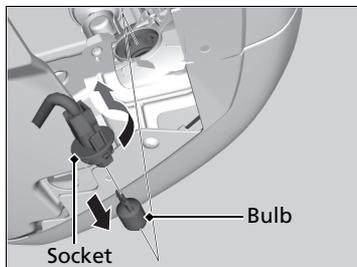
Rear Fog Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Rear Fog Light: 21 W



1. Remove the screws using a Phillips-head screwdriver, then push up the under cover.



2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

▶▶ Replacing Light Bulbs ▶ Other Light Bulbs

Other Light Bulbs

Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs

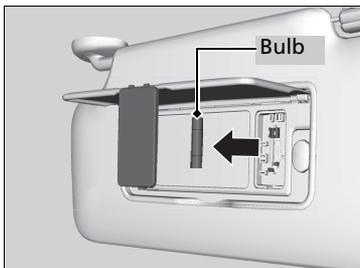
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.

▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

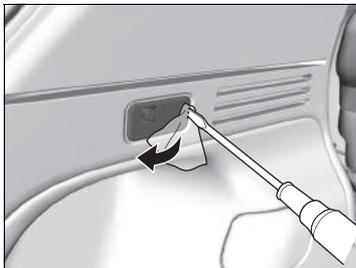


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Luggage Area Light Bulb

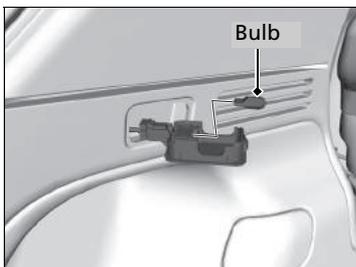
When replacing, use the following bulb.

Luggage Area Light: 5 W



1. Pry on the edge of the light using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the light assembly.

▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



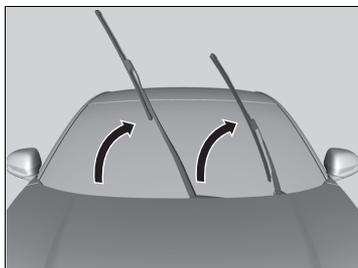
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

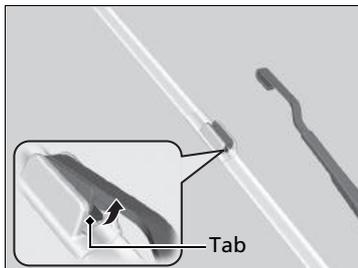
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.



2. Press and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

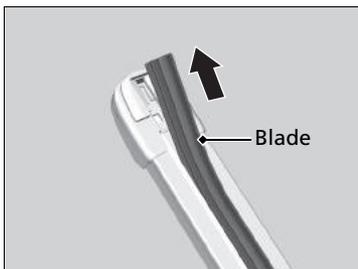
Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

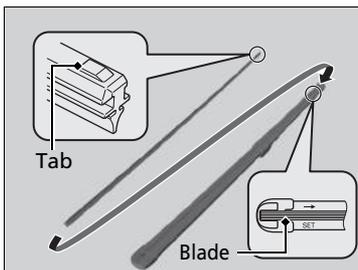
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

Continued

▶▶ Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades ▶ Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



3. Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.



4. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.

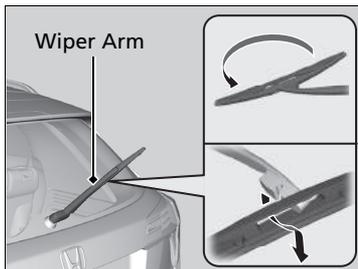
▶ The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.

5. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm securely.

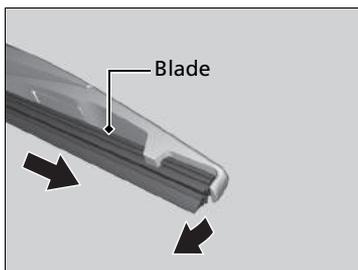
6. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

Maintenance

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.



3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

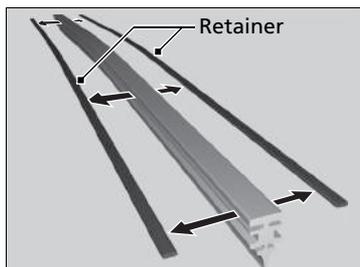
NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.

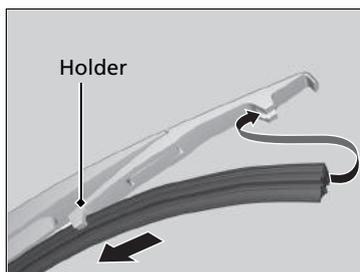
Continued

Maintenance

▶▶ Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades ▶ Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



4. Remove the retainers from the wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

Maintenance

Checking and Maintaining Tyres

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 bar, 1-2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems. Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
 - ▣ **Wear Indicators** P. 570
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

* Not available on all models

▣ Checking Tyres

⚠ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30-40 kPa (0.3-0.4 bar, 4-6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

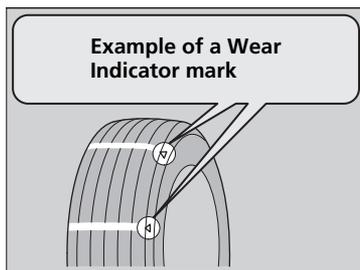
Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

▣ **Deflation Warning System Initialisation**
P. 472

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

▶▶ Checking and Maintaining Tyres ▶▶ Wear Indicators

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.

Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare*, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Maintenance

570 * Not available on all models

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

▶ Tyre and Wheel Replacement

⚠ WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

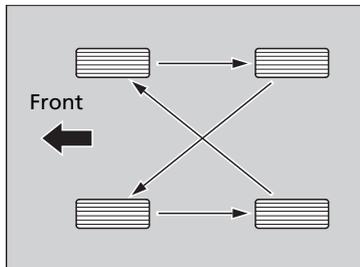
Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

▶▶ Checking and Maintaining Tyres ▶ Tyre Rotation

Tyre Rotation

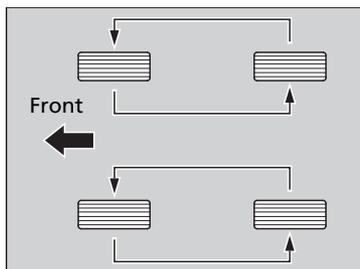
Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

■ Tyres with rotation marks

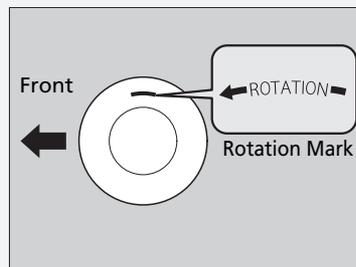


Rotate the tyres as shown here.

Maintenance

▶ Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

▶ **Deflation Warning System Initialisation**
P. 472

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

☒ Snow Traction Devices

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

According to the EEC Directive for tyres, when winter tyres are used, it is necessary to affix a sticker with the allowable max. speed of the winter tyres clearly in the field of view of the driver, if the designed max. speed of vehicle is higher than the allowed max. speed of winter tyre. A sticker is obtainable from your tyre dealer. If you have any question, consult a dealer.

Continued

▶▶ Checking and Maintaining Tyres ▶ Snow Traction Devices

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
215/60R16	RUD-matic classic 48492
215/55R17	RUD-matic classic 48493
225/50R18*2	(Not available)

*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

*2:You cannot mount chains on this tyre. If you have to use tyre chains, replace the tyres with the optional 215/55R17 size tyres.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Maintenance

▶▶ Snow Traction Devices

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

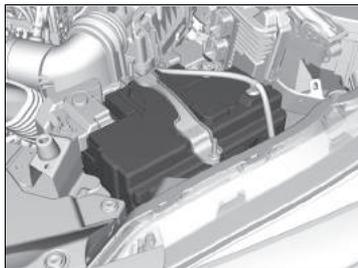
Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Battery

Checking the Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the multi-information display will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
 - **Reactivating the audio system** P. 246
- The clock resets.
 - **Clock** P. 154

ⓘ Battery

⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

▶▶ Battery ▶ Charging the Battery

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative \ominus cable first, and reconnect it last.

⊠ Battery

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

⊠ Models with Auto Idle Stop

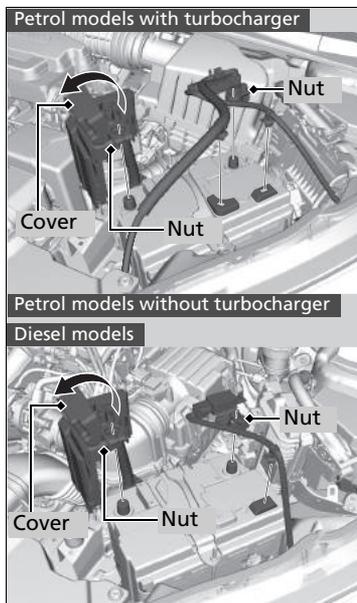
The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

Replacing the Battery

When you remove and replace the battery, always follow the maintenance safety and the warnings for when checking the battery to prevent potential hazards.

▶ **Maintenance Safety** P. 507

▶ **Checking the Battery** P. 575



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]*1. Open the bonnet.
2. Loosen the nut on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative \ominus terminal.
3. Open the positive battery terminal cover. Loosen the nut on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive \oplus terminal.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Replacing the Battery

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

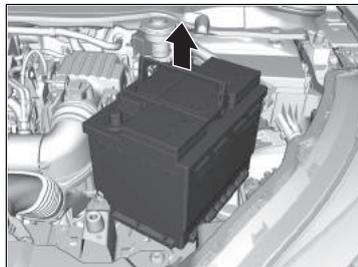
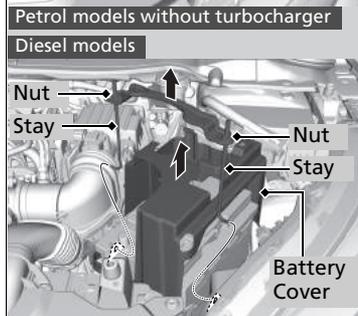
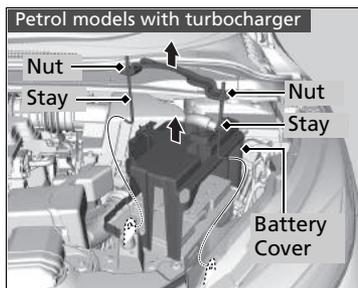


To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.

Always disconnect the negative \ominus cable first, and reconnect it last.

Continued

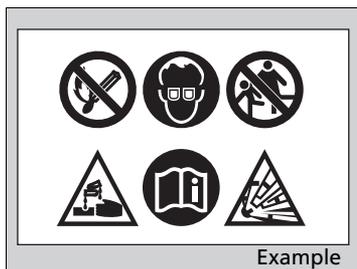
▶▶ Battery ▶ Replacing the Battery



4. Loosen the nut on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
5. Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.
6. Remove the battery cover.

7. Take out the battery carefully.

Battery Label



☒ Battery Label

DANGER

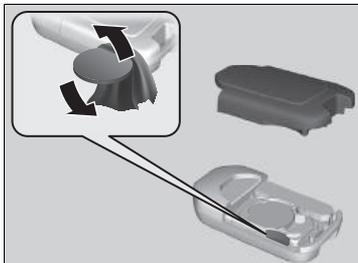
- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Button Battery

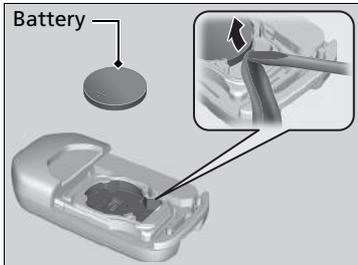
If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

Retractable Key*



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the retractable key.
2. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



Maintenance

Replacing the Button Battery

⚠ ⚠ WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children. If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery*.

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.



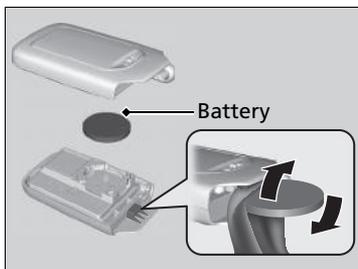
Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

■ Keyless Remote*



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.

▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.

▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

Maintenance

* Not available on all models

Climate Control System Maintenance

Air Conditioning

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

▶▶ Air Conditioning

NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:



-  : Caution
-  : Flammable Refrigerant
-  : Requires a qualified technician to service
-  : Air Conditioning System

Maintenance

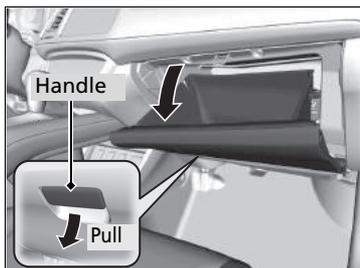
Dust and Pollen Filter

■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

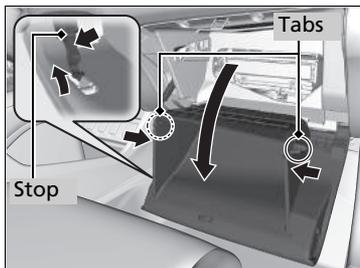
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

📖 **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 519

■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



2. Push the stop on the driver's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.
3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

☒ Dust and Pollen Filter

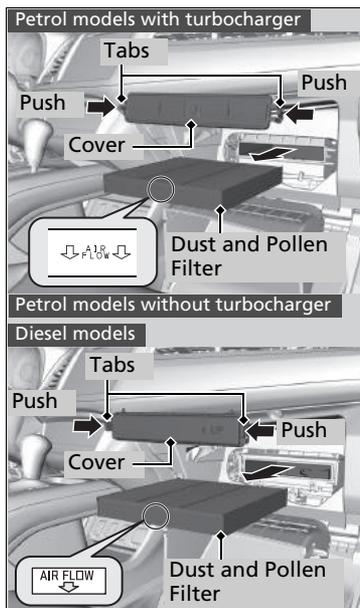
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Climate Control System Maintenance ▶▶ Dust and Pollen Filter



5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
6. Remove the filter from the case.
7. Install a new filter in the case.
 - ▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

▶▶ Dust and Pollen Filter

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

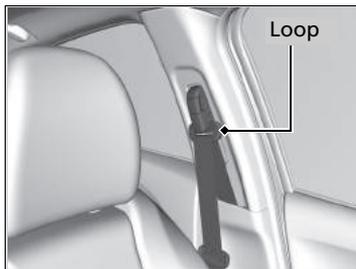
Cleaning

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

■ Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.
Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loop of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

☒ Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

☒ Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window.
Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Continued

▶▶ Cleaning ▶ Interior Care

Floor Mats*

The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintenance

586 * Not available on all models

Floor Mats*

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- Turn off the automatic intermittent wipers*.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



▶▶ Diesel models

Do not spray water onto the capless unit when the fuel fill door is open. It can cause damage to the fuel system or engine.



▶▶ Cleaning ▶ Exterior Care

■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

▶▶ Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

▶▶ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.



■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories and Modifications

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
 📄 **Fuses** P. 634
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Maintenance

590

Accessories and Modifications

WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

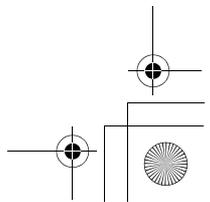
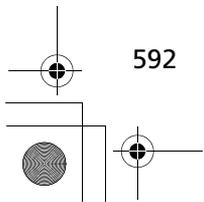
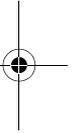
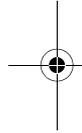
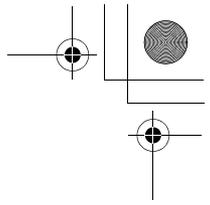
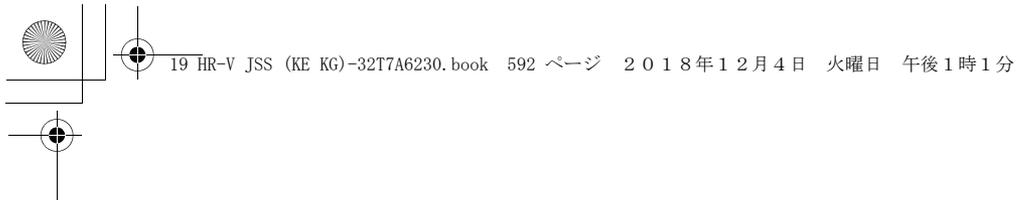
Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.



Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools

Types of Tools 594

If a Tyre Goes Flat

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre* 596

Changing a Flat Tyre* 608

Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine 617

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak.. 619

Emergency Engine Stop 620

Jump Starting

..... 621

Shift Lever Does Not Move

..... 624

Overheating

How to Handle Overheating..... 625

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On.....628

If the Charging System Indicator Comes

On 628

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes

On or Blinks 629

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes

On 629

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System

Indicator Comes On 630

If the Electric Parking Brake System

Indicator Comes On 631

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning

System Indicator Comes On or Blinks..... 632

If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears.....633

If the PGM-FI Symbol Appears 633

Fuses

Fuse Locations 634

Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 642

Emergency Towing

..... 643

When You Cannot Open the Tailgate

..... 646

Refueling

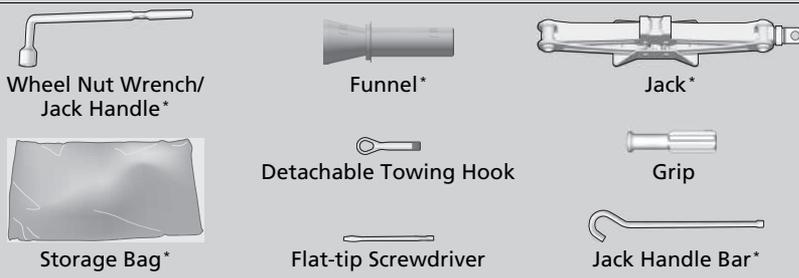
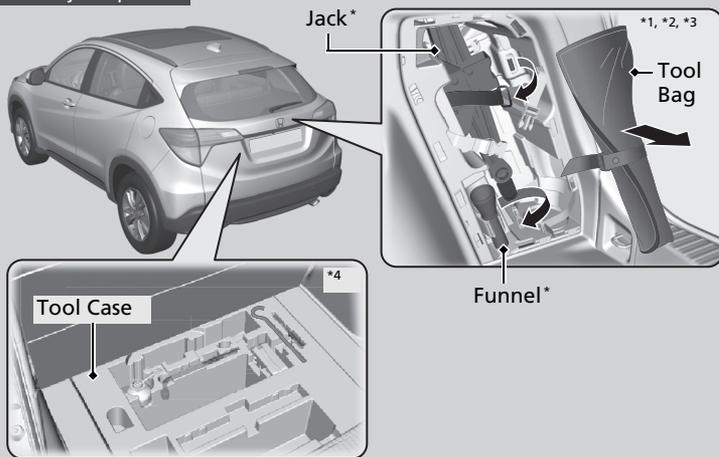
Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container 648

* Not available on all models

Tools

Types of Tools

Models with tyre repair kit

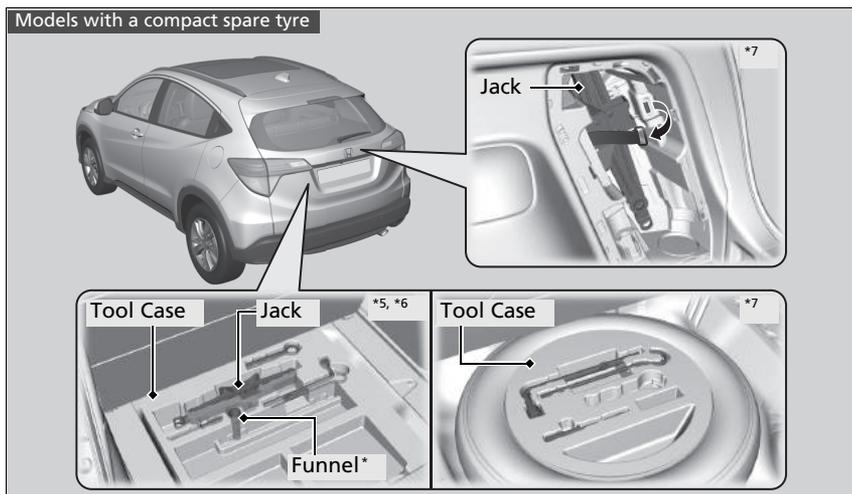


- *1: Petrol models without turbocharger with front fog lights
- *2: Petrol models with turbocharger
- *3: Diesel models
- *4: Petrol models without turbocharger without front fog lights

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

Handling the Unexpected



*5: Petrol models without turbocharger

*6: Diesel models

*7: Petrol models with turbocharger

Handling the Unexpected

If a Tyre Goes Flat

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **P**.

Manual transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **R**.

All models

3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***1.
 - ▶ When towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

596 * Not available on all models

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch).
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.

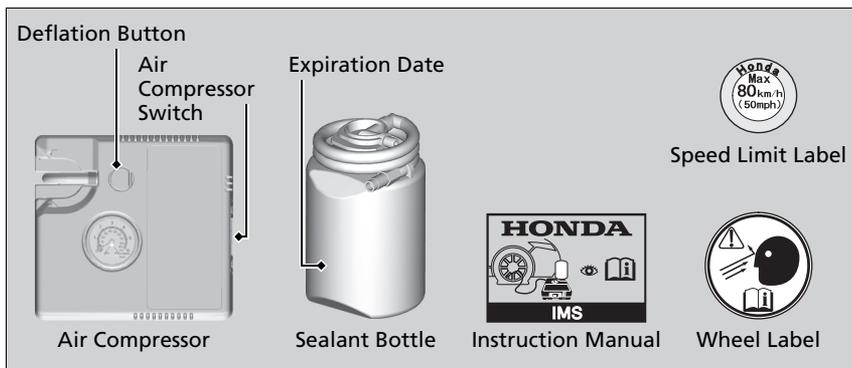
	When the puncture is:	Kit Use
	Smaller than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	Yes
Larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	No	

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- A rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*

■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre



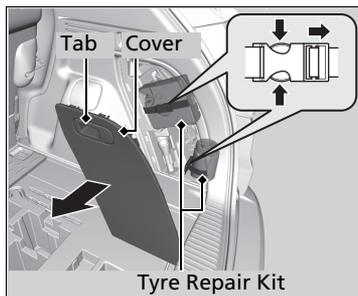
☒ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

Handling the Unexpected

Continued

▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*



1. Open the tailgate.

Petrol models without turbocharger with front fog lights

Petrol models with turbocharger

Diesel models

2. Pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the right side of the luggage area.
3. Take the kit out of the compartment.
4. Place the kit face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

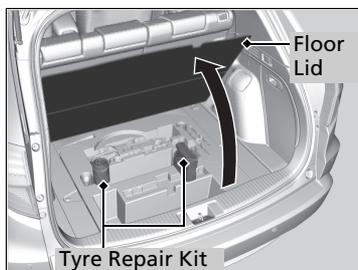
Petrol models without turbocharger without front fog lights

2. Pull up the strap and open the luggage area floor lid.
3. Take the kit out of the case.
4. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

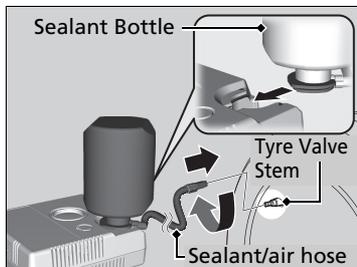
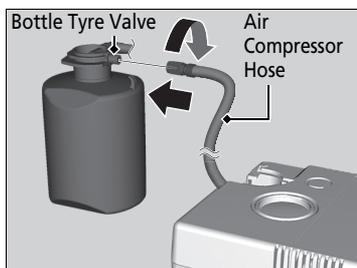
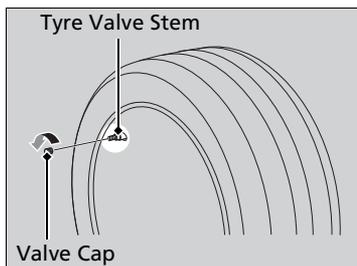
▶▶ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

If your vehicle is equipped with the boot tray, remove it as necessary.

Handling the Unexpected



■ Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
2. Shake the sealant bottle.
3. Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.
4. Upside down the sealant bottle, then attach the bottle into the cutout of the air compressor.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

▣ Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠ WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

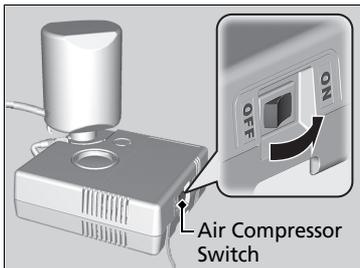
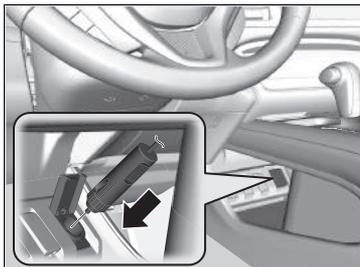
In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.

Continued

Handling the Unexpected

▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*



Handling the Unexpected

6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
 - **Accessory Power Sockets** P. 224
7. Turn the ignition switch to START (III)*1 without depressing the accelerator pedal, then start the engine.
 - **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 88
8. Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre.
 - ▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
9. After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the kit.
 - ▶ Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - ▶ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

▶▶ Injecting Sealant and Air

WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

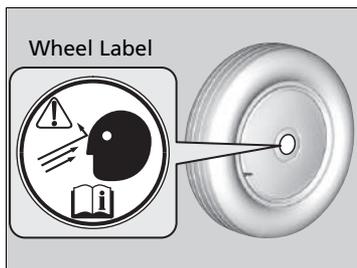
NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*



10. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
11. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
12. Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
 - ▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

☒ Injecting Sealant and Air

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

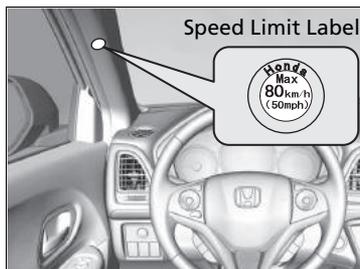
See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

Continued

Handling the Unexpected

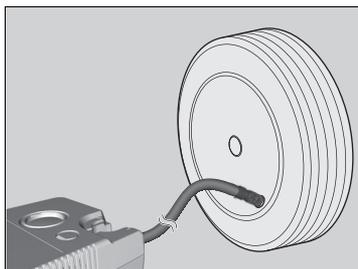
▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*

■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



1. Apply the speed limit label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
 - ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

Handling the Unexpected



4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
 - ▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.
5. If the air pressure is:
 - Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi):
Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

➤ **Emergency Towing** P. 643

Models with 215/60R16 95H tyres

- Front: 210 kPa (2.1 bar, 30 psi)/rear: 200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi) or more:

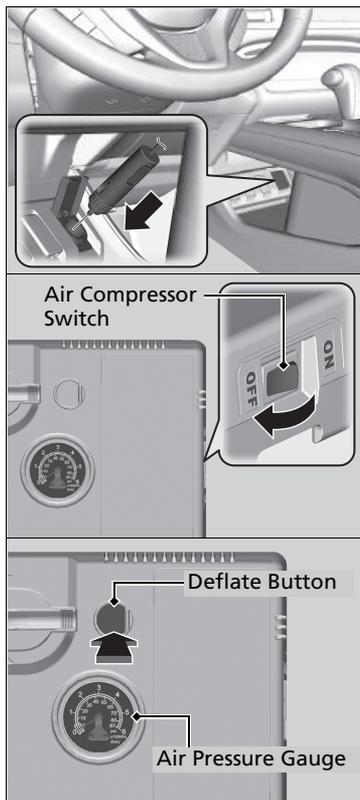
Models with 215/55R17 94V tyres

Models with 225/50R18 95V tyres

- Front: 220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi)/rear: 210 kPa (2.1 bar, 30 psi) or more:
Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- ▶ If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.

Continued

▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*



Handling the Unexpected

Models with 215/60R16 95H tyres

- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than front:210 kPa (2.1 bar, 30 psi)/rear:200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi):
Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches front:210 kPa (2.1 bar, 30 psi)/rear:200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi).

Models with 215/55R17 94V tyres

Models with 225/50R18 95V tyres

- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than front:220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi)/rear:210 kPa (2.1 bar, 30 psi):
Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches front:220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi)/rear:210 kPa (2.1 bar, 30 psi).

Injecting Sealant and Air P. 599

Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station.

Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

- ▶ You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.

6. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
7. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
8. Press the deflate button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).
9. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

▶▶ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

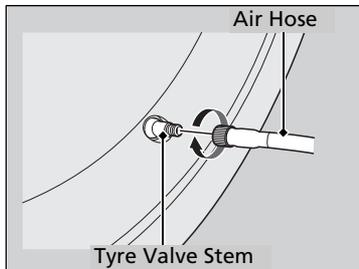
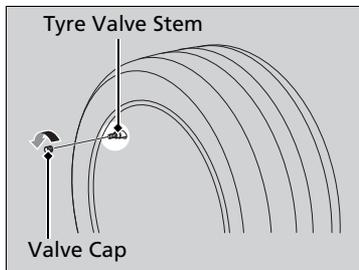
WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



1. Take the kit out of the luggage area.
▶ **Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre** P. 597
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the air hose from the kit.
4. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
5. Attach the air hose onto the tyre valve stem.
Screw it until it is tight.

▶▶ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

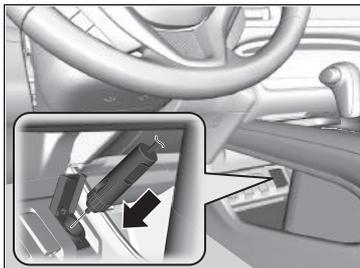
NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Continued

Handling the Unexpected

▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*

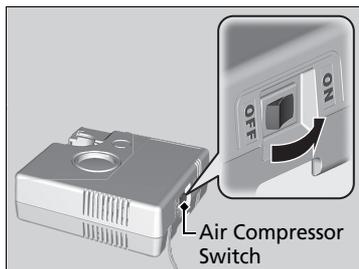


6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
 - **Accessory Power Sockets** P. 224
7. Turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY *1.
 - ▶ In freezing temperatures, start the engine and leave it running while the flat tyre is being serviced.
 - **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 88

Handling the Unexpected

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*



8. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
 - ▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
 - ▶ If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.
9. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
10. Turn off the kit.
 - ▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - ▶ If overinflated, press the deflate button.
11. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
12. Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
13. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Handling the Unexpected

▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Changing a Flat Tyre*

Changing a Flat Tyre*

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **P**.

Manual transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **R**.

All models

3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***¹.

Handling the Unexpected

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

608 * Not available on all models

Changing a Flat Tyre*

Follow compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h (50 mph). Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

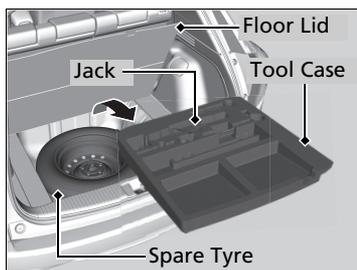
Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

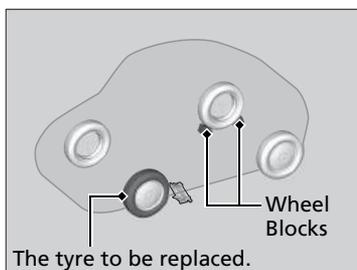
Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Open the luggage area floor lid.
2. Take the tool case out of the luggage area.
3. Take the wheel nut wrench, jack handle bar and jack out of the tool case.
4. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.



5. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

⚠ Changing a Flat Tyre*

WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

The shape of the tool case varies by model.

⚠ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre

Be careful not to hurt yourself when removing or storing the spare tyre.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Changing a Flat Tyre*



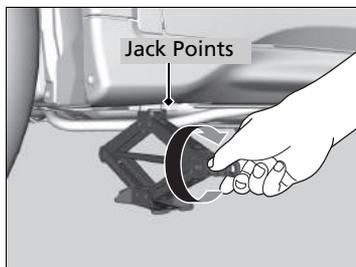
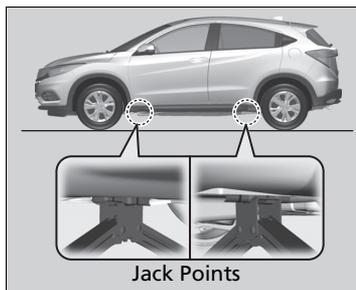
6. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



7. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

Handling the Unexpected

How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.

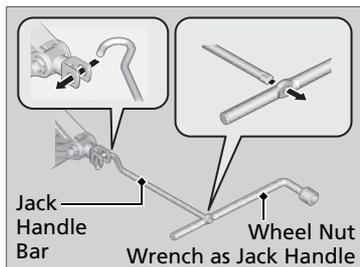
1.	2.	3.

1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.

Continued

Handling the Unexpected

▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Changing a Flat Tyre*



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

▶▶ How to Set Up the Jack

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

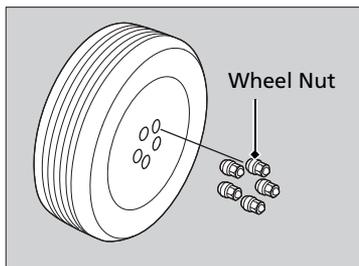
Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

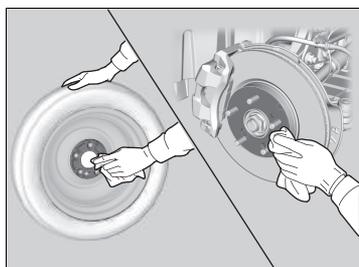
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

Handling the Unexpected

Replacing the Flat Tyre



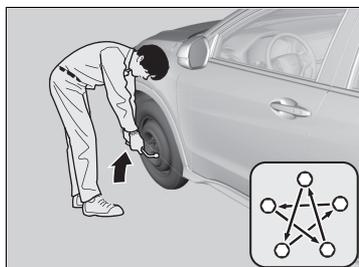
1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.

3. Mount the compact spare tyre.

4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, and stop rotating.



5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.

Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

Wheel nut torque:

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

Handling the Unexpected

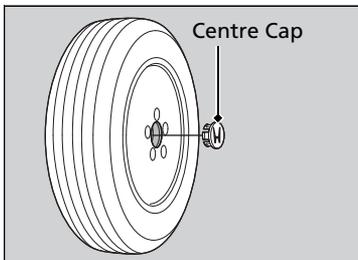
Continued

▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Changing a Flat Tyre*

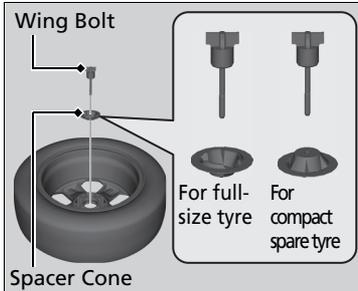
Petrol models without turbocharger

Diesel models

Storing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the centre cap.



2. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt.
3. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
4. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.
5. Securely put the jack and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case.
6. Store the case in the luggage area.

Storing the Flat Tyre

WARNING

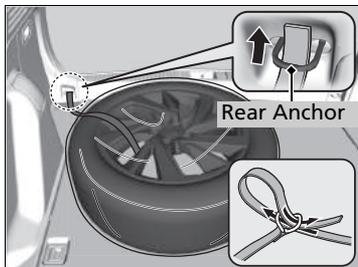
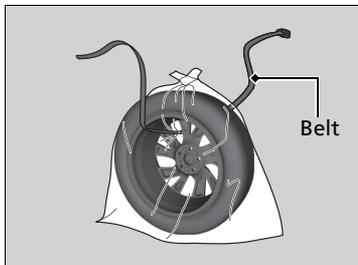
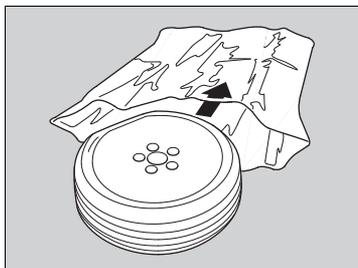
Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Handling the Unexpected

Petrol models with turbocharger

■ Storing the Flat Tyre



1. Put the flat tyre in the storage bag provided with your vehicle.
 - ▶ The storage bag is in the tool case.
2. Knot the top of the storage bag.
3. Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place.
4. Securely put the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case.
5. Bore through the bag, and pass the holding belt through the hole of the bag and the wheel of the flat tyre as shown.
6. Place the flat tyre in the luggage area, and thread the belt through the rear anchor as shown.
7. Pass the belt through the ring, and tighten the belt to secure the flat tyre in place.

▶▶ Storing the Flat Tyre

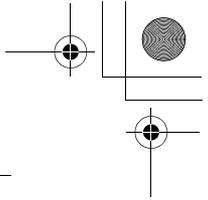
⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Handling the Unexpected

Continued



▶▶ If a Tyre Goes Flat ▶▶ Changing a Flat Tyre*

■ Deflation Warning System and the Spare Tyre

If you replace a flat tyre with the compact spare tyre,  indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres (miles), the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on, but this is normal.

Initialise the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

 **Deflation Warning System Initialisation** P. 472

Handling the Unexpected



Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

☒ Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

☒ **Jump Starting** P. 621

Starter condition

Checklist

Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.

The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.

Models with keyless access system

Check for a message on the multi-information display.

- If  appears
 - ☒ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 619
 - ▶ Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.
 - ☒ **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 182

Check the brightness of the interior lights.

Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.

- If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all ☒ **Battery** P. 575
- If the interior lights come on normally ☒ **Fuses** P. 634

The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start.

There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.

Review the engine start procedure.

Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again.

☒ **Starting the Engine** P. 413, 416

Check the immobilizer system indicator.

When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started.

☒ **Immobilizer System** P. 171

Check the fuel level.

There should be enough fuel in the tank.

☒ **Fuel Gauge** P. 140

Check the fuse.

Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

☒ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 642

If the problem continues:

☒ **Emergency Towing** P. 643

Continued

▶▶ Engine Does Not Start ▶▶ Checking the Engine

Starter condition

Checklist

The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start.

There may be a problem with the fuses. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.

Diesel models

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on, or **PGM-FI appears on the multi-information display under the following circumstances:**

- The fuel tank has been run dry.

➤ **Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages** P. 135

Diesel models

Have the fuel filter checked by a dealer to drain off water.

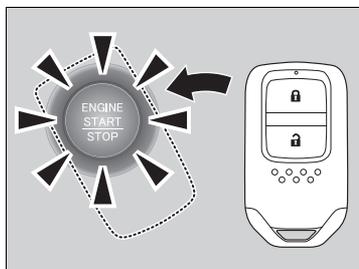
 appears on the multi-information display.

➤ **Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages** P. 134

Models with keyless access system

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds,  appears on the multi-information display; and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine will not start. Start the engine as follows:



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
▶ The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal (continuously variable transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
▶ If you do not depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

▶▶ Engine Does Not Start ▶▶ Emergency Engine Stop

Models with keyless access system

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

Continuously variable transmission models

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped. To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, move the shift lever to **P** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.

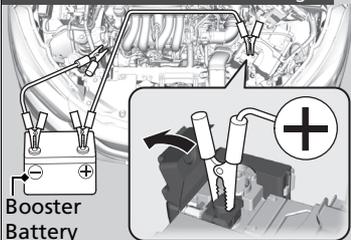
If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting

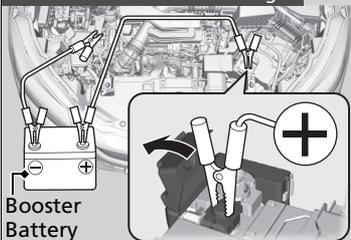
Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.

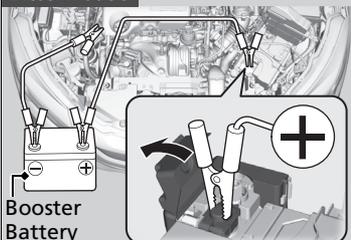
Petrol models without turbocharger



Petrol models with turbocharger



Diesel models



1. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
 - ▶ Remove the cover from the under-bonnet fuse box.
 - ▣ Engine Compartment Fuse Box
P. 636
2. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
 - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
 - ▶ Connect when using the automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
3. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

Jump Starting

⚠ WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

NOTICE

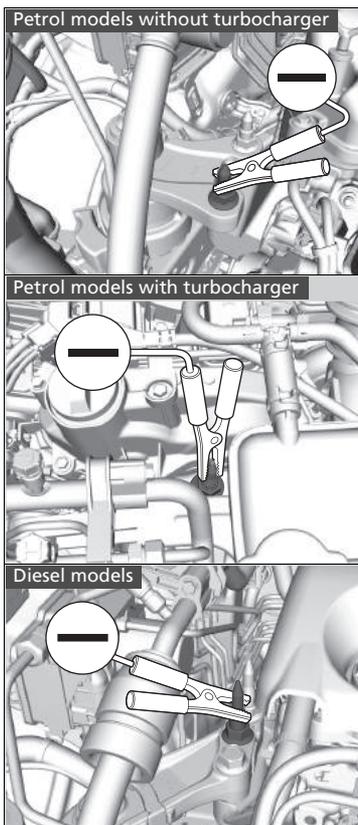
If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Handling the Unexpected

Continued

▶▶ Jump Starting ▶▶



Handling the Unexpected

4. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
5. If the jumper cable is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase engine's revolution slightly.
6. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

▶▶ Jump Starting

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

▶▶ Jump Starting ▶▶

■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's stud bolt.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \ominus terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery \oplus terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \oplus terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

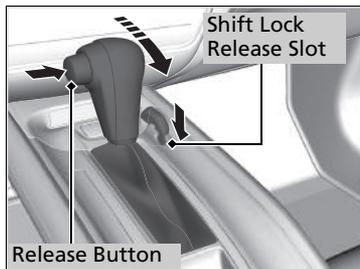
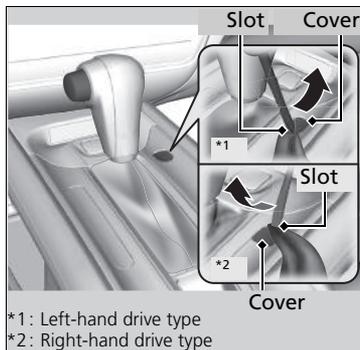
Handling the Unexpected

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Continuously variable transmission models

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.

Models without keyless access system

2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.

All models

3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.

4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button and place the shift lever into **N**.

▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Overheating

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The high temperature indicator (red) comes on or the engine suddenly loses power.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
 - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.
 - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

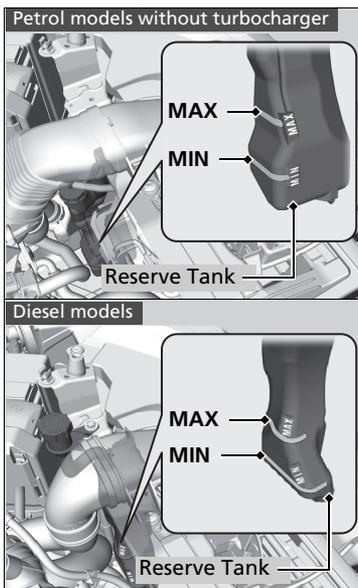
Continuing to drive with the high temperature indicator on may damage the engine.

Continued

Handling the Unexpected

▶▶ Overheating ▶ How to Handle Overheating

■ Next thing to do



Petrol models without turbocharger

Diesel models

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the high temperature indicator goes off.
 - ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
 - ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
 - ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

▶▶ How to Handle Overheating

Petrol models without turbocharger

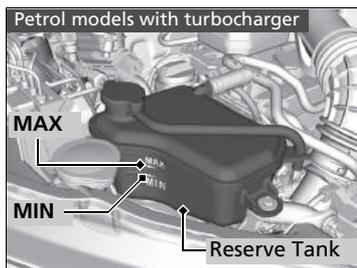
Diesel models

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

Handling the Unexpected



Petrol models with turbocharger

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the high temperature indicator goes off.
 - ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level, and check the cooling system components for leaks.
 - ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, or no coolant in the tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the reserve tank cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. Add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark and put the cap back on.

■ **Last thing to do**

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the high temperature indicator.
 If the high temperature indicator is off, resume driving. If it stays on, contact a dealer for repairs.

▶▶ How to Handle Overheating

Petrol models with turbocharger

⚠ WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

All models

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

Handling the Unexpected

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.
 - ▶ **Oil Check** P. 540
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.
 - ▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.
 - ▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

▶▶ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the climate control system, rear demister, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

▶▶ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on if there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.

Petrol models

- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

Diesel models

- Comes on when air may have entered the fuel system.

What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

Petrol models

What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

▶▶ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

Petrol models

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h (30 mph) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On



Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

▶▶ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

▶▶ Indicator, Coming On/Blinking ▶▶ If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.

If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Handling the Unexpected

If the Electric Parking Brake System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Avoid using the parking brake and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ What to do when the electric parking brake indicator comes on or blinks at the same time

Release the parking brake.

🔧 Parking Brake P. 475

- If the electric parking brake indicator remains on or blinks even after releasing the parking brake, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and call a dealer.

▶ Prevents your vehicle does move,

Continuously variable transmission models

move the shift lever to **P**.

Manual transmission models

move the shift lever to **1** or **R**.

- If only the electric parking brake indicator goes off, immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

🔧 If the Electric Parking Brake System Indicator Comes On

If you apply parking brake, it may not release.

If the electric parking brake indicator also turns on, the parking brake is still applied.

When the electric parking brake indicator blinks at the same time as the electric parking brake system indicator, the system must be checked. The parking brake may not operate under these conditions.

▶▶ Indicator, Coming On/Blinking ▶▶ If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on/blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been initialised. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system or the compact spare tyre* is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- ▶ Initialise the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

▶ Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 472

■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre* causes the indicator to blink, change the tyre to a full-size tyre.

The indicator goes off after driving for a few kilometres (miles).

- ▶ Initialise the deflation warning system after a full-size tyre is reinstalled.

▶ Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 472

▶▶ If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears



■ Reasons for the symbol to appear

Appears when the engine oil level is low.

■ What to do as soon as the symbol appears

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

☞ Oil Check P. 540

Diesel models

If the PGM-FI Symbol Appears



■ Reasons for the symbol to appear while the engine is running

There is a problem with the engine control system.

■ What to do when the symbol appears repeatedly

Avoid full-throttle acceleration and high speed driving. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

☞ If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil level can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

This system activates after the engine warms up. If the outside temperature is extremely low, you may have to drive for a long time until the system senses the engine oil level.

If the symbol appears again, stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

☞ If the PGM-FI Symbol Appears

NOTICE

Continuously driving with this symbol on can damage the emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.

Fuses

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]*1 and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

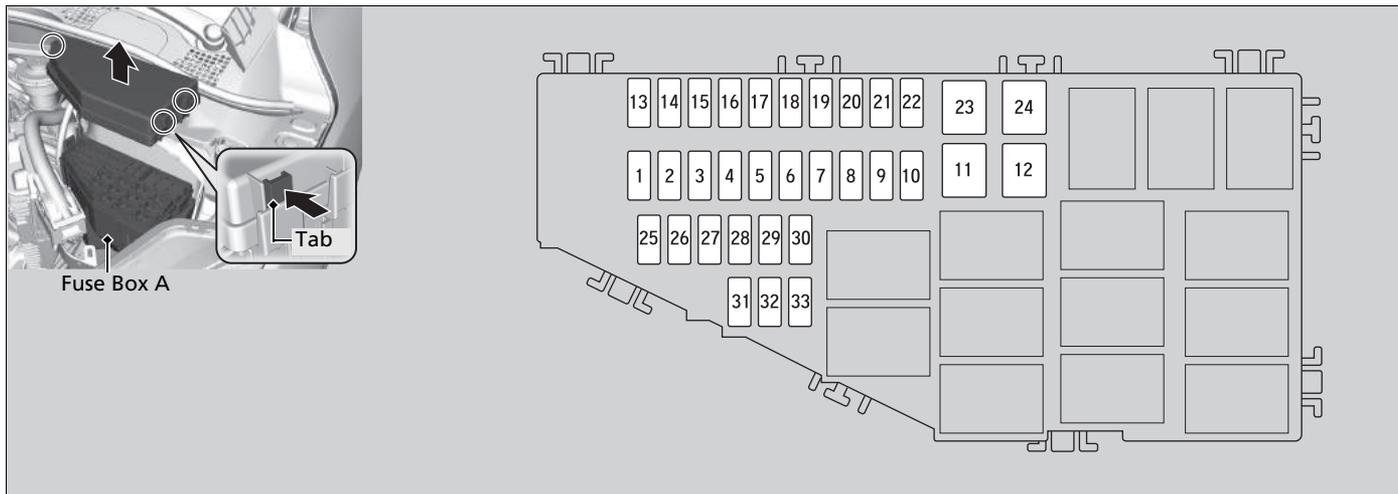
Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Fuse box A

Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



Handling the Unexpected

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Wiper*	30 A
2	—	—
3	Stop Main	30 A
4	—	—
5	Headlight Low Beam Main	20 A
6	Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	20 A
7	Injector* ^{1, 2} — ³	20 A —
8	IGP	15 A ^{1, 2} 20 A ³
9	IG Coil* ^{1, 2} IGP2* ³	15 A
10	Drive By Wire* ^{1, 2} LAF* ³	15 A 10 A
11	VST2*	30 A
12	Main Fan* ^{1, 3} — ²	30 A —
13	Starter SW	30 A
14	MG Clutch	7.5 A
15	Battery Sensor* ^{1, 3} Backup FI ECU* ²	7.5 A 10 A
16	Front Fog Lights*	10 A
17	Driver's Power Seat Reclining* ^{1, 3} TCU* ²	20 A 15 A
18	Horn	10 A
19	Small Lights	10 A

* Not available on all models

	Circuit Protected	Amps
	— ¹	—
20	UB ECU* ^{1, 2} Backup FI ECU* ³	7.5 A
21	Back Up	10 A
22	— ^{1, 3} Audio* ^{1, 2}	— 10 A
23	Sub Fan* ^{1, 3} — ²	30 A —
24	VST1*	30 A
25	IGP2 Sub* ¹ VBACT* ² — ³	7.5 A 10 A —
26	FI Sub Relay* ^{1, 2} IGP2* ³	7.5 A
27	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
28	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
29	Starter	7.5 A
30	Back Up (VST)*	30 A
31	Stop	10 A
32	Hazard	10 A
33	Daytime Running Lights	10 A

*1:Petrol models without turbocharger

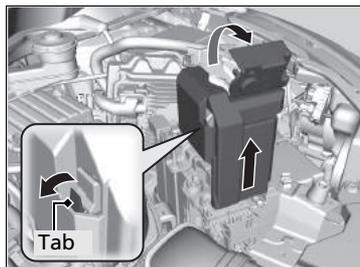
*2:Petrol models with turbocharger

*3:Diesel models

Handling the Unexpected

▶▶ Fuses ▶ Fuse Locations

■ Fuse box B



Pull up the cover on the ⊕ terminal, then remove it while pulling out the tab as shown.

Replacement of the engine compartment fuses should be done by a dealer.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

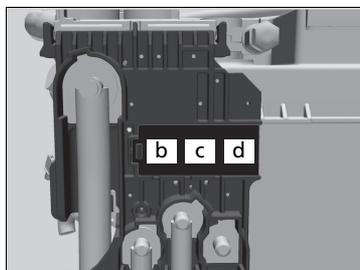
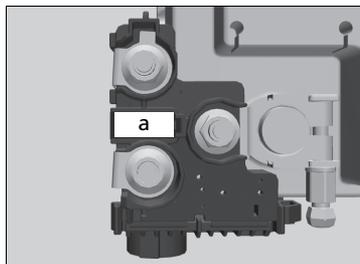
	Circuit Protected	Amps
a	Battery Main	100 A ^{*1} 125 A ^{*2} 150 A ^{*3}
b	RB Main 1	70 A
c	RB Main 2	80 A
d	CAP Main ^{*1} RFC ^{*2} Glow ^{*3}	70 A ^{*1, *3} 50 A ^{*2}

*1: Petrol models without turbocharger

*2: Petrol models with turbocharger

*3: Diesel models

Handling the Unexpected



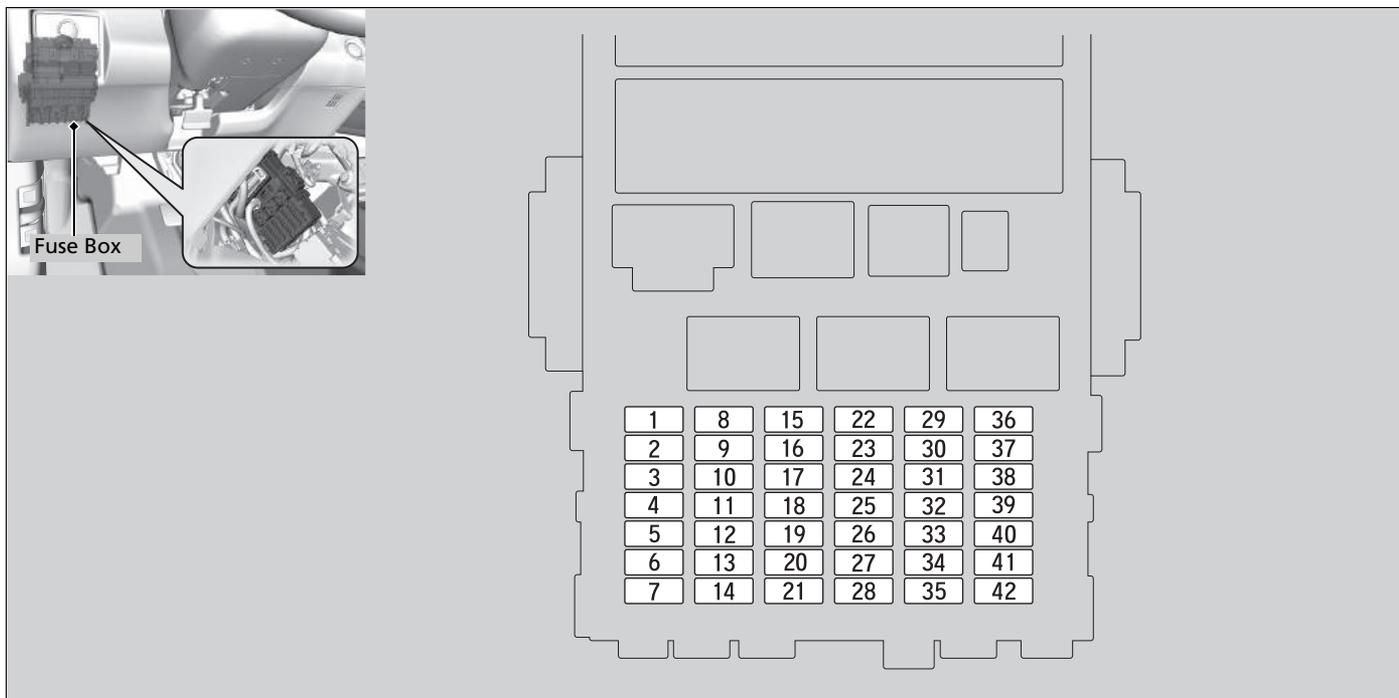
Interior Fuse Box

Fuse box A

Located behind the instrument panel.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



Handling the Unexpected

▶▶ Fuses ▶ Fuse Locations

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Door Lock	20 A
2	-	-
3	Keyless Access System*	10 A
4	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
5	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
6	-	-
7	-	-
8	Driver's Power Window	20 A
9	Passenger's Power Window	20 A
10	Rear Left Power Window	20 A
11	Rear Right Power Window	20 A
12	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
14	Rear Fog Light	10 A
15	Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
16	STS*	7.5 A
17	Sunshade*	20 A
18	Panoramic Roof*	20 A
19	Seat Heaters*	20 A
20	Passenger's Power Seat Sliding*	20 A
21	Passenger's Power Seat Reclining*,* ³ MP Camera*,* ⁴	20 A 10 A
22	Washer	15 A
23	Rear Wiper Main*	10 A
24	A/C	7.5 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
25	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
26	Starter	7.5 A
27	ABS/VSA	7.5 A
28	SRS	10 A
29	Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
30	ACG	10 A
31	Relay	10 A
32	Fuel Pump	15 A
33	SRS 2	7.5 A
34	Meter	7.5 A
35	Mission SOL	7.5 A
36	Accessory Power Socket (console panel)	20 A
37	ACC* ¹	7.5 A
38	ACC* ²	7.5 A
39	Option	10 A
40	Rear Wiper	10 A
41	-	-
42	-	-

*1:Models with keyless access system

*2:Models without keyless access system

*3:Except petrol models with turbocharger

*4:Petrol models with turbocharger

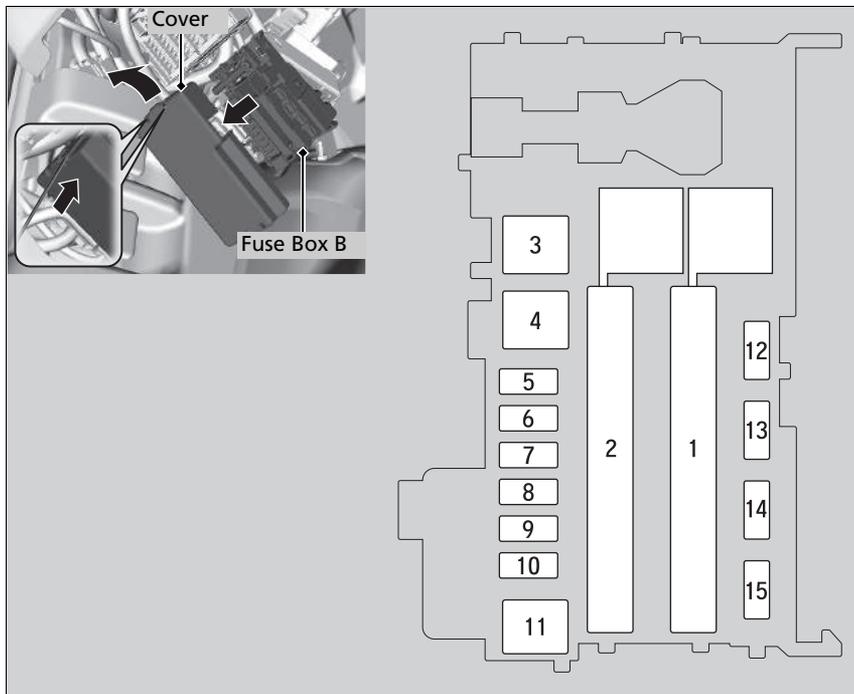
Handling the Unexpected

■ Fuse box B

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.

Remove the cover by putting the flat-tip screwdriver into the side slot as shown.



Handling the Unexpected

Continued

▶▶ Fuses ▶ Fuse Locations

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
	Electric Power Steering (EPS)	70 A
	IG Main	30 A ^{*1} 50 A ^{*2}
1	Fuse Box Main 2	50 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	Fuse Box Main	30 A
	Fuse Box Main 3	40 A
	Rear Demister	30 A
	Left Electric Parking Brake	30 A
2 ^{*3}	IG Main 2 ^{*1}	30 A
	Heater Motor	40 A
	Right Electric Parking Brake	30 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	30 A
	A/C PTC 1	40 A
	A/C PTC 2	40 A
2 ^{*4}	A/C PTC 3	40 A
	A/C PTC 4	40 A
	Right Electric Parking Brake	30 A
	Left Electric Parking Brake	30 A
3	Heater Motor ^{*4}	40 A
4	IG Main 2 ^{*1, *4}	30 A
5	ABS/VSA FSR ^{*4}	30 A
6	Super Locking [*]	20 A
7	Rear Accessory Power Socket	20 A
8	—	—

	Circuit Protected	Amps
9	Interior Lights	7.5 A
10	Centre Accessory Power Socket [*]	20 A
11	Rear Demister ^{*4}	30 A
12	ACC Keylock ^{*2}	7.5 A
13	—	—
14	—	—
15	Front Wiper ^{*2}	30 A

*1: Models with keyless access system

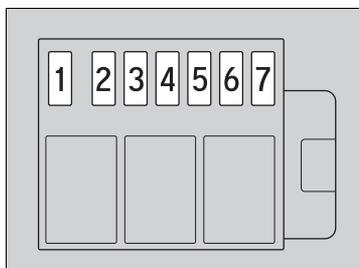
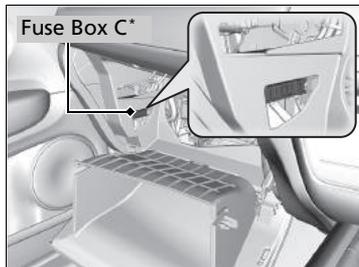
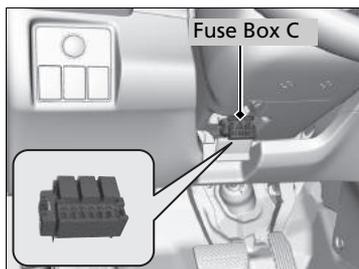
*2: Models without keyless access system

*3: Petrol models

*4: Diesel models

Handling the Unexpected

■ Fuse box C*



* Not available on all models

Left-hand drive type

Located behind the steering column.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.

Right-hand drive type

Located behind the glove box.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.

➤ **How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter** P. 583

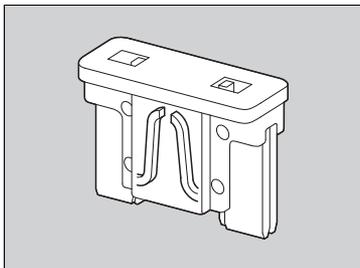
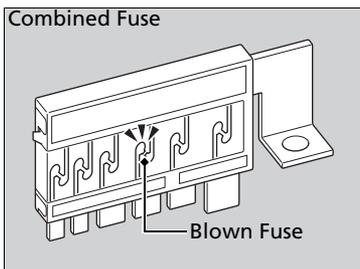
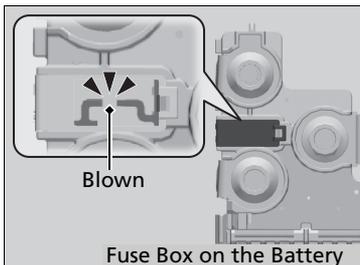
■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	IG1 Fuel Pump*	7.5 A
2	IG1 Relay 2*	7.5 A
3	Electric Power Pump*	10 A
4	Drive By Wire*	7.5 A
5	Accessory*	7.5 A
6	IG1 Relay 1*	7.5 A
7	Back Up 2 Main*	15 A

Handling the Unexpected

▶▶ Fuses ▶ Inspecting and Changing Fuses

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]*1. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Check the fuses on the battery in the engine compartment.
 - ▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.
3. Remove the fuse box cover.
4. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
 - ▶ If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
5. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
 - ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it and replace it with a new one.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a new one of the same specified amperage.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

▶ **Fuse Locations** P. 634

Handling the Unexpected

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Emergency Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

☒ Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous, since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flat bed equipment.

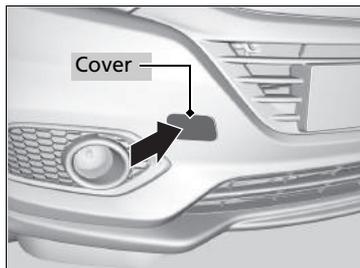
☒ **Parking Brake** P. 475

Continued

Handling the Unexpected

▶▶ Emergency Towing ▶▶

■ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:



1. Check the ground underneath the vehicle around where the transmission housing is for a fluid leak.
 - ▶ If you find a leak, call a professional towing service and have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
2. Push the left side of the cover to remove it.
 - ▶ The detachable towing hook mounts on the anchor in the front bumper.

☒ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

Towing a vehicle is prohibited by law in some countries. Check and follow the legal requirements of the country you are driving before towing your vehicle.

If you cannot follow the exact procedure, do not tow your vehicle with the front wheels on the ground.

If you cannot turn on the engine, you may experience the following while your vehicle is being towed.

- Braking may become difficult since the brake system's power assist is disabled.
- Steering wheel becomes heavy as the power steering system is disabled.

Manual transmission models

- Turning the ignition switch to LOCK [0]^{*1} locks the steering wheel.

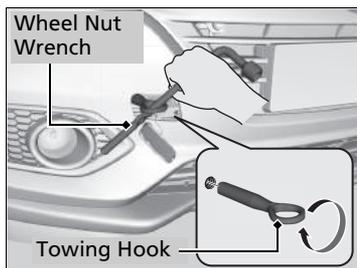
With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 80 km (50 miles), and keep the speed below 55 km/h (34 mph).

Going down a long slope heats up the brakes. This may prevent the brakes from working properly. If your vehicle needs to be towed on an incline, call a professional towing service.

Make sure to use the properly-designed and attached towing equipment.

Handling the Unexpected

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



3. Take the towing hook and the wheel nut wrench out of the luggage area.
4. Screw the towing hook into the hole, and tighten it with the wheel nut wrench securely.
5. Hook the towing device to the towing hook.
6. Start the engine.
 - ▶ If it is difficult to turn on the engine, put the ignition switch in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II***1.

Manual transmission models

7. Shift to **N**.

Continuously variable transmission models

7. Depress the brake pedal.
8. Shift to **D** and hold for five seconds, then to **N**.

All models

9. Release the parking brake.

▶▶ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

NOTICE

Continuously variable transmission models

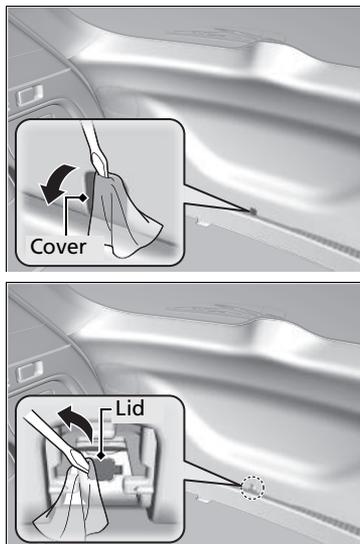
If you cannot shift the transmission or turn on the engine, will damage the transmission. Your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

When You Cannot Open the Tailgate

What to Do When Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1. Wrap a cloth around the flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the cover as shown in the image, and open it.

2. Wrap a cloth around the flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the lid as shown in the image, and open the lid.

Handling the Unexpected

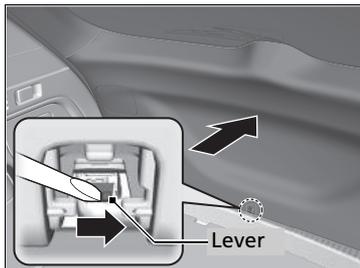
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have your vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

▶▶ When You Cannot Open the Tailgate ▶▶



3. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while sliding the lever to the right.

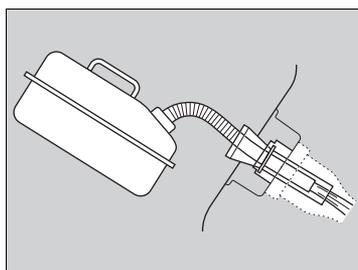
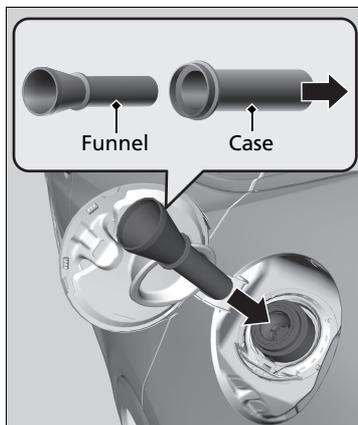
Handling the Unexpected

Refueling

Diesel models

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

If you have run out of fuel and need to refuel your vehicle from a portable fuel container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.



1. Turn off the engine.
2. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
 - ▶ The fuel fill door opens.
3. Take the funnel out of the luggage area.
 - ▶ **Types of Tools** P. 594
4. Remove the **funnel from the case**.
5. Insert the funnel into the filler neck fully and slowly.
6. Fill the tank with fuel from the portable fuel container.
 - ▶ Pour fuel carefully so you do not spill any.
7. Remove the funnel from the filler neck.
 - ▶ Wipe up any fuel from the funnel before storing it.
8. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

▶▶ Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ WARNING

Fuel is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

NOTICE

Do not insert the nozzle of a portable fuel container or any funnel other than the one provided with your vehicle. Doing so can damage the fuel system. Do not try to pry open or push open the sealed fuel tank with foreign objects. This can damage the fuel system and its seal.

Make sure the fuel in the portable fuel container is diesel fuel before you refuel.

Handling the Unexpected

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications	650
Identification Numbers	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number	659
Devices that Emit Radio Waves *	660
EC Declaration of Conformity Content Outline *	688

* Not available on all models

Specifications

Petrol models without turbocharger

Vehicle Specifications

Model	HR-V ^{*1} Honda HR-V ^{*2}
Curb Weight	1,241 – 1,317 kg (2,736 – 2,903 lbs) ^{*3} 1,249 – 1,324 kg (2,754 – 2,919 lbs) ^{*4}
Maximum permissible weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb ^{*5} See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb ^{*6}
Maximum permissible axle weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb ^{*5} See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb ^{*6}

*1: Except Turkish models

*2: Turkish models

*3: Manual transmission models

*4: Continuously variable transmission models

*5: Right-hand drive type

*6: Left-hand drive type

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC	
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm (2.87 x 3.52 in)	
Displacement	1,498 cm ³ (91.4 cu-in)	
Compression Ratio	11.5 : 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILZKAR7C11S
	DENSO	DXE22HCR11S

Fuel

Fuel: Type	EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	50 L (11.0 Imp gal)

Battery

Capacity	48AH(5)/60AH(20)
----------	------------------

Idle Stop:

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type (LN2). Ask a dealer for more details.

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L (2.2 Imp qt)
---------------	--------------------

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam) ^{*1}	55W (H11)
Headlights (High Beam) ^{*1}	60W (HB3)
Headlights (High/Low Beam) ^{*2}	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber) ^{*1} LED ^{*2}
Front Fog Lights [*]	35W (H8) ^{*1} LED ^{*2}
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake/Taillights	LED
Taillights (on tailgate) [*]	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Fog Light	21W
Rear Licence Plate Lights	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Front and Rear Map Lights	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights	2W
Console Panel Light [*]	LED
Luggage Area Light	5W

*1: Models without keyless access system

*2: Models with keyless access system

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	395 - 445 g

■ Brake/Clutch* Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid*

Specified	Honda HCF-2
Capacity	Change 3.4 L (3.0 Imp qt)

■ Manual Transmission Fluid*

Specified	Honda MTF
Capacity	Change 1.9 L (1.7 Imp qt)

■ Engine Oil

European models	
Recommended	-Honda Engine Oil #1.0
	-Honda Green Oil
	-Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0
	-Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20
	-ACEA C2/C3 0W-30, 5W-30
Except European models	
Recommended	-Honda Engine Oil #1.0
	-Honda Green Oil
	-Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20
	-ACEA C2/C3 0W-30, 5W-30
Change	3.4 L (3.0 Imp qt)
Capacity	Change including filter 3.6 L (3.2 Imp qt)

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	3.42 L (0.752 Imp gal) ^{*1}
	3.56 L (0.783 Imp gal) ^{*2}
	(change including the remaining 0.475 L (0.1045 Imp gal) in the reserve tank)

- *1: Manual transmission models
*2: Continuously variable transmission models

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/60R16 95H 215/55R17 94V
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Compact Spare ^{*1}	Size	T135/90D16 102M
	Pressure kPa (bar [psi])	420 (4.2 [60])
Wheel Size	Regular	16 x 7J ^{*2}
		17 x 7J ^{*3}
	Compact Spare ^{*1}	16 x 4T

For the tyre size information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

- *1: Vehicle with compact spare tyre
*2: Models with 215/60R16 tyres
*3: Models with 215/55R17 tyres

■ Honda TRK Air Compressor^{*1}

A weighted emission sound pressure level	81 dB (A)
A weighted sound power level	89 dB (A)

- *1: Vehicle with tyre repair kit

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

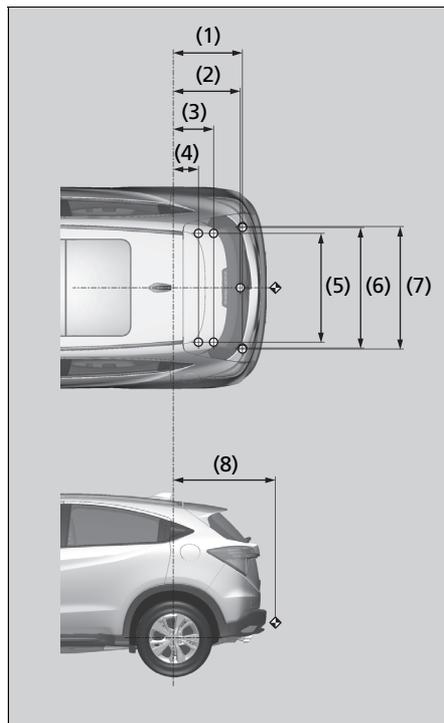
* Not available on all models

▶▶ Specifications ▶▶

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,334 mm (170.6 in)	
Width	1,772 mm (69.8 in)	
Height	1,605 mm (63.2 in)	
Wheelbase	2,610 mm (102.8 in)	
Track	Front	1,535 mm (60.4 in)
	Rear	1,540 mm (60.6 in)

■ The mounting point/rear over hang of coupling device



No.	Dimensions
(1)	610 mm (24.0 in)
(2)	592 mm (23.3 in)
(3)	358 mm (14.1 in)
(4)	227 mm (8.9 in)
(5)	950 mm (37.4 in)
(6)	1,068 mm (42.0 in)
(7)	1,078 mm (42.4 in)
(8)	888 mm (35.0 in)

■ Max. Towing Weight

Trailer with brakes	1,000 kg (2,205 lbs)
Trailer without brakes	650 kg (1,433 lbs)
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	70 kg (154 lbs)

NOTE:

- marks show towbar fixing points.
- ◊ mark shows towbar coupling point.

Information

Petrol models with turbocharger

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	HR-V ^{*1} Honda HR-V ^{*2}
Curb Weight	1,341 - 1,349 kg (2,956 - 2,974 lbs) ^{*3} 1,428 - 1,435 kg (3,148 - 3,164 lbs) ^{*4}
Maximum permissible weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb ^{*5} See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb ^{*6}
Maximum permissible axle weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb ^{*5} See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb ^{*6}

*1: Except Turkish models

*2: Turkish models

*3: Manual transmission models

*4: Continuously variable transmission models

*5: Right-hand drive type

*6: Left-hand drive type

■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm (2.87 x 3.52 in)
Displacement	1,498 cm ³ (91.4 cu-in)
Compression Ratio	10.6 : 1
Spark Plugs	NGK ILZKAR8J8SY

■ Fuel

Fuel: Type	EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	50 L (11.0 Imp gal)

■ Battery

Capacity	48AH(5)/60AH(20)
Idle Stop ^{*1} :	The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type (LN2). Ask a dealer for more details.

*1: Manual transmission models

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L (2.2 Imp qt)
---------------	--------------------

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (High/Low Beam)	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Front Fog Lights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake/Taillights	LED
Taillights (on tailgate)	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Fog Light	21W
Rear Licence Plate Lights	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Front and Rear Map Lights	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights	2W
Console Panel Light	LED
Luggage Area Light	5W

▶▶ Specifications ▶▶

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	355 - 405 g

■ Brake/Clutch * Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid *

Specified	Honda HCF-2
Capacity	Change 3.7 L (3.3 Imp qt)

■ Manual Transmission Fluid *

Specified	Honda MTF
Capacity	Change 1.9 L (1.7 Imp qt)

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	European models
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0 -ACEA C2/C3 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30
Capacity	Except European models
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 -ACEA C2/C3 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30
	Change 3.2 L (2.8 Imp qt)
	Change including filter 3.5 L (3.1 Imp qt)

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	5.75 L (1.27 Imp gal) ^{*1}
	5.77 L (1.27 Imp gal) ^{*2} (change including the remaining 0.58 L (0.13 Imp gal) in the reserve tank)

*1: Manual transmission models

*2: Continuously variable transmission models

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	225/50R18 95V
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Compact Spare ^{*1}	Size	T135/90D16 102M
	Pressure kPa (bar [psi])	420 (4.2 [60])
Wheel Size	Regular	18 x 7 1/2J
	Compact Spare ^{*1}	16 x 4T

*1: Vehicle with compact spare tyre

■ Honda TRK Air Compressor^{*1}

A weighted emission sound pressure level	81 dB (A)
A weighted sound power level	89 dB (A)

*1: Vehicle with tyre repair kit

■ Brake

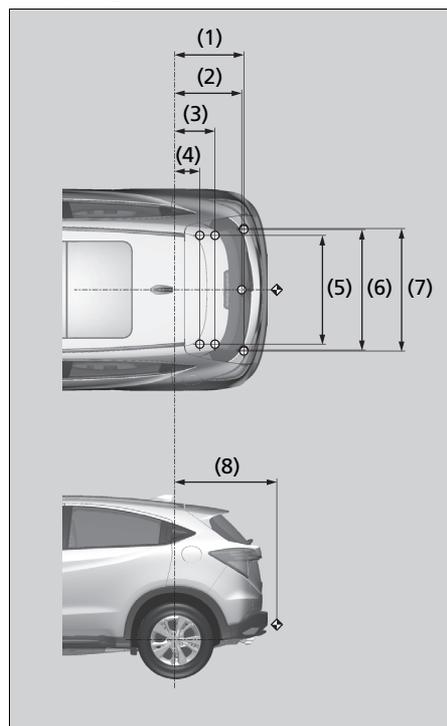
Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

Information

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,346 mm (171.1 in)
Width	1,790 mm (70.5 in)
Height	1,605 mm (63.2 in)
Wheelbase	2,610 mm (102.8 in)
Track	Front 1,536 mm (60.5 in)
	Rear 1,540 mm (60.6 in)

■ The mounting point/rear over hang of coupling device



NOTE:

1. ○ marks show towbar fixing points.
2. ◆ mark shows towbar coupling point.

No.	Dimensions
(1)	610 mm (24.0 in)
(2)	592 mm (23.3 in)
(3)	358 mm (14.1 in)
(4)	227 mm (8.9 in)
(5)	950 mm (37.4 in)
(6)	1,068 mm (42.0 in)
(7)	1,078 mm (42.4 in)
(8)	888 mm (35.0 in)

■ Max. Towing Weight

Trailer with brakes	1,400 kg (3,086 lbs)
Trailer without brakes	700 kg (1,543 lbs) ^{*1}
	500 kg (1,102 lbs) ^{*2}
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	70 kg (154 lbs)

*1: Manual transmission models

*2: Continuously variable transmission models

▶▶ Specifications ▶▶

Diesel models

Vehicle Specifications

Model	HR-V ^{*1} Honda HR-V ^{*2}
Curb Weight	1,343 - 1,417 kg (2,961 - 3,124 lbs)
Maximum permissible weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb ^{*3} See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb ^{*4}
Maximum permissible axle weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb ^{*3} See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb ^{*4}

*1: Except Turkish models

*2: Turkish models

*3: Right-hand drive type

*4: Left-hand drive type

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC
Bore x Stroke	76.0 x 88.0 mm (2.99 x 3.46 in)
Displacement	1,597 cm ³ (97.4 cu-in)
Compression Ratio	16.0 : 1

Fuel

Fuel: Type	EN590 standard diesel fuel
Fuel Tank Capacity	50 L (11.0 Imp gal)

Battery

Capacity	48AH(5)/60AH(20)
Idle Stop:	The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type (LN2). Ask a dealer for more details.

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L (2.2 Imp qt)
---------------	--------------------

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam) ^{*1}	55W (H11)
Headlights (High Beam) ^{*1}	60W (HB3)
Headlights (High/Low Beam) ^{*2}	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber) ^{*1} LED ^{*2}
Front Fog Lights [*]	35W (H8) ^{*1} LED ^{*2}
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake/Taillights	LED
Taillights (on tailgate) [*]	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Fog Light	21W
Rear Licence Plate Lights	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Front and Rear Map Lights	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights	2W
Console Panel Light [*]	LED
Luggage Area Light	5W

*1: Models without keyless access system

*2: Models with keyless access system

▶▶ Specifications ▶▶

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	395 - 445 g

■ Brake/Clutch Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

■ Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda MTF
Capacity	Change 1.9 L (1.7 Imp qt)

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	European models
	Honda DIESEL Oil #1.0 ACEA C2/C3 0W-30
Capacity	Except European models
	Honda DIESEL Oil #1.0 ACEA C2/C3 0W-30, 5W-30
Change	4.1 L (3.6 Imp qt)
	Change including filter

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	4.43 L (0.975 Imp gal) (change including the remaining 0.53 L (0.117 Imp gal) in the reserve tank)

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/60R16 95H 215/55R17 94V
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Compact Spare*1	Size	T135/90D16 102M
	Pressure kPa (bar [psi])	420 (4.2 [60])
Wheel Size	Regular	16 x 7J ^{*2}
		17 x 7J ^{*3}
	Compact Spare*1	16 x 4T

For the tyre size and pressure information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

*1: Vehicle with compact spare tyre

*2: Models with 215/60R16 tyres

*3: Models with 215/55R17 tyres

■ Honda TRK Air Compressor*1

A weighted emission sound pressure level	81 dB (A)
A weighted sound power level	89 dB (A)

*1: Vehicle with tyre repair kit

■ Brake

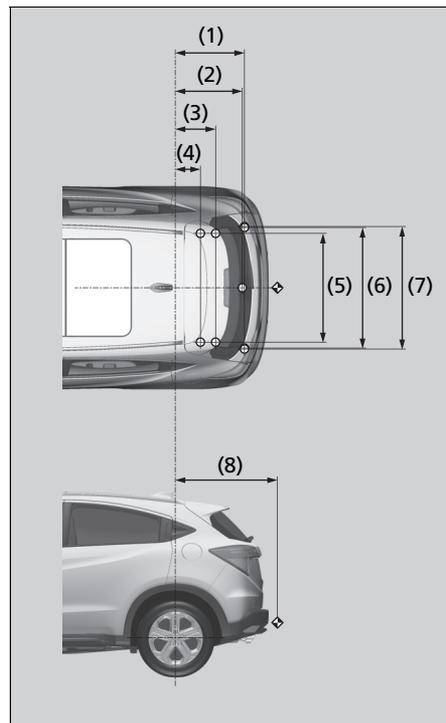
Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

▶▶ Specifications ▶▶

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,335 mm (170.7 in)	
Width	1,772 mm (69.8 in)	
Height	1,605 mm (63.2 in)	
Wheelbase	2,610 mm (102.8 in)	
Track	Front	1,535 mm (60.4 in)
	Rear	1,540 mm (60.6 in)

■ The mounting point/rear over hang of coupling device



No.	Dimensions
(1)	610 mm (24.0 in)
(2)	592 mm (23.3 in)
(3)	358 mm (14.1 in)
(4)	227 mm (8.9 in)
(5)	950 mm (37.4 in)
(6)	1,068 mm (42.0 in)
(7)	1,078 mm (42.4 in)
(8)	888 mm (35.0 in)

■ Max. Towing Weight

Trailer with brakes	1,400 kg (3,086 lbs)
Trailer without brakes	700 kg (1,543 lbs)
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	70 kg (154 lbs)

NOTE:

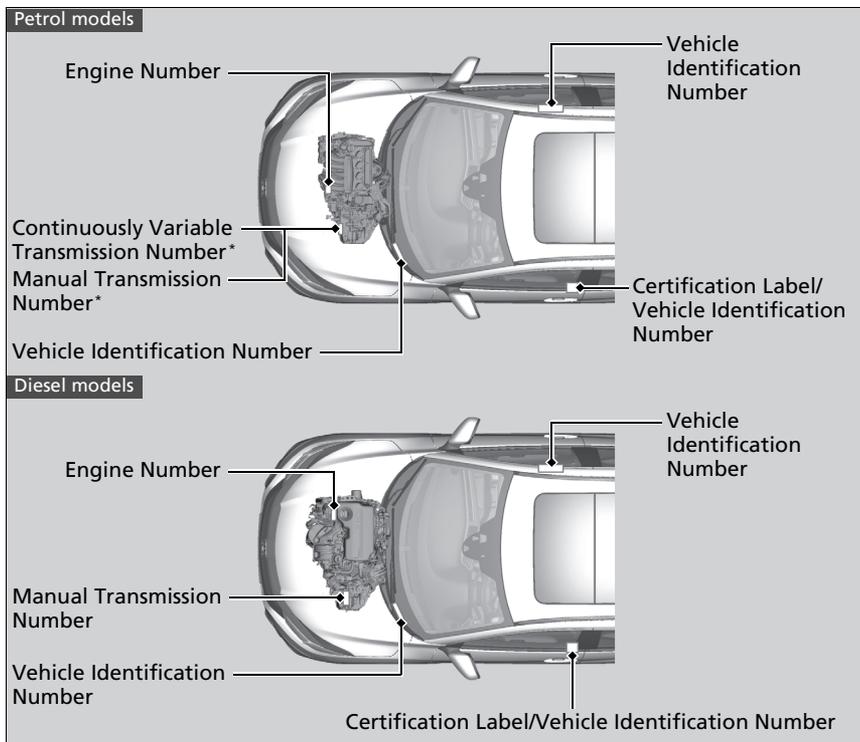
- marks show towbar fixing points.
- ◊ mark shows towbar coupling point.

Information

Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.



* Not available on all models

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Israeli models

Remote Transmitter*/Immobilizer System*

- א. השימוש במכשיר הינו על בסיס "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי. כלומר – לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדין.
- ב. רק "בפעולת בוק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הצידוד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי. מתן "שרות בוק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.
- ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שימי טכני אחר.

Information

660 * Not available on all models

Israeli models

Keyless Access System*

Keyless remote

Power control unit

מדינת ישראל
משרד התחבורה
אגף כביש וניהול ספקטרום הרדיו תדירים
ת.ד. 2167, תל-אביב 61280

החייב: נתן ליום קיום הוראות
ע"י ג' יובא הלוקה התעלית 1878
החייב את המכשיר יחד עם המסמך בתום 10 ימי עבודה מיום זה

לכבוד: י
אילון דרש
נתיבות תעבורה והרחובות ג'י
סמסלים 30
מנהל תחנה 49254
פקס: 03-7424999

האריך והשעה: 07/04/2013
חתימת סמסר: 63-43571

השמות: אישור התקנת לוגו או חתימה פני 11-36844 למכשיר אלקטרוני

החלטת ספקטרום לוגו התקנת אלקטרוני נתיבות תעבורה והרחובות ג' 1878 תל-אביב תוקפת לתקופה של 10 שנים. החלטת הרחובות והתחנה תוקפת לתקופה של 10 שנים. החלטת הרחובות והתחנה תוקפת לתקופה של 10 שנים. החלטת הרחובות והתחנה תוקפת לתקופה של 10 שנים.

1. שם המכשיר: CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GABRIEL
2. סוג המכשיר: י
3. סוג המכשיר: י
4. סוג המכשיר: י
5. סוג המכשיר: י
6. סוג המכשיר: י
7. סוג המכשיר: י
8. סוג המכשיר: י
9. סוג המכשיר: י
10. סוג המכשיר: י

שם המכשיר	החומר	החומר	החומר
11-36844	11-36844	11-36844	11-36844

07/04/2013
אילון דרש
מנהל תחנה

מדינת ישראל
משרד התחבורה
אגף כביש וניהול ספקטרום הרדיו תדירים
ת.ד. 2167, תל-אביב 61280

החייב: נתן ליום קיום הוראות
ע"י ג' יובא הלוקה התעלית 1878
החייב את המכשיר יחד עם המסמך בתום 10 ימי עבודה מיום זה

לכבוד: י
אילון דרש
נתיבות תעבורה והרחובות ג'י
סמסלים 30
מנהל תחנה 49254
פקס: 03-7424999

האריך והשעה: 09/04/2013
חתימת סמסר: 63-43571

השמות: אישור התקנת לוגו או חתימה פני 11-32847 למכשיר אלקטרוני

החלטת ספקטרום לוגו התקנת אלקטרוני נתיבות תעבורה והרחובות ג' 1878 תל-אביב תוקפת לתקופה של 10 שנים. החלטת הרחובות והתחנה תוקפת לתקופה של 10 שנים. החלטת הרחובות והתחנה תוקפת לתקופה של 10 שנים.

1. שם המכשיר: CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GABRIEL
2. סוג המכשיר: י
3. סוג המכשיר: י
4. סוג המכשיר: י
5. סוג המכשיר: י
6. סוג המכשיר: י
7. סוג המכשיר: י
8. סוג המכשיר: י
9. סוג המכשיר: י
10. סוג המכשיר: י

שם המכשיר	החומר	החומר	החומר
11-32847	11-32847	11-32847	11-32847

09/04/2013
אילון דרש
מנהל תחנה

Information

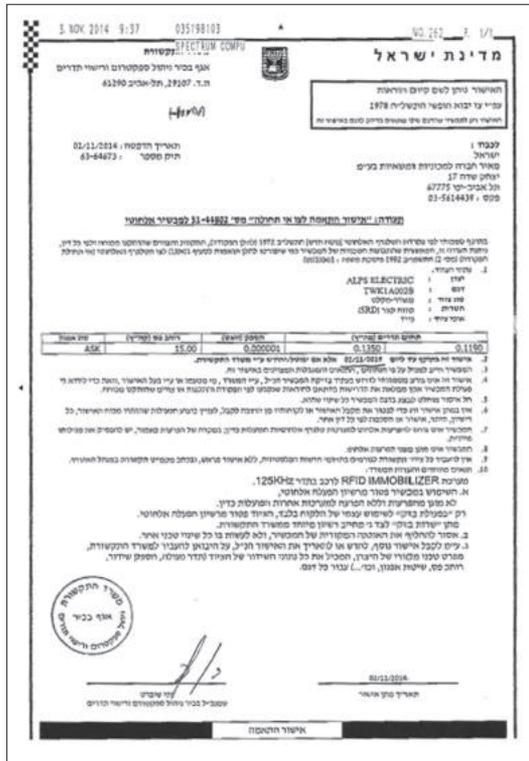
* Not available on all models

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves* ▶▶

Israeli models

Keyless Access System*

ENGINE START/STOP switch



Information

Moldova models

Remote Transmitter*



ERC/REC 70-03 Annex 1

Parametrii tehnici de emisie ai dispozitivelor cu rază mică de acțiune

echipamentul este destinat să fie utilizat în Republica Moldova



Information

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves* ▶

Moldova models

Immobilizer System*

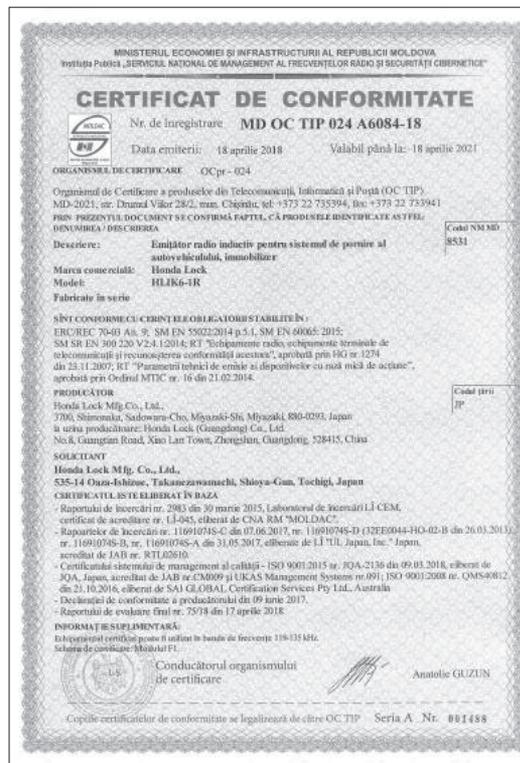


ERC/REC 70-03 Annex 9

Parametrii tehnici de emisie ai dispozitivelor cu rază mică de acțiune

echipamentul este destinat să fie utilizat în Republica Moldova

Information



Moldova models

Keyless Access System*
Keyless remote



European REC 70-03

this device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova



Information

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves ▶▶

Moldova models

Keyless Access System*
Power control unit



European REC 70-03

this device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova



Information

666 * Not available on all models

Moldova models

Keyless Access System*
ENGINE START/STOP switch



European REC 70-03

this device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova



Information

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves* ▶▶

Moldova models

Hands-Free Telephone System*



Reglementării tehnice “Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de telecomunicații și recunoașterea conformității acestora” , aprobată prin Hotărârea Guvernului nr. 1274 din 23.11.2007.

This device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova.

Information

Panasonic

Panasonic Corporation
4261 Honcho-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama City 224-8502, Japan

Declarație de conformitate

Noi, Panasonic Corporation declaram pe propria noastră răspundere că produsul:

Marca : Panasonic
denumire comercială : Sistem multimedia pentru autovehicule, cu modul Bluetooth integrat
tip sau model : BH1401

la care se referă această declarație este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale și celelalte prevederi aplicabile ale Reglementării tehnice “Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de telecomunicații și recunoașterea conformității acestora”, aprobată prin Hotărârea Guvernului nr. 1274 din 23.11.2007.

Produsul este în conformitate cu următoarele standarde și/sau documente normative:

Spectrul radio:
EN 300 220 V1.7.1
Compatibilitatea electromagnetică:
EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2
EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1
Siguranța utilizatorului:
EN 60950-1:2006+A11:2009+A1:2010+A12:2011+A2:2013

Semnătura:
Takuya Hata
Funcție: Manager
Automotive & Industrial Systems Company
Automotive Infotainment Systems Business Division
Data de emitere: 8 Mai 2018
Locul de emitere: Yokohama, Japonia

Moldova models

Hands-Free Telephone System*



Reglementării tehnice “Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de telecomunicații și recunoașterea conformității acestora” , aprobată prin Hotărârea Guvernului nr. 1274 din 23.11.2007.

This device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova.

DENSO TEN Limited
2-29, Goshodan 1-chome, Hyogo-ku, Kobe, 652-8510, Japan

DENSO TEN

Declarație de conformitate

No. 85E-328217-0060

Noi, DENSO TEN Limited declaram pe propria noastră răspundere că produsul:

marca: DENSO TEN
denumire comercială: Sistem audio auto
tip sau model: FT0056A

la care se referă această declarație este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale și celelalte prevederi aplicabile ale Reglementării tehnice “Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de telecomunicații și recunoașterea conformității acestora”, aprobată prin Hotărârea Guvernului nr. 1274 din 23.11.2007.

Produsul este în conformitate cu următoarele standarde și/sau documente normative:

Spectrul radio:

EN 300 328 V1.7.1 (2006-10)
EN 300 440-1 V1.6.1 (2010-08)
EN 300 440-2 V1.4.1 (2010-08)

Compatibilitatea electromagnetică:

EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 (2011-09)
EN 301 489-3 V1.6.1 (2013-08)
EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1 (2012-09)

Siguranța utilizatorului:

EN 60065 2002+A1:2006+A11:2008+A2:2010+A12:2011

Semnătura:

Hiroyuki OHTOSHI

Funcția: General Manager
Engineering Management Group
Engineering Management Department

Data de emisie: 1 Noiembrie 2017

Locul de emisie: Kobe, Japonia

Information

* Not available on all models

Continued 669

►► Devices that Emit Radio Waves ►►

Serbian models

Remote Transmitter*

Immobilizer System*

KVALITET
 Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta "KVALITET" NIS
 Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета "КВАЛИТЕТ" Ниш
 Joint-stock company for quality testing "KVALITET" NIS

POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTO Broj: **P1617162800**
 CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE No.

Podnositelj zahteva: DELTA AUTOMOTO D.O.O.
 Applicant: 11070 NOVI BEOGRAD
 OMLADINSKIH BRIGADA 33A

Vrsta opreme: KLJUČ ZA DALJINSKI PRISTUP VOZLU
 Equipment category:

Oznaka tipa/modela: HLK6-JT
 Equipment type/model:

Robna marka: Honda Lock
 Equipment trademark:
 Proizvođač: Honda Lock Mfg. Co., Ltd.
 Manufacturer: Japan

Vrednovana dokumentacija / Evaluated documentation:
 Laboratorija/ Bezbednost/Safety, UL, Japan, Inc. Head Office EMC Lab.:
 Ispitni izveštaj/ 10082365-C, 24.08.2013. /
 Laboratory/ EMKEMC, UL, Japan, Inc. SHONAN EMC Lab.:
 Test report/ 10082365-C, 21.09.2013. /
 RITTO/R&TTE, UL, Japan, Inc. SHONAN EMC Lab.:
 10082365-A, 21.08.2013. /

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahtevе "Pravilnik o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi" (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).
 On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the "Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet" u d. d. Niš.
 Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical characteristics which may influence on conformity to the above mention Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

Mesto i datum izdavanja: Valji do: 01.11.2020.
 Place and date: Valji do: 01.11.2020.
 NIS, 02.11.2017.

Generelni direktor
 Vladimir Vučkosić, dipl.inž.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su izloženi sa proizvođača koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.
 Bul. Svetog cara Konstantina 82-96, NIS 10000, Srbija. Tel: (018)550-795, 550-624. Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068
 e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs

KVALITET
 Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta "KVALITET" NIS
 Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета "КВАЛИТЕТ" Ниш
 Joint-stock company for quality testing "KVALITET" NIS

POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTO Broj: **P1617162900**
 CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE No.

Podnositelj zahteva: DELTA AUTOMOTO D.O.O.
 Applicant: 11070 NOVI BEOGRAD
 OMLADINSKIH BRIGADA 33A

Vrsta opreme: UREĐAJ ZA BLOKADU KONTAKT BRAVE VOZLA
 Equipment category:

Oznaka tipa/modela: HLK6-1R
 Equipment type/model:

Robna marka: Honda Lock
 Equipment trademark:
 Proizvođač: Honda Lock Mfg. Co., Ltd.
 Manufacturer: Japan

Vrednovana dokumentacija / Evaluated documentation:
 Laboratorija/ Bezbednost/Safety, UL, Japan, Inc. Head Office EMC Lab.:
 Ispitni izveštaj/ 32EES044-SH-02-C, 26.03.2013. /
 Laboratory/ EMKEMC, UL, Japan, Inc. SHONAN EMC Lab.:
 Test report/ 32EES044-SH-02-C, 15.01.2013. /
 RITTO/R&TTE, UL, Japan, Inc. SHONAN EMC Lab.:
 32EES044-SH-02-C, 15.01.2013. /
 32EES044-SH-02-C, 15.01.2013. /

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahtevе "Pravilnik o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi" (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).
 On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the "Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet" u d. d. Niš.
 Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical characteristics which may influence on conformity to the above mention Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

Mesto i datum izdavanja: Valji do: 01.11.2020.
 Place and date: Valji do: 01.11.2020.
 NIS, 02.11.2017.

Generelni direktor
 Vladimir Vučkosić, dipl.inž.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su izloženi sa proizvođača koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.
 Bul. Svetog cara Konstantina 82-96, NIS 10000, Srbija. Tel: (018)550-795, 550-624. Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068
 e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs

Information

Serbian models

Keyless Access System*

Keyless remote

Power control unit

Continental
Continental Automotive GmbH - Postfach 101 503 - 93029 Regensburg

Dagmar Kolar
QL RBG 43
Phone +49 (0)41 790-6699
Fax +49 (0)41 790-66009
dagmar.kolar@continental-corporation.com

Date: November 05, 2012
Your message dated: [blank]
Our reference: [blank]
Your reference: [blank]

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany
Product type designation: V24-V44
Intended use: Radio Frequency Transmitter used for vehicle locking/unlocking

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose.

Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a):
Applied standard(s): EN 50565-1:2008 + A11:2009 + A1:2010, EN 52479:2010 with regard to Change Recommendation 1999/5/EC

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b):
Applied standard(s): EN 301 485-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04), EN 301 485-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2):
Applied standard(s): EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02), EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 2012-11-05

Andreas Wolf, Executive Vice President, Body & Security
Norbert Müller, Director Production Group 1, Body & Security

Continental Automotive GmbH | Phone +49 (0)41 790-6699 | Regensburg Office | General Manager
Siemensstr. 12 | Fax +49 (0)41 790-66009 | Regensburg | David Grottel
93029 Regensburg | www.continental-corporation.com | Head Office | Norbert Müller
93029 Regensburg | Head Office

Continental
Continental Automotive GmbH - Postfach 101 503 - 93029 Regensburg

Dagmar Kolar
QL RBG 43
Phone +49 (0)41 790-6699
Fax +49 (0)41 790-66009
dagmar.kolar@continental-corporation.com

Date: May 10, 2012
Your message dated: [blank]
Our reference: [blank]
Your reference: [blank]

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany
Product type designation: 46271812
Intended use: Vehicle Keyless Entry System

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose.

Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a):
Applied standard(s): EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009 + A1:2010, EN 62369-2009

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b):
Applied standard(s): EN 301 485-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04), EN 301 485-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2):
Applied standard(s): EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02), EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02), EN 300 330-1 V1.7.1 (2010-02), EN 300 330-2 V1.5.1 (2010-02)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 2012-05-10

Andreas Wolf, Executive Vice President, Body & Security
Norbert Müller, Director PG 1, Body & Security

Continental Automotive GmbH | Phone +49 (0)41 790-6699 | Regensburg Office | General Manager
Siemensstr. 12 | Fax +49 (0)41 790-66009 | Regensburg | David Grottel
93029 Regensburg | www.continental-corporation.com | Head Office | Norbert Müller
93029 Regensburg | Head Office

Information

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves* ▶▶

Serbian models

Keyless Access System*

ENGINE START/STOP switch

ALPS ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD. Engineering Headquarters
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaka-city, Miyagi-pref, 989-4181, Japan
E-Photo: +81 226-23-8111 Fax: +81 226-23-8129

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY
For

CE Product: Immobiliser base station
Model: TWK1A0028

Supplied by ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD. 6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaka-city, Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-4181
Technical Construction File held by ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD. 6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaka-city, Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60665:2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2: 2011 EN 301 489-3 V1.6.1: 2013
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 330-1 V1.7.1: 2010 EN 300 330-2 V1.5.1: 2010

Means of Conformity
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment (R&TTE) Directive (1999/5/EC).

Date of issue: July 11, 2014

Signature of Responsible Person:
Toshiya Ikarashi Toshiya Ikarashi
Group Leader
GROUP1 ENGINEERING DEPT.M5

Information

Serbian models

Hands-Free Telephone System*

Ovim, Panasonic, deklarirše da je BH1401 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 2014/53/EU



Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta "KVALITET" NS
 Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta "KVALITET" NS
 Joint-stock company for quality testing "KVALITET" NS




POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTO Broj: **P1617132700**
 CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE No.

Podnositelj zahteva: RTTE CONSULTING DOO
 Applicant: 11000 BEOGRAD
 MARICKA 25/29

Vrsta opreme: AUDIO UREDAJ ZA AUTOMOBIL (SA BLUETOOTH MODULOM FC6000TH HSA)
 Equipment category:

Oznaka tipa/modela: BH1401
 Equipment type/model:

Robna marka: Panasonic
 Equipment trademark:
 Proizvođač: PANASONIC CORPORATION
 Manufacturer: JAPAN

Vrednovana dokumentacija / Evaluated documentation:
 Laboratorija: Bežična/Safety: UL Japan, Inc.:
 IspitniLEVEL: 11571219, 22.02.2017 /
 Laboratory: UL Japan, Inc. Iss EMC Lab.:
 Izveštaj: 115713304, 24.04.2017 /
 Test report: EMK/EMC: UL Japan, Inc., Kashiwa EMC Lab.:
 115712304-R1, 10.05.2017 /
 RITTO/R&TTE: UL Japan, Inc. Iss EMC Lab.:
 11571233H-R1, 24.04.2017 /
 UL Japan, Inc. Yokohama EMC Lab.:
 11571215Y-R1, 15.05.2017 /

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahtev Priloga o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).
 On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the Handbook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Prilozima moraju se prijaviti "KVALITET" NS a.d. NS.
 Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the device, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mention Handbook, shall be forwarded to "KVALITET".

Mesto i datum izdavanja: Važi do:
 Place and date: Valid until:
 Nil, 08.09.2017. 05.09.2020.



Vladimir Vuksinović, dipl.ing.
 Vladimír Vuksinović, dipl.ing.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su listovani sa proizvoda koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.
 Bul. Svetog cara Konstantina 82-84, 11000, Beograd, Tel: (01)550-765, 550-624, Fax: (01)550-036, 550-058
 e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs

Information

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves ▶▶

Serbian models

Hands-Free Telephone System*

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY"(DoC) is available at the following:

DoC address: DENSO TEN Limited
2-28, Goshō-dori 1-chome, Hyogo-ku, Kobe, 652-8510, Japan

Ovim, DENSO TEN Limited, izjavljuje da ovaj FT0056A je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

FUJITSU TEN LIMITED has changed the company name to DENSO TEN Limited from November 1, 2017.

Information

	Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta "KVALITET" NS Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета "КВАЛИТЕТ" НС Joint-stock company for quality testing "KVALITET" NS		
POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTO Broj: P1617174400		CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE No.	
Podnosilac zahteva: Applicant:	RTTE CONSULTING DOO 11050 BEOGRAD-RAKOVICA KNEZA VIŠESLAVA 63/2.7		
Vrsta opreme: Equipment category:	AUDIO UREDJAJ ZA AUTOMOBIL SA BLUETOOTH, WLAN I GPS		
Oznaka tipa/modela: Equipment type/model:	FT0056A		
Robna marka: Equipment trademark:	FUJITSU TEN		
Proizvođač: Manufacturer:	FUJITSU TEN LIMITED Japan		
Vrednovana dokumentacija: Evaluated documentation:			
Laboratorija/ ispitni uredjaj:	10075007H, 21.11.2013. /	Bezbednost/Safety: UL Japan, Inc. Head Office EMC Lab.	
Laboratorij/ Test report:	10075007H, 08.11.2013. / RTTeR&TTE, UL Japan, Inc. Head Office EMC Lab. 10374239H-W, 02.10.2014. / 10374239H-V, 02.10.2014. / 10075007H-C, 08.11.2013. /	EMC/EMC: UL Japan, Inc. Head Office EMC Lab.	
Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahtev: "Pravilnik o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi" (SI, glava RS, 11/2012). On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the Handbook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 1/2012).			
Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koj učina na usaglašenost na navedenim Priručnicima moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet"-u, a.d. NS. Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical characteristics which may influence an conformity to the above mentioned Handbook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".			
Prvo izdavanje: Potvrde za navedenu opremu: 25.11.2014. Broj Potvrde: P1614126000			
Mesto i datum izdavanja: Place and date:	NS, 22.11.2017.	Generalni direktor Vladimir Vukašević, dpt.inh.	
Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su izdati sa proizvođača koji su bili predmet vrednovanja. This document is valid only for products which were issued by the manufacturer who was the subject of the evaluation. Bul. Svetog Cara Konstantina 62-68, 11000, Beograd, Srbija. Tel: (011)550-796, 550-024, Fax: (011)550-836, 550-068 e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs			

Moroccan models

Remote Transmitter*

AGRÉÉ PAR L' ANRT MAROC
 Numéro d' agrément: MR 8359 ANRT 2013
 Date d' agrément: 19/07/2013

REPUBLIQUE ENI MAROC
 OFFICE NATIONAL DE REGULATION DES TELECOMMUNICATIONS
ANRT
 دارة تنظيم الاتصالات المغربية

DIRECTION TECHNIQUE
 N°: ANRT/OTEC/DAAS/AGRE/104/2013

Paris le 19 JUIL 2013

CERTIFICAT D'AGRÈMENT

- Vu la LD N° 24-99 RELATIVE A LA POSTE ET AUX TELECOMMUNICATIONS TELLE QU'ELLE A ETE MODIFIEE ET COMPLETEE ;
 - Vu la DECISION ANRT/DC/N°1304 DU 29/12/2004 FIXANT LE REGIME D'AGRÈMENT DES EQUIPEMENTS TERMINAUX ET DES INSTALLATIONS RADIOELECTRIQUES TELLE QUE COMPLETEE PAR LA DECISION ANRT/DC/N°06/06 DU 28 JUILLET 2006 ;
 - Vu la DECISION ANRT/DC/N°07/06 DU 28 JUILLET 2006 FIXANT LES SPECIFICATIONS TECHNIQUES D'AGRÈMENT DES EQUIPEMENTS TERMINAUX ET DES INSTALLATIONS RADIOELECTRIQUES ELLE QU'ELLE A ETE MODIFIEE ET COMPLETEE PAR LA DECISION ANRT/DC/N°05/06 DU 22 JUILLET 2009 ;
 - Vu la DECISION ANRT/DC/N°07/10 DU 13 OCTOBRE 2010 FIXANT LES CONDITIONS TECHNIQUES D'UTILISATION DES INSTALLATIONS RADIOELECTRIQUES COMPOSEES D'APPAREILS DE FAIBLE PUISSANCE ET DE FAIBLE PORTEE (AZFP) ;
 - Vu l'ENGAGEMENT DE CONFORMER AUX SPECIFICATIONS TECHNIQUES DECLAREES DEPOSEES LORS DE LA DEMANDE.

L'ANRT DECIDE D'ACCORDER L'AGRÈMENT A L'EQUIPEMENT DESIGNÉ CI-DESSOUS :

DESIGNATION	EMETTEUR AZFP	N° d'AGRÈMENT	MR 8359 ANRT 2013
MARQUE	HONDA LOCK	DELIVRE LE	19/07/2013
TYPE	HUKS-3T	EXPIRE LE	19/07/2023
FABRICANT	HONDA LOCK MFG. CO.,LTD		

CARACTERISTIQUES TECHNIQUES :

BANDES DE FREQUENCES	ÉMISSION
	433.92 MHz
PUISSANCE APPARENTE RAYONNÉE : -19.8 dBm	

SPÉCIFICATIONS TECHNIQUES APPLICABLES :

INTERFACES SOUMISES A L'AGRÈMENT	ASPECT TELECOMMUNICATION	COMPATIBILITE ELECTROMAGNETIQUE	SECURITE ELECTRIQUE	EXPOSITION AUX RAYONNEMENTS ELECTROMAGNETIQUES
RADIOELECTRIQUE 433.92MHz	ANRT-STAR-AZFP-006	EN 301 486-1/3	EN 60955	EN 62479 EN 62311

CONDITIONS DE COMMERCIALISATION :

- LES PERSONNES, PHYSIQUES OU MORALES, QUI SOUHAITENT COMMERCIALISER L'INTERFACE RADIOELECTRIQUE **AZFP** PRESENTE DANS LE MATERIEL OBJET DU PRESENT CERTIFICAT DOIVENT :
 DEPOSER, AU PREALABLE, UNE DEMANDE AUPRES DE L'ANRT, ACCOMPAGNEE D'UN ENGAGEMENT DONT LE REMPLI, CONFORMEMENT A LA DECISION ANRT/DC/N°07/10 SUSMENTIONNEE ;
 TENIR A JOUR UN REGISTRE COMPORTANT LES INFORMATIONS DEMANDEES PAR LA DITE DECISION.

CONDITIONS D'USAGE :

- L'UTILISATION DE L'INTERFACE RADIOELECTRIQUE **AZFP** PRESENTE DANS LE MATERIEL OBJET DU PRESENT CERTIFICAT EST LIBRE SOUS RESERVE DU RESPECT DES CONDITIONS D'EXPLOITATIONS PRECISEES DANS LES DECISIONS SUSMENTIONNEES REGARDANT L'USAGE DES APPAREILS DE FAIBLE PORTEE ET FAIBLE PUISSANCE (AZFP) ;
- TOUTE MODIFICATION QUE SUBIT CE MATERIEL POSTERIEUREMENT A SON AGRÈMENT, NOTAMMENT AU NIVEAU DE SES CARACTERISTIQUES TECHNIQUES, CE MATERIEL DOIT ETRE SOUMIS A UN NOUVEAU AGRÈMENT ;
- EN CAS DE CHANGEMENT A LA REGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR, NECESSAIRE D'APPORTER DES MODIFICATIONS AU PRESENT EQUIPEMENT OU A LA PROCEDURE APPLICABLE POUR SON USAGE OU SON AGRÈMENT, VOTRE SOCIETE SERA TENUE DE S'Y CONFORMER ;
- EN CAS D'INFRACTION A LA REGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR, CET AGRÈMENT PEUT ETRE SUSPENDU OU RETIRE. VOTRE SOCIETE EST PASSIBLE DES SANCTIONS PREVUES PAR LA REGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR.

CERTIFICAT D'AGRÈMENT ACCORDE A :

Raison sociale : REAL TIME TELECOMMUNICATION
 Adresse : 70, RUE MILENTRA APPT 2 ASSON, Rabat

AGENCE NATIONALE DE REGLEMENTATION DES TELECOMMUNICATIONS

ANRT

Chemin : 14/06/08, B.P. ANRT03
 Boite Postale N° 3919, Rabat 10100
 Téléphone : (212) 5 37 71 84 00
 Télécopie : (212) 5 37 30 36 62
 www.anrt.ma

Abdelhakim BELKHAJA
 Chef de Service

Information

* Not available on all models

Continued 675

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves ▶▶

Moroccan models

Immobilizer System*

AGRÉÉ PAR L' ANRT MAROC
 Numéro d' agrément: MR 8091ANRT 2013
 Date d' agrément: 25/04/2013

BOITILLAGE EN ALUMINIUM
 ANRT
 DIRECTION TECHNIQUE
 N°M : ANRT/TEC/04/A/SAB/BOFF/02013

Rabat le 25 AVR 2013

CERTIFICAT D'AGRÈMENT

- Vu la Loi N°24-89 relative à LA POSTE ET AUX TÉLÉCOMMUNICATIONS TELLE QU'ELLE A ÉTÉ MODIFIÉE ET COMPLÉTÉE ;
- Vu la Décision ANRT/DON/1204 du 28/12/2004 fixant le régime d'agrément des équipements terminaux et des installations radioélectriques telle que complétée par la décision ANRT/DON/0606 du 28 juillet 2006 ;
- Vu la Décision ANRT/DON/0709 du 28 juillet 2008 fixant les spécifications techniques d'agrément des équipements terminaux et des installations radioélectroniques telle qu'elle a été modifiée et complétée par la décision ANRT/DON/0908 du 25 juillet 2009 ;
- Vu la Décision ANRT/DON/0719 du 13 octobre 2010 fixant les conditions techniques d'utilisation des installations radioélectriques comprises d'appareils de faible puissance et de faible portée (A2FP) ;
- Vu l'engagement de conformité aux spécifications techniques déclarées déposés lors de la demande.

L'ANRT décide d'accorder l'agrément à l'équipement désigné ci-dessous :

DÉSIGNATION	ÉMETTEUR/RÉCEPTEUR A2FP	N° d'AGRÈMENT	MR 8091 ANRT 2013
MARQUE	HONDA LOCK	DELIVRÉ LE	25/04/2013
TYPE	HLJK6-1R	EXPIRE LE	24/04/2023
FABRICANT	HONDA LOCK Mfg. Co., Ltd		

CARACTÉRISTIQUES TECHNIQUES :

BANDES DE FRÉQUENCES	ÉMISSION 125 KHz	RÉCEPTION 433,92 MHz
NIVEAU DE CHAMP MAGNÉTIQUE : 24.3 dBµV/m@3m		

SPECIFICATIONS TECHNIQUES APPLICABLES :

INTERFACES SOUMISES à l'AGRÈMENT	ASPECT TÉLÉCOMMUNICATIONS	CONFORMITÉ ELECTROMAGNETIQUE	SÉCURITÉ ELECTRIQUE	EXPOSITION AUX RAYONNEMENTS ELECTROMAGNETIQUES
RADIOÉLECTRIQUE 433,92 MHz	ANRT-ET/AR-A2FP/1/0000	EN 301 489-1/3	EN 60965	EN 62479
RADIOÉLECTRIQUE 125 KHz	ANRT-ET/AR-A2FP/0/0000			

CONDITIONS DE COMMERCIALISATION :

- LES PERSONNES PHYSIQUES OU MORALES, QUI SOULAIENT COMMERCIALISER LE MATÉRIEL OBJET DU PRÉSENT CERTIFICAT DOIVENT :
 - DÉPOSER, AU PRÉALABLE, UNE DEMANDE AUPRÈS DE L'ANRT, ACCOMPAGNÉE D'UN ENGAGEMENT D'ÊTRE REMPLI CONFORMÉMENT À LA DÉCISION ANRT/DON/0719 (DÉCLARATION) ;
 - TENIR À JOUR UN REGISTRE COMPORTANT LES INFORMATIONS DEMANDÉES PAR LA DITE DÉCISION.

CONDITIONS D'USAGE :

- L'UTILISATION DU MATÉRIEL OBJET DU PRÉSENT CERTIFICAT EST LIBRE SOUS RÉSERVE DU RESPECT DES CONDITIONS D'EXPLOITATION PRÉCISÉES DANS LES DÉCISIONS SUBSÉQUENTES RÉGISSANT L'USAGE DES APPAREILS DE FAIBLE PORTÉE ET FAIBLE PUISSANCE (A2FP) ;
- TOUTE MODIFICATION QUE SUBIT CE MATÉRIEL, POSTÉRIEUREMENT À SON AGRÈMENT, NOTAMMENT AU NIVEAU DE SES CARACTÉRISTIQUES TECHNIQUES, CE MATÉRIEL DEVRA ÊTRE SOUMIS À UN NOUVEAU AGRÈMENT ;
- EN CAS DE CHANGEMENT À LA RÉGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR, RENDANT NÉCESSAIRE D'APPORTER DES MODIFICATIONS AU PRÉSENT ÉQUIPEMENT OU À LA PROCÉDURE APPLICABLE POUR SON USAGE OU SON AGRÈMENT, VOTRE SOCIÉTÉ SERA TENUE DE S'Y CONFORMER ;
- EN CAS D'INFRACTION À LA RÉGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR, CET AGRÈMENT PEUT ÊTRE SUSPENDU OU RETIRÉ. VOTRE SOCIÉTÉ EST PASSIBLE DES SANCTIONS PRÉVUES PAR LA RÉGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR.

CERTIFICAT D'AGRÈMENT ACCORDÉ À :

RAISON SOCIALE : REALTIME TELECOMMUNICATION
 Adresse : 70 RUE MELOURA, APPT 2, ADDAL, RABAT.

AGENCE NATIONALE DE RÉGLEMENTATION DES TÉLÉCOMMUNICATIONS
 ANRT

Abdelkarim BELKHADIR
 Chef du Service Agrément

Centre d'agrément, Bd. Al-Roud,
 10th floor, BP. 3939, 62000 65,100
 Rabat - Maroc (711) 3 37 81 81 00
 Télécopie (711) 3 37 82 38 63
 www.anrt.ma

Information

Moroccan models

Keyless Access System*
Keyless remote

AGRÉÉ PAR L' ANRT MAROC
Numéro d' agrément: MR 8477 ANRT 2013
Date d' agrément: 2013/9/24

ROYAUME DU MAROC
Ministère des Télécommunications

ANRT
الوكالة الوطنية لتقنيات الاتصالات

DIRECTION TECHNIQUE
N°REF : ANRT/DT/TEC/DARS/SAG/07/93/2013

Rabat le 24 SEPT 2013

CERTIFICAT D'AGRÈMENT

- VU LA LOI N° 24-98 RELATIVE À LA POSTE ET AUX TÉLÉCOMMUNICATIONS TELLE QU'ELLE A ÉTÉ MODIFIÉE ET COMPLÉTÉE ;
- VU LA DÉCISION ANRT/DG/N°12/04 DU 29/12/2004 FIXANT LE RÉGIME D'AGRÈMENT DES ÉQUIPEMENTS TERMINAUX ET DES INSTALLATIONS RADIOÉLECTRIQUES TELLE QU'ELLE A ÉTÉ COMPLÉTÉE PAR LA DÉCISION ANRT/DG/N°50/09 DU 28 JUILLET 2009 ;
- VU LA DÉCISION ANRT/DG/N°07/06 DU 28 JUILLET 2005 FIXANT LES SPÉCIFICATIONS TECHNIQUES D'AGRÈMENT DES ÉQUIPEMENTS TERMINAUX ET DES INSTALLATIONS RADIOÉLECTRIQUES ELLE QU'ELLE A ÉTÉ MODIFIÉE ET COMPLÉTÉE PAR LA DÉCISION ANRT/DG/N°05/09 DU 22 JUILLET 2009 ;
- VU LA DÉCISION ANRT/DG/N°08/13 DU 30 JUIN 2013 FIXANT LES CONDITIONS TECHNIQUES D'UTILISATION DES INSTALLATIONS RADIOÉLECTRIQUES COMPOSÉES D'APPAREILS DE FAIBLE PUISSANCE ET DE FAIBLE PORTÉE (AZFP) ;
- VU L'ENGAGEMENT DE CONFORMITÉ AUX SPÉCIFICATIONS TECHNIQUES DÉCLARÉES DÉPOSÉ LORS DE LA DEMANDE.

L'ANRT DÉCIDE D'ACCORDER L'AGRÈMENT À L'ÉQUIPEMENT DÉSIGNÉ CI-DESSOUS :

DESIGNATION	EMETTEUR AZFP	N° D'AGRÈMENT	MR 8477 ANRT 2013
MARQUE	CONTINENTAL	DÉLIVRÉ LE	24/09/2013
TYPE	ACURA FOB MY13.5-V2x	EXPIRE LE	23/09/2023
FABRICANT	CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GmbH		

CARACTÉRISTIQUES TECHNIQUES :

BANDES DE FRÉQUENCES	ÉMISSION
	433.060 MHz et 434.180 MHz
PUISSANCE APPARENTE RAYONNÉE	-32,8 dBm

SPECIFICATIONS TECHNIQUES APPLICABLES :

INTERFACES SOUS-JACENTES À L'AGRÈMENT	ASPECT TÉLÉCOMMUNICATIONS	COMPATIBILITÉ ÉLECTROMAGNÉTIQUE	SÉCURITÉ ÉLECTRIQUE	ÉMISSION AUX RAYONNEMENTS ÉLECTROMAGNÉTIQUES
Radioélectrique AZFP	ANRT-STAIR-AZFP ₉₈₈	EN 301 450-1/3	EN 60950	EN 624/9

CONDITIONS DE COMMERCIALISATION :

- LES PERSONNES PHYSIQUES OU MORALES QUI SOUHAITENT COMMERCIALISER L'INTERFACE RADIOÉLECTRIQUE AZFP PRÉSENTE DANS LE MATÉRIEL OBJET DU PRÉSENT CERTIFICAT DOIVENT DÉPOSER, AU PRÉALABLE, UNE DEMANDE AUPRÈS DE L'ANRT, ACCOMPAGNÉE D'UN ENGAGEMENT DÉMONT REMPLI CONFORMÉMENT À LA DÉCISION ANRT/DG/N°08/13 SURMENTIONNÉE.
- TENIR À JOUR UN REGISTRE COMPORTANT LES INFORMATIONS DEMANDÉES PAR LA DITE DÉCISION.

CONDITIONS D'USAGE :

- L'UTILISATION DE L'INTERFACE RADIOÉLECTRIQUE AZFP PRÉSENTE DANS LE MATÉRIEL OBJET DU PRÉSENT CERTIFICAT EST LIBRE SOUS RÉSERVE DU RESPECT DES CONDITIONS D'EXPLOITATIONS PRÉCISÉES DANS LES DÉCISIONS SURMENTIONNÉES RELATIVES À L'USAGE DES APPAREILS DE FAIBLE PORTÉE ET FAIBLE PUISSANCE (AZFP).
- TOUTE MODIFICATION QUI SUIT CE MATÉRIEL NOTAMMENT À SON AGRÈMENT, NOTAMMENT AU NIVEAU DE SES CARACTÉRISTIQUES TECHNIQUES, CE MATÉRIEL DEVRA ÊTRE SOUMIS À UN NOUVEAU AGRÈMENT.
- EN CAS DE CHANGEMENT À LA RÉGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR, RENVOYANT NECESSAIRE D'APPORTER DES MODIFICATIONS AU PRÉSENT ÉQUIPEMENT OU À LA PROCÉDURE APPLICABLE POUR SON USAGE OU SON AGRÈMENT, VOTRE SOCIÉTÉ SERA TENUE DE S'Y CONFORMER.
- EN CAS D'INFRACTION À LA RÉGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR, CET AGRÈMENT PEUT ÊTRE SUSPENDU OU RETIRÉ, VOTRE SOCIÉTÉ EST PASSIBLE DES SANCTIONS PRÉVUES PAR LA RÉGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR.

CERTIFICAT D'AGRÈMENT ACCORDÉ À :

Raison sociale : REAL TIME TELECOMMUNICATION
Adresse : 70, RUE MELKOUNA APPT 2 AGDAL, RABAT

AGENCE NATIONALE DE RÉGLEMENTATION DES TÉLÉCOMMUNICATIONS

ANRT

Abdelkarim ELKHAJIR
Chef du Service Agréments

Centre d'offices: 85, Av. Mohammed VI, Rabat, BP. 9939, Réserve: 05 330
Téléphone : (212) 5 37 71 64 00
Télécopie : (212) 5 37 30 76 42
www.anrt.ma

Information

* Not available on all models

Continued 677

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves ▶▶

Moroccan models

Keyless Access System*
Power control unit

AGRÉÉ PAR L' ANRT MAROC
Numéro d' agrément: MR 7815 ANRT 2013
Date d' agrément: 2013/1/28

ROYAUME DU MAROC
ANRT
Direction Technique
N° de l'agrément: MR 7815 ANRT 2013

CERTIFICAT D'AGRÈMENT

Vu la Loi N° 24-88 relative à la Poste et aux Télécommunications telle qu'elle a été modifiée et complétée ;
Vu la Décision ANRT/009/1004 du 28/02/04 fixant le régime d'agrément des équipements terminaux et des installations radioélectriques telle que complétée par la décision ANRT/009/0506 du 28 juillet 2006 ;
Vu la Décision ANRT/009/0706 du 28 juillet 2006 fixant les spécifications techniques d'agrément des équipements terminaux et des installations radioélectriques telle qu'elle a été modifiée et complétée par la décision ANRT/009/0908 du 22 juillet 2008 ;
Vu la Décision ANRT/009/0707 du 19 octobre 2010 fixant les conditions techniques (utilisation des installations radioélectriques composées d'appareils de faible puissance et de faible portée (AZFP)) ;
Vu l'engagement de conformité aux spécifications techniques déclarées depuis l'avis de la demande ;
L'ANRT DÉCIDE D'ACCORDER L'AGRÈMENT À L'ÉQUIPEMENT DÉSIGNÉ CI-DESSOUS :

DESIGNATION	ÉMETTEUR/RÉCEPTEUR AZFP	N° d'AGRÈMENT	MR 7815 ANRT 2013
MARQUE	CONTINENTAL	DELIVRE LE	28/01/2013
TYPE	46627612	EXPIRE LE	27/01/2023
FABRICANT	CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GMBH		

CARACTÉRISTIQUES TECHNIQUES :

BANDES DE FRÉQUENCES	ÉMISSION	RÉCEPTION
	125 KHz	125 KHz
NIVEAU DE CHAMP MAGNÉTIQUE : 18,74 (µA/m)@10m		

SPÉCIFICATIONS TECHNIQUES APPLICABLES :

INTERFACES BORNES A L'AGRÈMENT	ASPECT TELECOMMUNICATIONS	EXIGENCES DE COMPATIBILITE ELECTROMAGNETIQUE	EXIGENCES DE SECURITE ELECTRIQUE	EXPOSITION AUX RAYONNEMENTS ELECTROMAGNETIQUES
RADIOÉLECTRIQUE 125 KHz	ANRT-STAIR-AZFP _{125KHz}	EN 301 488-1/3	EN 60950	EN 62369

CONDITIONS DE COMMERCIALISATION :

- LES PERSONNES PHYSIQUES OU MORALES QUI SOUHAITENT COMMERCIALISER L'INTERFACE RADIOÉLECTRIQUE AZFP PRÉSENTÉ DANS LE MATÉRIEL OBJET DU PRÉSENT CERTIFICAT DOIVENT :
 - DEPOSER, AU PRÉALABLE, UNE DEMANDE AUPRÈS DE L'ANRT, ACCOMPAGNÉE D'UN ENGAGEMENT DÔNEMENT REMPLI, CONFORMÉMENT À LA DÉCISION ANRT/009/0706/0707/0908 ;
 - TENIR À JOUR UN REGISTRE COMPORTANT LES INFORMATIONS DEMANDÉES PAR LA DITE DÉCISION.

CONDITIONS D'USAGE :

- L'UTILISATION DE L'INTERFACE RADIOÉLECTRIQUE AZFP PRÉSENTÉ DANS LE MATÉRIEL OBJET DU PRÉSENT CERTIFICAT EST LIBRE SOUS RÉSERVE DU RESPECT DES CONDITIONS D'EXPLOITATIONS PRÉCISÉES DANS LA DÉCISION SUBSÉQUENTE REGARDANT L'USAGE DES APPAREILS DE FAIBLE PORTÉE ET FAIBLE PUISSANCE (AZFP) ;
- TOUTE MODIFICATION QUE SUBIT CE MATÉRIEL, POSTÉRIEUREMENT À SON AGRÈMENT, NOTAMMENT AU NIVEAU DE SES CARACTÉRISTIQUES TECHNIQUES, CE MATÉRIEL DEVRA ÊTRE SOUMIS À UN NOUVEAU AGRÈMENT ;
- EN CAS DE CHANGEMENT À LA RÉGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR, RENDANT NÉCESSAIRE D'APPORTER DES MODIFICATIONS AU PRÉSENT ÉQUIPEMENT OU À LA PROCÉDURE APPLICABLE POUR SON USAGE, OU SON AGRÈMENT, VOTRE SOCIÉTÉ SERA TENUE DE S'Y CONFORMER ;
- EN CAS D'INAPPLICABILITÉ À LA RÉGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR, CET AGRÈMENT PEUT ÊTRE SUSPENDU OU RETIRÉ. VOTRE SOCIÉTÉ EST PASSIBLE DES SANCTIONS PRÉVUES PAR LA RÉGLEMENTATION EN VIGUEUR.

CERTIFICAT D'AGRÈMENT ACCORDÉ À :

RAISON SOCIALE : REALTIME TELECOMMUNICATION
Adresse : 70 Rue Moukha, Apt 2 Agdal - Rabat.

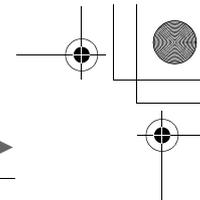
AGENCE NATIONALE DE RÉGLEMENTATION DES TELECOMMUNICATIONS

ANRT
Centre : 11, bd. An-Nakhl
Téléphone : (212) 3 37 71 84 00
Fax : (212) 3 37 71 84 00
www.anrt.ma

Abdelhak BELKHADIR
Chef de Service Agrément

Information

678 * Not available on all models

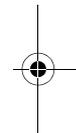


▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves ▶▶

Moroccan models

Keyless Access System*
ENGINE START/STOP switch

AGRÉÉ PAR L' ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR 9492 ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément: 23/07/2014

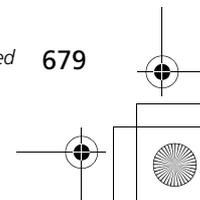
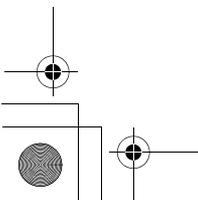


Information



* Not available on all models

Continued 679



▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves ▶▶

Ukrainian models

Remote Transmitter*

ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ

ТОВ «Хонда Україна» (Україна, 08132, Київська область, м. Вышинец, вул. Лесі Українки, 73, код ЄДРПОУ 34288537)
(назва або найменування виробника або розробника продукції, місце виробництва, адреса, код вказівки ЄДРПОУ (за наявності))

в особі **Директора Тавчу Кисляча**
(імя, прізвище, ім'я по батькові уповноваженої особи)

підтверджує, що радіоблокування системи доступу до автомобіля торговельної марки **Honda Lock моделі НІК6-3Т (Keyless transmitter)**
(назва моделі продукції, тип, марка, типова)

що виготовляється за **Технічною специфікацією виробника**
(назва та відомство технічної документації, номер сертифікату вказівки конструкторів)

на **"Honda Lock Мфі. Св. Ltd." (3780 Oaza Shimonaka, Sadawara-Cho, Miyazaki-Shi, Miyazaki Pref. 880-0293, Japan / Японія) та підприємств "Honda Lock (Guangdong) Co., Ltd." (8 Qianye Tian Road Xian'an District Shantou City, 524215, China)**
(назва виробника продукції, код адреси та міста вироблення продукції, для технічного керівника код вказівки ЄДРПОУ)

відповідає вимогам Технічного регламенту радіоблокування і телекомунікаційного кімшового (термінального) обладнання, а також нормативним документам, застосування яких є доказом відповідності пристрою вимогам зазначеного Технічного регламенту (у разі їх застосування):

Позначення пункту роз'яснень до пункту 9 Технічного регламенту	Позначення нормативного документу	Назва, номер і дата атестації акредитованої випробувальної лабораторії	Номер і дата протоколу (міту) випробувань
Пункт 1 пункту 9 (акустична)	ДСТУ ІЕС 60045:2009; ДСТУ EN 4071:2009	ВІЛ ДП ВІЛ "Свіма" (вулиця Героїв війни 18.05.14)	№ 14/913 від 21.10.2014
Пункт 2 пункту 9 (електромагнітна сумісність)	ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-1:2008; ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-3:2009		№ 14/913 від 21.10.2014
Пункт 3 пункту 9 (радіо)	ETSI EN 300 226-2 V2.3.1		№ 14/913 від 21.10.2014
Пункт 4 пункту 9 (накладення до телекомунікаційної мережі загальної користування)	—		—

Сертифікат, заїг або висновок (за наявності) **ВИСНОВОК** від 21.10.2014 № УЧН-14/0-302, Сертифікат дослідження конструкторів від 21.10.2014 № U.A.TR.052.252-14
(назва документа, його номер, дата, місце та розробник)

ООВ УКРЧАСТОТАГЛІД, 03179, м. Київ, пр-м Перемиський, 15 кв. тех. (44) 422-85-44, реєстр. номер U.A.TR.052 за наказом Міністерства розвитку України від 03.12.2012 №1381
(назва органу та адреса провадження послуг з мікропровадження)

Оцінка відповідності пристрою проведена за допомогою **дослідження конструкторів**. Декларацію складено під відповідальність виробника/уповноваженої особи/постачальника (необхідне підкреслити)

Директор **Тавчу Кисляча**
(імя та прізвище)

Місцезнаходження: Київ, 2014 р.

Декларація вклада **ООВ УКРЧАСТОТАГЛІД**

на об'єкт **03179, м. Київ, пр-м Перемиський, 15 кв. тех. (44) 422-85-44, реєстраційний номер ООВ - U.A.TR.052**
(назва адресного пункту, адреса, ідентифікаційний код розробника/виробника ООВ)

Об'єктовий номер **№ U.A.TR.052.252-14** Дата об'єкту **10.12.2015**
(код для пошуку при реєстрації декларації про відповідність)

Керівник ООВ УКРЧАСТОТАГЛІД **О. Г. Лисенко**
(імя)

М.П.

Чинність Декларації про відповідність можна перевірити в базі даних органу з оцінки відповідності, що розміщена на <http://os.ukrf.gov.ua>.

Information

Ukrainian models

Immobilizer System*

ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ

ТОВ «Хонда Україна» (Україна, 08132, Київська область, м. Вишневе, вул. Лосі Українців, 73, код ЄДРПОУ 34288537)
(назва виробника виробника або розробника даної моделі - декларатора, Україна, або територія, яка адрес, код органу ЄДРПОУ (в дужках))

в особі **Директора Таву Касакава**
(назва, прізвище та імена повного (повноіменного) особи)

підтверджує, що радіоблокування системи доступу до автомобіля торговельної марки **Honda Lock моделі HLIK6-1R (Integrate Immobilizer System with RKE)**
(назва даної пристрою, тип, марка, модель)
 що виготовляється за **Технічною специфікацією виробника**
(назва та локація технічної документації, номер карти (карт) сервісу мережі або протоколу)

на **"Honda Lock Mfg. Co., Ltd." (3700 Oaza Shimomata, Sadowara-Chu, Miyazaki-Shi, Miyazaki Pref. 880-0293, Japan / Японія) та підприємств "Honda Lock (GuangDong) Co., Ltd." (R GuangJin Road Xian'an Zhongshan GuangDong, China, 528415 / Китай)**
(назва підприємства виробника, яка адреса та інші виробничі параметри, що відповідають виробнику даної моделі (ЄДРПОУ))

відповідає вимогам Технічного регламенту радіоблокування і телекомунікаційного кінцевого (термінального) обладнання, а також нормативним документам, застосування яких є доказом відповідності пристрою вимогам зазначеного Технічного регламенту (у разі їх застосування):

Позначення пункту розділу "Вимоги до пристроїв" Технічного регламенту	Позначення нормативного документу	Назва, номер і дата останньої версійної випробувальної лабораторії	Номер і дата протоколу (вступу) випробувань
Підпункт 1 пункту 9 (Формат)	ДСТУ ІЕС 65005-2009; ДСТУ EN 50071-2009	ВЦДП НП "Омега" (вулиця Аврамова) №20339 від 18.05.14)	№ 14914 від 21.10.2014
Підпункт 2 пункту 9 (електромеханічна конструкція)	ДСТУ ЕТБ1 EN 301 489-1:2008; ДСТУ ЕТБ1 EN 301 489-3:2009		№ 14914 від 21.10.2014
Підпункт 3 пункту 9 (пази)	ETSI EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1; ETSI EN 300 220-2 V1.5.1		№ 14914 від 21.10.2014
Підпункт 4 пункту 9 (накладення до телекомунікаційної мережі національної комунікації)	—		—

Сертифікат, згідно з висновком (за наявності) **ВІСНОВОК** від 21.10.2014 № УЧН-14/Д.301, Сертифікат дослідження конструкції від 21.10.2014 № UA.TR.052.251-14
(назва документа, його номер, дата, орган з/б реєстрації)
ООВ УКРЧАСТОТАГЛВД, 01179, м. Київ, пр-м Перемоги, 15 км, тел. (44) 422-85-44, реєстр. номер UA.TR.052 за наказом Міністерства зв'язку України від 03.12.2012 №1381
(назва органу та адреса правлячого органу з оцінки відповідності)

Оцінка відповідності пристрою проведена за процедурою **дослідження конструкції**. Декларацію складено під відповідальністю виробника/уповноваженої особи/постачальника (необхідне підкреслити)

Директор (підпис)  Таву Касакава (Назва та прізвище)

МП «21» жовтня 2014 р.

Деклараций орган **ООВ УКРЧАСТОТАГЛВД,**
 на об'єкт **01179, м. Київ, пр-м Перемоги, 15 км, тел. (44) 422-85-31, реєстраційний номер ООВ - UA.TR.052,**
(назва правлячого органу, адреса, інформаційний веб-ресурс правлячого ООВ)

Об'єктовий номер **№ UA.TR.052.251-14** Дата об'єкту **10.10.2015**
(код для вказівки про реєстрацію декларції про відповідність)

Керівник ООВ УКРЧАСТОТАГЛВД  О. Г. Лисенко
(підпис)

М.П. 

Чинність Декларації про відповідність можна перевірити в базі даних органу з оцінки відповідності, що розміщена на <http://lov.acrf.gov.ua>.

Information

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves* ▶▶

Ukrainian models

Keyless Access System*
Keyless remote

Operational frequency band:	433.66MHz+/-16kHz 434.18MHz+/-16kHz
Maximum Output Power:	0dBm



Information

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves* ▶▶

Ukrainian models

Keyless Access System*
Power control unit

Operational frequency band: 125kHz +/- 3kHz
Maximum Output Power: 66dBuA/m at 10m



Information

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves* ▶

Ukrainian models

Keyless Access System*
ENGINE START/STOP switch

Operational frequency band: 125kHz.
Maximum Output Power: 65dBuV/m@3m

ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ

ТОВ «Хенда Україна» (Україна, 08137, Київська область, м. Пиньск, вул. Десі Українці, 73, код ЄДРПОУ 34288537)
(назва виробника виробів або уповноваженої особи - виробника виробів, що зазначаються. Вказати код країни ЄДРПОУ (за наявності))

в особі **Директора Таву Каскара**
(назва, прізвище, ім'я та по-батькові повноваженої особи)

підтверджує, що радіоблокування системи доступу до автомобіля торговельної марки **HONDA** моделі **TWK1A0028 (Immobilizer base station)**
(назва типу виробу, тип, марка, модель)

що виготовляється за **Технічним специфікаційним виробництвом**
(назва інструкції технічної документації)

на **"ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD."**, 6-3-16, Nakano, Fuchu-city, Miyagi-pref, 989-6181 Japan / Японія на підприємстві **"ALCOM ELECTRONICOS DE MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V."**, Avenida Industrial Del Norte, Lote 5 - 1, Parque Industrial Del Norte, Cd. Bustamante Toluca, Mexico, C.P. 88726 / Мексика
(назва виробника виробів або особи та назва виробника виробів, для підтвердження виробів код країни ЄДРПОУ)

відповідає вимогам Технічного регламенту радіоблокування і телекомунікаційного кімбіного (термінального) обладнання, а також нормативним документам, застосування яких є доказом відповідності пристрою вимогам зазначеного Технічного регламенту (у разі їх застосування):

Позначення пункту регламенту "Вимоги до пристроїв" Технічного регламенту	Позначення нормативного документу	Назва, номер і дата актуальності акредитованої метрологічної лабораторії	Номер і дата протоколу (звіт) випробувань
Параграф 1 пункту 9 (Бенеза)	ДСТУ ІЕС 60065:2009; ДСТУ ІЕН 30371:2009		№ 1531 від 03.03.2013
Параграф 2 пункту 9 (селекційна частота)	ДСТУ ЕТН ІЕН 301 488-1:2008; ДСТУ ЕТН ІЕН 301 489-2:2009		№ 1531 від 03.03.2013
Параграф 3 пункту 9 (радіо)	ETSI EN 300 330-2 V1.5.1	МІІ ДІІ "Омега" (спеціальна акредитована) РОС1139 від 18.09.14	№ 1531 від 03.03.2013
Параграф 4 пункту 9 (спасівачи від телекомунікаційної мережі загального користування)	---		---

Сертифікат, звіт або висновок (за наявності) **ВНІСНОВОК** від 03.03.2015 № УЧН-15Д.112, Сертифікат дослідження конструкції від 03.03.2015 № ЕА.ТН.052.100 -15

ООВ УКРЧАСТОТАГЛІД, 01179, м.Київ, пр-т Перемоги, 15 км, тел. (04) 422-85-44, роспис. номер ЕА.ТН.012 на вказаний Миткокомрозкету України від 03.12.2012 №1381
забезпечує та видає призначення органу з питань відповідності

Оцінка відповідності пристрою проведена за процедурою **дослідження конструкції**. Декларацію складено від підписаної відповідальності виробника/уповноваженої особи/поставляльника (необхідне підкреслити)

Директор (підпис) _____ Таву Каскара (підпис та печатка)

МП «03» березня 2015 р.

Information

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves ▶▶

Ukrainian models

Keyless Access System*
ENGINE START/STOP switch



Information

* Not available on all models

Continued 685

►► Devices that Emit Radio Waves ►►

Ukrainian models

Hands-Free Telephone System*

ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ

ТОВ «Нормикон-Україна»

О'укаїна, Запорізька обл., 72319, м. Мелітополь, вул. Кірова 129, офіс 314, код ЄДРПОУ 37463168)
 (залежно від місця виробництва або імпортування) або: Україна, м. Київ, вул. Солов'янка, 10, офіс 314, код ЄДРПОУ 37463168)
 в особі **директора ТОВ «Нормикон-Україна» Шелестів О.В.**

підтвержує, що **Комплекс автомобільний мультимедійний торговельної марки FUJITSU TEN моделі FT0056A з обладнанням радіодіагносту та GPS-приймачем**
 (залежно від місця виробництва або імпортування)
 що виготовляється за **Технічною специфікацією виробника**
 (залежно від місця виробництва або імпортування)
 на **"Fujiitsu Ten Limited" (2-28, Goshu-dori 1-chome, Hyogo-ku, Kobe, 652-8510, Japan / Японія) на підприємстві "Fujiitsu Ten Electronics (Wuxi) Ltd." (No. 18, Xinhua Road, Wuxi National Hi-Tech Industrial Development Zone, Jiangsu, China 214028/ Китай), "Fujiitsu Ten España, S.A." (Pol. Ind. Guadalquivir, C/Cesar Vallejo, 16, 29004 Málaga, Spain/ Іспанія)**
 (залежно від місця виробництва або імпортування) відповідає вимогам Технічного регламенту радіообладнання і телекомунікаційного кімнатного (термінального) обладнання, а також нормативним документам, застосування яких є доказом відповідності пристрою вимогам зазначеного Технічного регламенту (у разі їх застосування):

Позначення пункту результату "Вимоги до пристроїв" Технічного регламенту	Позначення нормативного документа	Назва, номер і дата аттестата акредитації виробничої лабораторії	Номер і дата протоколу (звіт) випробувань
Підпункт 1 пункту 9 (безпека)	ДСТУ ІЕС 60665:2009 ДСТУ EN 50185:2007	ВІД ДТНД "Омега" (аттестат акредитації №201319 від 19.05.14)	№14/949 від 12.11.14
Підпункт 2 пункту 9 (електромагнітна сумісність)	ДСТУ ЕТХ EN 301 490-1:2008 ДСТУ ЕТХ EN 301 486-1:2009 ДСТУ ЕТХ EN 301 487-1:2008	ВІД ДТНД "Омега" (аттестат акредитації №201319 від 19.05.14)	№14/949 від 12.11.14
Підпункт 3 пункту 9 (радіо)	ETSI EN 300 440-2 V1.4.1 (2010-04) ДСТУ ЕТХ EN 300 328:2008	ВІД ДТНД "Омега" (аттестат акредитації №201319 від 19.05.14)	№14/949 від 12.11.14
Підпункт 4 пункту 9 (підключення до телекомунікаційної мережі загальної користування)	"	"	"

Сертифікат звіт або висновок (за наявності) Сертифікат № UA.086.00821-14 від 12.11.14, виданий ООВ ДТНД "Омега", (99053, м. Севастополь, вул. Визволення, 20, тел. 0692 53-70-72, факс 0692 46-96-79, e-mail: info@omega-dtn.com.ua)
 (залежно від місця виробництва або імпортування)

Оцінка відповідності пристрою проведена за процедури **"Дослідження конструкторів"**
 (залежно від місця виробництва або імпортування) відповідно до вимог Технічного регламенту радіообладнання і телекомунікаційного кімнатного (термінального) обладнання під підписом відповідальності виробника / імпортованої особи / постачальника (необхідне підписати):

Шелестів О.В.
 Директор
 2 листопада 2014 р.
 (дата)

Експертську перевірку проведено ООВ ДТНД "Омега" (залежно від місця виробництва або імпортування) в Києві в Реєстрі № 18.0000.00111-14 від 21.11.2015р.

Додаток до декларації про відповідність.

Технічні характеристики обладнання радіодіагносту у складі комплексу автомобільного мультимедійний торговельної марки FUJITSU TEN моделі FT0056A.

Технічні характеристики обладнання радіодіагносту (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n; Bluetooth):

Назва характеристики	Значення або позначення	
	стандарту IEEE 802.11 b/g/n	стандарту IEEE 802.15.1
Служба радіочастот	ФКС/СНАНА	Малопотужні застосування
Радіотехнологія	Широкополосний радіодіагност	Широкополосний радіодіагност
Смуга радіочастот	2400...2483,5 МГц	2400...2483,5 МГц
Смуга (широкополосної) частоти	5 МГц	1 МГц
Тип модуляції/клас випромювання	23MCS1W 23MCS1W	1MCS1W 1MCS1W
Метод радіодіагносту	CSMA-CA SSMA-TDD	CSMA-CA/TDD
Максимальна потужність передавача, не більше:	20 дБм (100 мВт)	EIRP ≤ 3,5 мВт
Тип антен: коефіцієнт	Інтегрована / мінує 5,7 дБі	Інтегрована / мінує 5,7 дБі

Шелестів О.В.
 Директор
 2 листопада 2014 р.
 (дата)

Експертську перевірку проведено ООВ ДТНД "Омега" (залежно від місця виробництва або імпортування) в Києві в Реєстрі № 18.0000.00111-14 від 21.11.2015р.

Information

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves ▶▶

Ukrainian models

Hands-Free Telephone System*

**ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ
про відповідність**

Технічному регламенту з електромагнітної сумісності обладнання
(згідно з технічним регламентом)
ТОВ «Норманд-Україна»
(Україна, Закарпатська обл., 72319, м. Мелітополь, вул. Кірова 139, офіс 314, код ЄДРПОУ 37463168)

підтверджує, що Комплекс автомобільний мультимедійний торговельної марки FUJITSU TEN моделі FTU056A з обладнаннями радіодоступу та GPS-приймачем (включаючи: антенну, екран, клавіші, кнопки, сенсорний екран та інші частини автомобіля, які не вносять додаткових змін до конструкції автомобіля), що виготовляється "Fujitsu Ten Limited" (3-28, Goshu-dori 1-chome, Hyogo-ku, Kobe, 652-8510, Japan / Японія) на підприємстві "Fujitsu Ten Electronics (Wuxi) Ltd." (No.19, Xinhua Road, Wuxi National Hi-Tech Industrial Development Zone, Jiangsu, China 214028/ Китай), "Fujitsu Ten España, S.A" (Pol. Ind. Guadalhorque, C/Cesar Vallejo, 16, 29004 Malaga, Spain / Іспанія)

відповідає вимогам (визначеним технічними стандартами в Україні згідно з технічним регламентом та вимогами, що застосовуються до технічних характеристик обладнання, що вноситься до України згідно з технічним регламентом)

ДСТУ СЕНSR 22:2007 Обладнання інформаційних технологій. Характеристики радіодіалог. Норми та методи вимірювання (СЕНSR 22:2006, IET);
ДСТУ СЕНSR 24:2008 Електромагнітна сумісність Обладнання інформаційних технологій. Характеристики інформаційних технологій. Норми та методи вимірювання (СЕНSR 24:1997, IET)

Декларацию складено під цілковитою відповідальністю виробника / уповноваженого представника (необхідне підписати)


Повноважений представник
(підпис)


Повноважений представник
(підпис)

2 листопада 2014 р.
(дата)

Виробник/уповноважений представник
 ООО "НН НН" «Олга»
 Вулкан в Рязань 35 00000001-11
 Ніс + 71 - 11 2075

Information

* Not available on all models

EC Declaration of Conformity Content Outline *

EC Declaration of Conformity



1. The undersigned, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, representing the manufacturers, herewith declares that the machinery described below fulfills all the relevant provisions of:

- The EC-directive 2006/42/EC on machinery

2. Description of the machinery
- a) Generic denomination: Pantograph jack
 - b) Function: lifting motor vehicle

c) Model	d) Type
SNB	Honda Type-A
SJD	Honda Type-B
S2A	Honda Type-C
SAH	Honda Type-D
TPB	Honda Type-G
TSA	Honda Type-I
T2V	Honda Type-J
TNY	Honda Type-K

3. Manufacturer (1) : Honda Type-A/B/C/G/L/K
RIKENKAKI CO., LTD.
5-6-12 Chiyoda Sakado-thi,
Saitama 350-0214
JAPAN

4. Manufacturer (2) : Honda Type-D/J
CHANGZHOU RIKENSEIKO MACHINERY CO., LTD.
No. 5 Xinlin Road, Zhongzhou Changzhou,
Jiangsu CHINA

5. Legal person authorised to compile the technical file :
Honda Motor Europe Ltd/Belgian Branch
p/a Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office
Winggaardsveld 1 (Noord Y)
B 9300 Aalst (Belgium)

6. References to harmonized standards	7. Other standards or specifications
EN1494:2000+A1:2008	-

8. Done at: Saitama, Japan
9. Date: 1 December, 2009

Ryoichi Hiraki
Ryoichi Hiraki
President of RIKENKAKI CO., LTD.
President of CHANGZHOU RIKENSEIKO
MACHINERY CO., LTD.

Note: This declaration becomes invalid, if technical or operational modifications are introduced without the manufacturers consent.

Deutsch (German)

EG-Konformitätserklärung
1. Der Unterzeichner, Herr Ryoichi Hiraki, Vertreter der Hersteller, erklärt hiermit, dass die unten beschriebenen Maschinen den relevanten Bestimmungen von folgender Richtlinie entsprechen:
•EG-Richtlinie 2006/42/EC für Maschinen
2. Beschreibung der Maschine
a) Allgemeine Bezeichnung : Scherenwagenheber
b) Funktion : Anhebung des Kraftfahrzeugs
c) Modell d) Typ
3. Hersteller (1)
4. Hersteller (2)
5. Juristische Person, die bevollmächtigt ist, die technische Datei zu erstellen
6. Bezug auf Standardübereinstimmungen
7. Andere Standards oder Spezifikationen
8. Ausgestellt in 9. Datum

Français (French)

Déclaration de conformité CE
1. Le soussigné, M. Ryoichi Hiraki, représentant les fabricants, déclare par la présente que les machines décrites ci-dessous satisfont toutes les dispositions pertinentes de:
•La Directive CE 2006/42/EC concernant les machines
2. Description des machines
a) Dénomination générique : Cric pantographe
b) Fonction : levage de véhicule à moteur
c) Modèle d) Type
3. Fabricant (1)
4. Fabricant (2)
5. Personne morale habilitée à compiler le fichier technique
6. Références aux normes harmonisées
7. Autres normes ou spécifications
8. Fait à 9. Date

Nederland (Dutch)

EG-conformiteitsverklaring
1. De ondergetekende, dhr. Ryoichi Hiraki, die de fabrikanten vertegenwoordigt, verklaart hierbij dat de hieronder beschreven machine voldoet aan alle relevante voorzieningen van:
•De EG-richtlijn 2006/42/EG voor machines
2. Beschrijving van de machine
a) Generieke benaming : Pantograafkrik
b) Functie : Motorvoertuig opheffen
c) Model d) Type
3. Fabrikant (1)
4. Fabrikant (2)
5. Rechtspersoon geautoriseerd voor de samenstelling van het technische dossier
6. Referentie geharmoniseerde normen
7. Andere normen of specificaties
8. Plaats 9. Datum

Dansk (Danish)

EF-overensstemmelseserklæring
1. Undertegnede, hr. Ryoichi Hiraki, som repræsenterer producenterne, erklærer hermed, at de herunder beskrevne maskiner overholder alle de relevante bestemmelser i:
•Maskindirektivet, EU-direktiv 2006/42/EF
2. Beskrivelse af maskinerne
a) Generisk betegnelse : Saksedonkraft
b) Funktion : Til at løfte motorvogn
c) Model d) Type
3. Producent (1)
4. Producent (2)
5. Juridisk person med bemyndigelse til at udarbejde den tekniske fil
6. Henvvisninger til harmoniserede standarder
7. Andre standarder eller specifikationer
8. Sted 9. Dato

<p>Italiano (Italian) Dichiarazione CE di Conformità 1. Il sottoscritto, Sig. Ryoichi Hiraki, rappresentante delle fabbriche, dichiara che il veicolo sotto riportato è conforme alle disposizioni pertinenti alla: •Direttiva 2006/42/CE relative agli autoveicoli 2. Descrizione della vettura a) Denominazione generica : Martinetto a pantografo b) Funzione : sollevamento veicolo a motore c) Modello d) Tipo 3. Fabbrica (1) 4. Fabbrica (2) 5. Legale autorizzato a costituire il fascicolo tecnico 6. Riferimento norme standard 7. Altre norme e specifiche 8. Eseguito a 9. Data</p>	<p>Ελληνικά (Greek) Δήλωση Συμμόρφωσης ΕΚ 1. Ο υπογεγραμμένος, κ. Ryoichi Hiraki, ως εκπρόσωπος των κατασκευαστών, δηλώνει δια του παρόντος ότι το μηχανήμα που περιγράφεται παρακάτω πληροί όλες τις σχετικές διατάξεις της: •Κοινοτικής Οδηγίας 2006/42/ΕΚ σχετικά με μηχανήματα 2. Περιγραφή του μηχανήματος α) Συνήθης ονομασία : Γρύλος αυτοκινήτου β) Λειτουργία : Ανύψωση μηχανοκίνητων οχημάτων γ) Μοντέλο δ) Τύπος 3. Κατασκευαστής (1) 4. Κατασκευαστής (2) 5. Νομικό πρόσωπο εξουσιοδοτημένο για τη σύνταξη του τεχνικού φακέλου 6. Αναφορές στα εναρμονισμένα πρότυπα 7. Άλλα πρότυπα ή προδιαγραφές 8. Συντάχθηκε στη 9. Ημερομηνία</p>
<p>Português (Portuguese) Declaração de Conformidade CE 1. O abaixo-assinado, Ryoichi Hiraki, representando os fabricantes através desta, declara que a maquinaria descrita abaixo cumpre todas as disposições referentes à: •Directiva 2006/42/CE, sobre máquinas. 2. Descrição da maquinaria a) Denominação genérica : Macaco de tesoura b) Função : Elevação de veículo motor c) Modelo d) Tipo 3. Fabricante (1) 4. Fabricante (2) 5. Pessoa jurídica autorizada a compilar o processo técnico 6. Referências às normas harmonizadas 7. Outras normas ou especificações 8. Elaborado em 9. Data</p>	<p>Svenska (Swedish) EG-försäkran om överensstämmelse 1. Undertecknad representant för tillverkaren, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, försäkrar härmed att den nedan beskrivna maskinutrustningen uppfyller alla tillämpliga bestämmelser i: •EU:s maskindirektiv 2006/42/EG 2. Beskrivning av maskinutrustningen a) Generisk benämning : Saxdomkraft b) Funktion : Lyft av motorfordon c) Modell d) Typ 3. Tillverkare (1) 4. Tillverkare (2) 5. Juridisk person behörig att sammanställa den tekniska dokumentationen 6. Hänvisningar till harmoniserade normer 7. Övriga normer eller specifikationer 8. Utfärdad i 9. Datum</p>

<p>Suomi / Suomen kieli (Finnish) EY Vaatustenmukaisuusvakuutus 1. Allekirjoittanut, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, valmistajan edustaja, vakuuttaa täten, että alla kuvattu laite täyttää kaikki seuraavissa säännöksissä annetut asianmukaiset velvoitteet: •Koneita koskeva EY-direktiivi 2006/42/EC 2. Laitteen kuvaus a) Yleisnimike : Saksinosturi b) Käyttötarkoitus : moottorijoneuvon nostaminen c) Malli d) Typpi 3. Valmistaja (1) 4. Valmistaja (2) 5. Teknisen tiedoston kokoamiseen valtuutettu oikeushenkilö 6. Yhdenmukaistettujen standardien viitetiedot 7. Muut standardit tai tiedot 8. Paikka 9. Päiväys</p>	<p>Čeština (Czech) ES - Prohlášení o shodě 1. Niže podepsaný Ryoichi Hiraki jako zástupce výrobce, tímto prohlašuje, že uvedené strojní zařízení splňuje příslušné požadavky Směrnice evropské komise 2006/42/EC pro strojní zařízení. 2. Popis strojního zařízení a) Obecný název : nůžkový zvedák b) Funkce : zvedání motorových vozidel c) Model d) Typ 3. Výrobce (1) 4. Výrobce (2) 5. Právnícká osoba oprávněná k předložení technické dokumentace 6. Odkazy na harmonizované normy 7. Jiné normy nebo specifikace 8. Místo 9. Datum</p>
<p>Polski (Polish) Deklaracja zgodności WE 1. Niżej podpisany, Pan Ryoichi Hiraki, reprezentujący producentów, niniejszym oświadczam, że opisane poniżej urządzenie jest zgodne z wszystkimi stosownymi postanowieniami: •Dyrektywy maszynowej Wspólnoty Europejskiej 2006/42/WE 2. Opis urządzenia a) Nazwa ogólna : podnośnik nożykowy silnikowych b) Przeznaczenie : podnoszenie pojazdów silnikowych c) Model d) Typ 3. Producent (1) 4. Producent (2) 5. Osoba prawna upoważniona do kompilacji dokumentacji technicznej 6. Odniesienie do zharmonizowanych norm 7. Inne normy lub specyfikacje 8. Sporządzono w 9. Data</p>	<p>Slovenčina (Slovak) ES vyhlásenie o zhode 1. Podpísaný Ryoichi Hiraki, zástupca výrobcov, týmto vyhlasuje, že nižšie opísané strojové zariadenie spĺňa všetky príslušné ustanovenia tejto smernice: •Smernica 2006/42/ES o strojových zariadeniach 2. Opis strojového zariadenia a) Generické určenie : pantografický zdvihák b) Funkcia : zdvíhanie motorových vozidiel c) Model d) Typ 3. Výrobca (1) 4. Výrobca (2) 5. Autonizovaný zástupca schopný predložiť technickú dokumentáciu 6. Odkazy na harmonizované normy 7. Iné normy alebo požiadavky 8. Miesto 9. Dátum</p>

►► EC Declaration of Conformity Content Outline ►►

<p>Magyar (Hungarian) EK megfeleléségi nyilatkozat</p> <p>1. Alulírott, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, a gyártók képviselőjében ezennel kijelentem, hogy az alább megnevezett gép teljesíti: -a gépekre vonatkozó 2006/42/EK irányelv összes vonatkozó előírását.</p> <p>2. A gép leírása a) Általános megnevezés : olajos emelő b) Rendeltetés : gépkocsiemelő c) Modell d) Típus 3. Gyártó (1) 4. Gyártó (2) 5. A műszaki dokumentáció összeállítására meghatalmazott jogi személy 6. Harmonizált szabványhivatkozások 7. Egyéb szabványok vagy műszaki jellemzők 8. Kiállítás helye 9. Kiállítás dátuma</p>	<p>Eesti (Estonian) EU vastavusdeklaratsioon</p> <p>1. Tootjate esindaja hr. Ryoichi Hiraki kinnitab käesolevaga, et allpool kirjeldatud kõigile asjakohastele sätetele: -EU masinadirektiiv 2006/42/EU</p> <p>2. Seadmete kirjeldus a) Üldnimetus : kaartungraud b) Funktsioon : mootorsõiduki töstmise mudel d) Tüüp 3. Tootja (1) 4. Tootja (2) 5. Juridiline isik, kes on volitatud koostama tehnilist toimetust 6. Viited harmoneeritud standarditele 7. Muud standardid ja spetsifikatsioonid 8. Koht 9. Kuupäev</p>	<p>Български (Bulgarian) ЕС декларация за съответствие</p> <p>1. Допълно подписаният г-н Рьоичи Хираки, представляващ производителите, декларирам с настоящата, че машината е описана по-долу напълно изпълнява всички съответни разпоредби на: -Европейската директивата 2006/42/ЕС за машиностроенето</p> <p>2. Описание на машината a) Генерично наименование : Пантографен крик b) Функция : повдигане на моторни превозни средства c) Модел d) Тип 3. Производител (1) 4. Производител (2) 5. Юридическо лице, упълномощено да състави техническия файл 6. Препратки към хармонизирани стандарти 7. Други стандарти или спецификации 8. Изготвено в 9. Дата</p>	<p>Român (Romanian) Declarație de conformitate CE</p> <p>1. Subsemnatul Ryoichi Hiraki, reprezentant al producătorilor, declar prin prezenta că utilajul descris mai jos respectă toate prevederile relevante ale: -Directivei CE 2006/42/CE referitoare la mașini</p> <p>2. Descrierea utilajului a) Denumire generică : Cric tip pantograf b) Funcție : ridicarea vehiculelor cu motor c) Model d) Tip 3. Producător (1) 4. Producător (2) 5. Persoana juridică autorizată să redacteze fișierul tehnic 6. Trimiteri la standardele armonizate 7. Alte standarde sau specificații 8. Intocmită în 9. Data</p>
<p>Latviešu (Latvian) EK paziņojums par atbilstību</p> <p>1. Zemāk parakstījis Ryoichi Hiraki, kas pārstāv ražotāju, ar šo paziņo, ka zemāk aprakstītā mašīna atbilst piemērojamām šīs direktīvas prasībām: -EK Mašīnu direktīva 2006/42/EK</p> <p>2. Mašīnas apraksts a) Vispārīgs apzīmējums : Vītnes domkrats b) Funkcija : Spēkratu ceļšana c) Modelis d) Tips 3. Ražotājs (1) 4. Ražotājs (2) 5. Juridiskā persona, kas pilnvarota apkopot tehnisko failu 6. Atsauces uz harmonizētajiem standartiem 7. Citi standarti vai specifikācijas 8. Vieta 9. Laiks</p>	<p>Slovensčina (Slovenian) Izjava o skladnosti ES</p> <p>1. Podpisani g. Ryoichi Hiraki, ki zastopa proizvajalce, s tem izjavlja, da naprava, ki je opisana spodaj, izpolnjuje vse relevantne določbe: -Direktive o napravah 2006/42/ES</p> <p>2. Opis naprave a) Generično ime : Pantografski dvigalnik b) Funkcija : dvigovanje motornega vozila c) Model d) Tip 3. Proizvajalec (1) 4. Proizvajalec (2) 5. Pravna oseba, ki je upravičena do sestave tehničnega dokumenta 6. Reference glede harmoniziranih standardov 7. Drugi standardi ali specifikacije 8. Ustvarjeno v/na 9. Datum</p>	<p>Türk (Turkish) AT Uygunkuk Beyanı</p> <p>1. Aşağıda imzası bulunan Sn. Ryoichi Hiraki, imalâtçıları temsilen, tarif edilen makinelerin aşağıda adı geçen yönetmeliğin ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder: -AT makine direktifi 2006/42/EC</p> <p>2. Makinelerin tanımı a) Jenerik adı : Pantograf krikö b) İşlevi : motorlu taşıtları kaldırma c) Model d) Tür 3. İmalâtçı (1) 4. İmalâtçı (2) 5. Teknik dosyayı düzenlemeye yetkili tüzel kişi 6. Uyumlaştırılmış standartlara atfilar 7. Diğer standartlar ya da şartnameleer 8. Düzenlendiği yer 9. Tarih</p>	<p>Íslenska (Icelandic) EB-samræmisýfirlýsing</p> <p>1. Undirritaður, herra Ryoichi Hiraki, fulltrúi framleiðanda, lýsir yfir að vélbúnaðinum, sem lýst er hér að neðan, uppfyllir öll viðeigandi ákvæði: -EB-filskipunarrinnar 2006/42/EC um vélbúnað</p> <p>2. Lýsing á vélbúnaðinum a) Almennit heiti : Tviarma ljakkur b) Hlutverk : að lyfta vélknúnum ökutækjum c) Gerð d) Tegund 3. Framleiðandi (1) 4. Framleiðandi (2) 5. Lögaðili sem hefur heimild að taka saman tækniskjal 6. Tilvisanir í samhæfða staðla 7. Aðrir staðlar eða tæknilysingar 8. Staður 9. Dagsetning</p>

<p>Español (Spanish) Declaración de Conformidad CE</p> <p>1. El abajo firmante, Sr. Ryoichi Hiraki, en representación de los fabricantes, por la presente declara que la maquinaria descrita a continuación cumple con las disposiciones aplicables de:</p> <p>•La directiva 2006/42/CE relativa a maquinarias</p> <p>2. Descripción de la maquinaria</p> <p>a) Denominación genérica : Gato pantográfico</p> <p>b) Función : Elevación de vehículo automotor</p> <p>c) Modelo d) Tipo</p> <p>3. Fabricante (1)</p> <p>4. Fabricante (2)</p> <p>5. Persona jurídica autorizada para recopilar el archivo técnico</p> <p>6. Referencias de normas armonizadas</p> <p>7. Otras normas o especificaciones</p> <p>8. Elaborada en 9. Fecha</p>	<p>Norsk (Norwegian) EF-samsvarserklæring</p> <p>1. Undertegnede, Ryoichi Hiraki, som representerer produsentene, erklærer herved at maskinen beskrevet nedenfor oppfyller alle relevante bestemmelser i:</p> <p>•EU-maskindirektiv 2006/42/EU</p> <p>2. Beskrivelse av maskineriet</p> <p>a) Generisk betegnelse : Pantografjekk (biljekk)</p> <p>b) Funksjon : løfting av motorkjøretøyer</p> <p>c) Modell d) Type</p> <p>3. Produsent (1)</p> <p>4. Produsent (2)</p> <p>5. Juridisk person med fullmakt til å utarbeide den tekniske dokumentasjonen</p> <p>6. Henvisninger til harmoniserte standarder</p> <p>7. Andre standarder eller spesifikasjoner</p> <p>8. Utarbeidet i 9. Dato</p>
<p>Lietuvių kalba (Lithuanian) EB atitikties deklaracija</p> <p>1. Toliau pasirašęs gamintojų atstovas Ryoichi Hiraki deklaruoja, kad toliau aprašytoji įranga atitinka visas atitinkamas nuostatas, išdėstytas:</p> <p>•EB Direktyvoje 2006/42/EB dėl mašinų</p> <p>2. Įrangos aprašymas</p> <p>a) Bendras pavadinimas : pantografo kėlikis</p> <p>b) Funkcija : motorinės transporto priemonės kėlimas</p> <p>c) Modelis d) Tipas</p> <p>3. Gamintojas (1)</p> <p>4. Gamintojas (2)</p> <p>5. Juridinis asmuo, įgaliotas sudaryti techninę bylą</p> <p>6. Nuoroda į lygiavertčius standartus</p> <p>7. Kiti standartai arba specifikacijos</p> <p>8. Atlikta 9. Data</p>	<p>Hrvatski (Croatian) Izjava o sukladnosti EK</p> <p>1. Ja, dolje potpisani Ryoichi Hiraki, predstavnik proizvođača, ovime izjavljujem da su strojevi opisani u nastavku sukladni s bitnim odredbama:</p> <p>•Direktive 2006/42/EZ Europskog parlamenta i vijeća o strojevima</p> <p>2. Opis stroja</p> <p>a) Generički naziv : pantografska dizalica</p> <p>b) Funkcija : podizanje motornog vozila</p> <p>c) Model d) Tip</p> <p>3. Proizvođač (1)</p> <p>4. Proizvođač (2)</p> <p>5. Pravna osoba ovlaštena za sastavljanje tehničke dokumentacije</p> <p>6. Upućivanje na usklađene norme</p> <p>7. Ostale norme ili specifikacije</p> <p>8. Mjesto 9. Datum</p>

Index

Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 425

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)..... 481

Accessories and Modifications 590

Accessory Power Sockets 224

Adding

Coolant 543, 545, 547

Engine Oil..... 542

Washer..... 551

Additives, Engine Oil 534, 538

Adjustable Speed Limiter 443

Adjusting

Armrest 216

Clock..... 154

Front Seats 206

Head Restraints..... 209

Headlights 191

Mirrors 203

Rear Seats..... 213

Steering Wheel..... 202

Temperature..... 140

Agile Handling Assist..... 471

Air Conditioning System (Climate Control

System) 230

Changing the Mode 230, 231

Defrosting the Windscreen and

Windows..... 233

Dust and Pollen Filter..... 583

Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 232

Sensors 239

Synchronization Mode..... 238

Using Automatic Climate Control 230

Air Pressure 569, 651, 654, 657

Airbags 53

After a Collision 56

Airbag Care..... 65

Event Data Recorder..... 1

Front Airbags (SRS)..... 55

Indicator..... 63, 100

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator 64

Sensors 53

Side Airbags 60

Side Curtain Airbags..... 62

AM/FM Radio 256, 299

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 481

Indicator..... 100

Armrest 216

Audio Remote Controls 247

Audio System 242

Adjusting the Sound 254, 296

Auxiliary Input Jack 245

Error Messages 327

General Information..... 330

HDMI™ Port 244

iPod 271, 309

MP3/WMA/AAC 268, 274, 306, 312

Reactivating 246

Recommended CDs 330

Recommended Devices 332

Remote Controls 247

Security Code 246

Theft Protection 246

USB Flash Drives..... 332

USB Port 243

Audio/Information Screen 250, 281

Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support

System)..... 192

Auto High-Beam Indicator 111

Auto Idle Stop 432, 436

Indicator 106

OFF Button 432, 436

System Indicator 107

Automatic Brake Hold 478

Indicator 95, 478

Coat Hooks.....	226
Compact Spare Tyre.....	608, 651, 654, 657
Console Compartment	220
Continuously Variable Transmission.....	420
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode	425
Creeping	420
Kickdown	420
Operating the Shift Lever	422, 424
Shift Lever Does Not Move.....	624
Shifting.....	421, 423
Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)	
Fluid	549
Controls.....	153
Coolant (Engine).....	543, 545, 547
Adding to the Radiator	544, 548
Adding to the Reserve Tank.....	543, 546, 547
Overheating.....	625
Creeping	
(Continuously Variable Transmission) ...	420
Cruise Control	440
Cup Holders.....	221
Customized Features	144, 335, 345

D

DAB	264, 303
Daytime Running Lights	194
Dead Battery.....	621
Deflation Warning System.....	472
Indicator.....	105, 632
Initialisation.....	472
Defrosting the Windscreen and	
Windows	233
Devices that Emit Radio Waves	660
Diesel.....	27, 498
Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)	553
Dimming	
Headlights.....	187
Rearview Mirror.....	203
Dipstick (Engine Oil).....	540
Directional Signals (Turn Signals).....	186
Display Button	247
Display Setup	255, 297
Door Mirrors	204
Doors.....	156
Door and Tailgate Open Indicator.....	40, 103
Keys	156
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from	
the Inside	166
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from	
the Outside	160
Lockout Prevention System.....	165

Driving	401
Braking	475
Continuously Variable Transmission	420
Cruise Control	440
Shifting Gear	421, 423, 428
Starting the Engine	413, 416
Driving Position Memory System	200
Dust and Pollen Filter	583

E

EC Declaration of Conformity Content	
Outline	688
Eco Assist System.....	11
ECON Button	431
ECON Mode	431
Elapsed Time	139
Electric Parking Brake	
Indicator	94
Electric Parking Brake System	
Indicator	94, 631
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	
Indicator	104, 630
Emergency	643
Emergency Stop Signal	488
Engine	
Coolant	543, 545, 547
Jump Starting	621
Oil	534, 538
Starting.....	413, 416
Switch Buzzer	181

Engine Coolant 543, 545, 547
 Adding to the Radiator 544, 548
 Adding to the Reserve Tank 543, 546, 547
 Overheating..... 625
Engine Oil..... 534, 538
 Adding 542
 Checking 540
 Low Oil Level Symbol 633
 Low Oil Pressure Indicator 94, 628
 Recommended Engine Oil 534, 538
Engine Start/Stop Button 182
EPS (Electric Power Steering)
 System 104, 630
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)..... 88
Exterior Care (Cleaning) 587
Exterior Mirrors 204

F
Features..... 241
Filter
 Dust and Pollen 583
Flat Tyre 596
Floor Mats 586
Fluids
 Brake/Clutch 550
 Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)..... 549
 Engine Coolant..... 543, 545, 547
 Manual Transmission 549
 Windscreen Washer..... 551
FM/AM Radio 256, 299
Fog Lights..... 190
Folding Down the Rear Seats 214
Foot Brake..... 477
Forward Collision Warning 454
 Indicator 112
Front Airbags (SRS)..... 55
Front Fog Light Indicator 108
Front Seats 206
 Adjusting..... 206

Fuel..... 497
 Economy 502
 Gauge..... 140
 Instant Fuel Economy 140
 Low Fuel Indicator 99
 Range 139
 Recommendation 497, 498
 Refueling..... 497, 648
Fuel Economy 502
Fuel Fill Cap 26, 499
Fuel Fill Door 26, 27, 499, 500
Fuses..... 634
 Inspecting and Changing..... 642
 Locations..... 634
G
Gauges 136
Gear Shift Lever Positions
 Continuously Variable Transmission..... 421, 423
 Manual Transmission 428
Glass (care)..... 585, 588
Glove Box..... 220
Glow Plugs Indicator 98

H

Halogen Bulbs.....	555, 558
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT)	
System	361, 382
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History	373, 393
HFT Buttons.....	361, 382
HFT Menus	363, 385
HFT Status Display	362, 384
Limitations for Manual Operation	362, 384
Making a Call	376, 396
Options During a Call	381, 399
Phone Setup.....	367, 388
Receiving a Call	380, 399
Ring Tone	371, 392
Speed Dial	374, 394
Hazard Warning Button	4, 5
HDMI™	317
Head Restraints	209
Headlights	187
Adjuster.....	191
Aiming	555
Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System).....	192
Automatic Operation	188
Dimming	187
Operating	187
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone)	361, 382
High Beam Indicator	108
Hill Start Assist System	415, 418
Honda TRK	596

I

Identification Numbers	659
Vehicle Identification	659
Ignition Switch	181
Illumination Control	
Knob.....	198
Immobilizer System	171
Indicator.....	109
Indicators	92
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	100
Auto High-Beam	111
Auto Idle Stop	106
Auto Idle Stop System	107
Automatic Brake Hold	95, 478
Automatic Brake Hold System	95, 478
Brake System (Amber)	93
Brake System (Red).....	92, 629
Charging System	96, 628
City-Brake Active System (CTBA)	114, 115
Door and Tailgate Open	40, 103
ECON Mode.....	110, 431
Electric Parking Brake	94
Electric Parking Brake System	94, 631
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	104, 630
Forward Collision Warning	112
Front Fog Light.....	108
Glow Plugs.....	98
High Beam	108
Immobilizer System	109
Keyless Access System	110

Lane Departure Warning.....	113
Lights On	108
Low Fuel	99
Low Oil Pressure	94, 628
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System	105, 632
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	96, 629
Passenger Front Airbag On/Off.....	101
Rear Fog Light.....	108
Seat Belt Reminder.....	98
Security System Alarm.....	110
Shift Down	97
Shift Lever Position.....	96
Shift Up	97
Supplemental Restraint System	100
System Message	104
Transmission System	97
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning.....	108
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System.....	102
VSA OFF	102
Instant Fuel Economy	140
Instrument Panel	91
Brightness Control	198
Intelligent Speed Limiter	447
Interior Lights	217
Interior Rearview Mirror	203

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)	612
Jump Starting	621

K

Key Number Tag	158
Keyless Access System	160
Keyless Lockout Prevention	165
Keys	
Built-in Key	157
Lockout Prevention	165
Number Tag	158
Rear Door Won't Open	168
Remote Transmitter	162
Retractable Key	157
Types and Functions	156
Won't Turn	30
Kickdown	
(Continuously Variable Transmission)...	420

L

Lane Departure Warning	458
Button	459
Indicator	113
Language (HFT)	362, 384
Light Switches	187

Lights	187, 555
Auto High-Beam Indicator	111
Automatic	188
Bulb Replacement	555
Daytime Running Lights	194
Fog Lights	190
High Beam Indicator	108
Interior	217
Lights On Indicator	108
Turn Signals	186
Load Limit	405
Locking/Unlocking	156
Childproof Door Locks	168
From Inside	166
From Outside	160
Keys	156
Using a Key	164
Lockout Prevention System	165
Low Battery Charge	628
Low Fuel Indicator	99
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength	159
Low Oil Level	120, 633
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	94, 628
Lower Anchorages	77
Lubricant Specifications	
Chart	651, 654, 657
Luggage (Load Limit)	405
Luggage Area	
Cover	228
Light Bulb	564

M

Maintenance	505
Battery	575
Brake/Clutch Fluid	550
Cleaning	585
Climate Control	582
Coolant	543, 545, 547
Oil	540
Precautions	506
Radiator	544, 546, 548
Remote Transmitter	580
Replacing Light Bulbs	555
Safety	507
Transmission Fluid	549
Tyres	569
Under the Bonnet	530
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	96, 629
Manual Transmission	428
Map Lights	218
Maximum Permissible Weight	405
Meters, Gauges	136
Mirrors	203
Adjusting	203
Door	204
Exterior	204
Interior Rearview	203
Modifications (and Accessories)	590
MP3	268, 274, 306, 312
Multi-Information Display	137
Multi-View Rear Camera	495

N

Numbers (Identification) 659

O

Odometer 139

Off-road Guidelines 411

Oil (Engine) 534, 538

 Adding 542

 Checking 540

 Low Oil Level Symbol 120, 633

 Low Oil Pressure Indicator 94, 628

 Oil Monitor System 514

 Recommended Engine Oil 534, 538

 Viscosity 534, 538

On Board Apps 319

Open Source Licences 334

Opening/Closing

 Bonnet 533

 Panoramic Roof 178

 Power Windows 175

 Tailgate 169

Outside Temperature Display 140

Overheating 625

P

Paddle Shifters

 (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) 425

Panoramic Roof Switch 180

Parking Brake 475

Parking Sensor System 491

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator 64

Passing Indicators 187

Petrol 26, 497

 Economy 502

 Gauge 140

 Information 497

 Instant Fuel Economy 140

 Low Fuel Indicator 99

 Refueling 497

PGM-FI Symbol 135, 633

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 277, 315

Power Windows 175

Precautions While Driving 419

 Rain 420

Pregnant Women 50

Puncture (Tyre) 596

R

Radiator 544, 546, 548

Radio (AM/FM) 256, 299

Radio (DAB) 264, 303

Radio (FM/AM) 256, 299

Radio Data System (RDS) 257, 301

Range 139

RDS (Radio Data System) 257, 301

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror

 Icon 199

Rear Fog Light Indicator 108

Rear Seats (Folding Down) 214

Rearview Mirror 203

Refueling 497

 Diesel 498, 648, 656

 Fuel Gauge 140

 Low Fuel Indicator 99

 Petrol 497, 650, 653

Regulations 660

Remote Transmitter 162

Replacement

 Battery 577, 580

 Bulbs 555

 Fuses 634

 Tyres 571

 Wiper Blade Rubber 565

Resetting a Trip Meter 139

Reverse Tilt Door Mirror 204

Trip Meter	139
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit)	596
Troubleshooting	593
Blown Fuse	634
Brake Pedal Vibrates	31
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door	31
Emergency Towing	643
Engine Won't Start	617
Noise When Braking	32
Overheating.....	625
Puncture/Flat Tyre	596, 608
Rear Door Won't Open	31
Shift Lever Won't Move	624
Warning Indicators	92, 628
Turn Signals	186
Indicators (Instrument Panel).....	108
Tyres	569
Air Pressure	569, 651, 654, 657
Checking and Maintaining.....	569
Inspection.....	569
Puncture (Flat Tyre).....	596, 608
Rotation	572
Spare Tyre	608, 651, 654, 657
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK).....	596
Tyre Chains.....	573
Wear Indicators	570
Winter	573

U

Ultrasonic Sensors	173
Unlocking the Doors from the Inside.....	166
Unlocking the Doors from the Outside ..	160
USB Flash Drives	332
USB Port.....	243
Using the Keyless Access System	160

V

Vanity Mirrors.....	9
Vehicle Identification Numbers.....	659
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	469
Off Button.....	470
Off Indicator.....	102
System Indicator.....	102
Ventilation.....	230, 232
Viscosity (Oil)	534, 538, 651, 654, 657
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)	469

W

Warning and Information	
Messages.....	116
Warning Indicator On/Blinking.....	628
Warning Labels	89
Watts	650, 653, 656
WAV.....	312
Wear Indicators (Tyre)	570
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle).....	612
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate	646
Wi-Fi Connection	324
Window Washers	
Adding/Refilling Fluid	551
Switch	195
Windows (Opening and Closing)	175
Windscreen	
Cleaning	585, 588
Defrosting/Defogging	233
Washer Fluid.....	551
Wiper Blades.....	565
Wipers and Washers	195
Winter Tyres	573
Tyre Chains.....	573
Wipers and Washers	195
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades.....	565
WMA.....	268, 274, 306, 312
Worn Tyres	569